Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology

Safety Assessment of Transgenic Organisms in the Environment, Volume 5

OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS

Volume 5 of this Series compiles the science-based consensus documents issued by the OECD Working Group on the Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology in 2011 and 2012. They contain information for use during the risk/safety assessment of transgenic organisms to be released in the environment, for agriculture or other purposes. The first chapter deals with the pathogenicity of bacteria and how this knowledge can be used in biosafety regulatory assessment. The following chapters on the biology of plant species (Cucurbita spp., Brassica spp.) include elements of taxonomy, centres of origin, reproductive biology, genetics, hybridisation and introgression, crop production and cultivation practices, interactions with other organisms such as pests and pathogens, and biotechnological developments. This volume should be of value to applicants for commercial uses of transgenic organisms, regulators and risk assessors in national authorities, as well as the wider scientific community.

Contents

Part I. Micro-organisms
Chapter 1. Bacteria: Pathogenicity factors

Part II. Biology of crops
Chapter 2. Squashes, pumpkins, zucchinis and gourds (Cucurbita species)
Chapter 3. Brassica crops (Brassica species)

ISBN 978-92-64-25044-4
Foreword

From their first commercialisation in the mid-1990s, genetically engineered crops (also known as “transgenic” or “genetically modified” plants) have been approved for commercial release in an increasing number of countries, for planting or for entering in the composition of foods and feeds, or use in industrial processing. Up to now, the large majority of these agricultural productions remain for soybean, maize, cotton and rapeseed (canola), as outlined in The Bioeconomy to 2030: Designing a Policy Agenda (OECD, 2009). Despite some differences in total estimates, all analyses and statistics concur in underlining the general increasing trend in volumes produced and traded, number of countries involved and growth potential. For instance, James reports in the Global Status of Commercialized Biotech/GM Crops: 2014, ISAAA Brief No. 49 that the surface area of transgenic crops worldwide constantly increased over the 19-year-period from 1996 to 2014, to reach 181.5 million hectares grown in 28 countries. To date, genetically engineered varieties of over 25 different plant species (including crops, flowers and trees) have received regulatory approval in OECD and non-OECD countries from all regions of the world. Such approvals for release in the environment usually follow a science-based risk/safety assessment before being granted.

The five main producers of genetically engineered crops in 2014 were the United States, followed by Brazil, Argentina, India and Canada, covering together almost 90% of the total area. Interestingly, developing countries grew more of global transgenic crops (53%) than industrial countries, at 47%. Among the 28 countries having planted those crops in 2014, only 9 of them were OECD countries, listed by decreasing area as follows: the United States, Canada, Australia, Mexico, Spain, Chile, Portugal, the Czech Republic and the Slovak Republic. In addition, some countries do not grow genetically engineered plants but import the produced commodities, for use in their feed industry in particular, as it is the case in several jurisdictions of Europe as well as some other economies worldwide.

Information on the transgenic crops which have been approved for commercial release in at least one country (for use in agriculture and/or foods and feeds processing) can be found in the OECD Biotrack Product Database (www2.oecd.org/biotech). Each transgenic product and its Unique Identifier are described, with information on approvals in countries. To date, this database covers about 240 approved genetically engineered plant varieties, and will be extended in future years to include additional species and information from a larger group of countries.

Modern biotechnologies are applied to plants, and also trees, animals and micro-organisms. The safety of the resulting genetically engineered organisms when released in the environment for their use in agriculture, food and feed industry, as biofuel or for other applications represents a challenging issue.

This is already true nowadays with the increasing cultivation of transgenic crops. It will be even more critical in the future as applications of biotechnologies widen to new species and new areas: a growing number of novel organisms will have to be assessed.
before their possible use and market release. Among the ongoing developments of modern biotechnology, crop varieties modified for gaining adaptation features such as the resistance to certain biotic/abiotic stresses, result in better resilience to climate change. “Bio-fortification” (applied to rice, tuber crops and other species) develop varieties with enhanced content in some constituents, e.g. vitamins or minerals. Plants with reduced lignine or with increased oil content are examples of products sought to facilitate industrial uses of the commodities and decrease the production costs. As highlighted in the proceedings of the OECD Conference “Biosafety and the Environmental Uses of Micro-organisms” held in 2012, a range of new species are contemplated as potential biofuels to provide renewable energy; among them algae, with photosynthetic cyanobacteria, are of special interest as they can be cultivated year round on non-arable land, alleviating the pressure on agricultural land and freshwater resources that would be exerted by crops growing for biofuel purposes. Less anticipated, genetically engineered mosquitos are used in few places since 2014 to control the insect population and fight tropical diseases transmitted by them. Other biotechnology developments, and in particular applied to micro-organisms, might lead to other products such biofertilizer organisms living in symbiosis in crop roots and optimising the nitrogen fixation, or biocontrol agents acting as plant protection products to control disease and attack by insects. Other exploratory fields may comprise bioremediation by using of living organisms for removing contaminants from the environment such as polluted land, or the development of detergents containing micro-organisms.

Even if it is difficult to predict which of these new biotechnology developments would lead to large applications in a medium term, it is expected that some of the products will have important impacts in their respective economic sectors. A scientifically sound approach to their risk assessment should inform biosafety regulators and support the national decisions regarding their potential release. Genetically engineered products are rigorously assessed by their developers during their elaboration, and by governments when ready for commercial use, to ensure high safety standards for the environment, human food and animal feed. Such assessments are felt essential for a healthy and sustainable agriculture, industry and trade.

An environmental safety/risk assessment of transgenic organisms is normally based on the information on the characteristics of the host organism, the introduced traits, the environment into which the organism is introduced, the interaction between these and the intended application. The OECD’s Working Group on Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology (the “Working Group”) decided, at its first session in June 1995, to focus its work on identifying parts of this information which could be commonly used in countries for environmental safety/risk assessment, to encourage information sharing and prevent duplication of efforts. The biosafety consensus documents are one of the major outputs of its work.

The biosafety consensus documents constitute a “snapshot” of current information on a specific host organism or trait, for use during regulatory assessments. They are not intended to be a comprehensive source of information on everything that is known about a specific host or trait, but they do address the key or core set of issues that OECD member countries believe are relevant to risk/safety assessment. Several non-member economies, as well as other international organisations, are associated with the work and share their expertise. The information collated in the consensus documents is said to be mutually acceptable among the OECD community and beyond in other jurisdictions wishing to use them during their assessment process.
As of December 2015, a total of 53 consensus and guidance documents on biosafety have been published by the Working Group. They include documents which address the biology of plants, trees and micro-organisms as well as those dealing with specific traits that are used in genetically engineered crops. In addition, documents of broader nature aiming to facilitate harmonisation have been developed.

The volumes of this publication published in 2016 contain a compilation of those biosafety consensus documents issued in 2011 and 2012 (Volume 5), and from 2013 to 2015 (Volume 6). Both of them contain the “Introduction to the biosafety consensus documents” published earlier (and slightly updated since Volumes 3 and 4 of 2010). The introduction explains the purpose of the documents and how they are relevant to risk/safety assessment. It also describes the process by which the documents are drafted, using a “lead country” approach.

Along with previous Volumes 1-4 (OECD, 2006a; 2006b; 2010a; 2010b) the present publication offers ready access to those consensus documents published on the OECD BioTrack website thus far. As such, Volumes 5 and 6 should be of value to applicants for commercial uses of transgenic organisms, regulators in national authorities, breeders, risk assessors as well as the wider scientific community.

This biosafety work is complementary of the activities of the OECD programme on novel food and feed safety, in particular to the consensus documents developed on the composition of foods and feeds derived from transgenic organisms, which detail the key nutrients, anti-nutrients, toxicants and other constituents that can be used in a comparative approach. More information on this programme can be found in the introduction.

As each of the consensus documents may be updated in the future when new knowledge becomes available, users of this book are encouraged to provide any information or opinions regarding the contents of the consensus documents or indeed, the OECD’s other harmonisation activities. Comments can be provided to: ehscont@oecd.org.

The published consensus documents are also freely available individually, in their original form, from the OECD’s Biotrack website (www.oecd.org/biotrack). Some updates have been made to data and citations in this edition.
Acknowledgements

This book is the result of the common effort of the participants in the OECD’s Working Group on Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology. Each chapter is composed of a “consensus document” which was prepared under the leadership of one or several countries and observer delegations, as listed at the end of this volume. During their successive draftings, valuable inputs and suggestions for the documents were provided by a number of delegates and experts in the Working Group, whether from OECD member countries, non-member economies or observer organisations.

Each consensus document was issued individually, as soon as it was finalised and agreed on declassification, by the OECD Environment, Health and Safety (EHS) Division in the Series on Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology. Volumes 5 and 6 of this publication, containing the 2011-15 consensus documents, were prepared by Jennifer Allain and edited by Bertrand Dagallier, under the supervision of Peter Kearns, at the EHS Division, OECD Environment Directorate.
**Table of contents**

**Executive summary** ................................................................................................................................. 11

**Introduction to the biosafety consensus documents** ................................................................................ 13

**About the OECD’s Working Group for biosafety** .................................................................................... 13
**Regulatory harmonisation** ....................................................................................................................... 13
**The need for harmonisation activities at the OECD** .................................................................................. 14
**Key background concepts and principles** ................................................................................................ 14
**A common approach to risk/safety assessment** ........................................................................................ 14
**The emergence of the concept of consensus documents** ........................................................................ 15
**The purpose of consensus documents** .................................................................................................... 15
**The process through which consensus documents are initiated and brought to publication** ................. 16
**Current and future trends in the Working Group** ..................................................................................... 17
**The OECD Task Force for the Safety of Novel Foods and Feeds** .......................................................... 18
**Notes** ....................................................................................................................................................... 19

**Annex: OECD biosafety principles and concepts developed prior to the Working Group on Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology (1986-94)** ............................................. 20

**References and additional reading** ........................................................................................................ 22

**Part I: Micro-organisms** .......................................................................................................................... 25

**Chapter 1. Bacteria: Pathogenicity factors** ............................................................................................... 27

**General considerations for bacterial pathogenicity** ................................................................................ 28
**Bacterial factors and determinants for pathogenicity** ............................................................................. 33
**Molecular aspects of pathogenicity** .......................................................................................................... 50
**Assessing potential for bacteria-mediated adverse human health effects** ............................................. 57

**Notes** ....................................................................................................................................................... 61

**References** ............................................................................................................................................. 61

**Part II: Biology of crops** .......................................................................................................................... 81

**Chapter 2. Squashes, pumpkins, zucchinis and gourds (Curcurbita species)** ........................................... 83

**Species or taxonomic group** .................................................................................................................... 84
**Taxonomy** .............................................................................................................................................. 85
**Centres of origin and distribution** ........................................................................................................ 90
**Morphological characters** .................................................................................................................... 96
**Reproductive biology** .......................................................................................................................... 100
**Genetics** ............................................................................................................................................... 105
**Hybridisation and introgression** .......................................................................................................... 109
**Crop production and use** ..................................................................................................................... 113
**General interactions with other organisms (ecology)** ......................................................................... 119
**Common pests and pathogens** .......................................................................................................... 122
**Biotechnological developments** .......................................................................................................... 129

**References** ........................................................................................................................................... 130
Chapter 3. Brassica crops (Brassica spp.)

Introduction .................................................................................................................. 152
Species or taxonomic group .......................................................................................... 152
Reproductive biology .................................................................................................. 197
Genetics ...................................................................................................................... 212
Interspecific hybridisation and introgression ............................................................... 218
Ecology ....................................................................................................................... 228
Breeding improved varieties ..................................................................................... 233
Notes ........................................................................................................................... 247
References ............................................................................................................... 248

Annex A. List of OECD consensus documents on environmental safety assessment, 1996-2015.. 293

Tables

Table 1.1. Examples of specific bacterial adherence to host cell surfaces ...................... 35
Table 1.2. Extracellular bacterial proteins that act as invasins .................................... 42
Table 1.3. Bacterial proteins that act as immunomodulator ........................................ 46
Table 2.1. List of taxa in the genus Cucurbita and their natural distributions .................. 86
Table 2.2. Synthesis of archaeological records of cultivated species of Cucurbita ......... 91
Table 2.3. Principal morphological characters that generally differentiate the domesticated species of Cucurbita ................................................................. 293
Table 2.4. Phenology and life cycles of 20 Cucurbita taxa ......................................... 103
Table 2.5. Bee species pollinating Cucurbita species in Mexico ................................. 106
Table 2.6. Cross-compatibility of cultivated Cucurbita species: Gene pools .............. 111
Table 2.A1.1. List of taxonomic names of various Cucurbita ..................................... 146
Table 2.A2.1. Horticultural types in Cucurbita species ............................................ 148
Table 3.1. World production of edible vegetable oils, averages 1996-2000 to 2011-15 ...... 152
Table 3.2. Nomenclature and genome relationships of cultivated Brassica species and related genera .............................................................. 153
Table 3.3. List of 43 diploid cytodemes and 6 amphidiplod taxa in the Brassica coenosppecies .............................................................. 157
Table 3.4. Area harvested, production and yield by major Brassica oilseed producing countries, averages 1995-99 to 2010-14 .................................................. 177
Table 3.5. Number of herbicide products available for control of volunteer B. napus with nil, single or multiple herbicide tolerances in western Canada .......................... 185
Table 3.6. Short distance pollen mediated gene flow from B. napus pollen donor to recipient field/plots in Canada, the United Kingdom and the United States .......... 202
Table 3.7. B. napus to B. napus outcrossing rates, by isolation distances, reported from small plot trials and/or large fields ......................................................... 203
Table 3.8. Mean outcross percentages of pollen donor to B. napus recipient populations, for various isolation distances and two design classes ..................................... 203
Table 3.9. Predicted outcrossing rates for spring and winter oilseed rape at three isolation distances (with 95% confidence limits), based on 2000-03 multilocation UK field trials .............................................................. 205
Table 3.10. Typical seed weight ranges (or averages) of Brassica crop plants by species and form ........................................................................................................... 206

Annex 2.A1. List of taxonomic names of various Cucurbita species ........................................ 146
Table 3.11. Estimated dispersal distances of spring *B. napus* seed released from transport vehicles at various heights above adjacent fields .................................................................................208

Table 3.12. Ploidy level, chromosome number, genome size and map length of *A. thaliana* and *Brassica* species of “Triangle of U 1” ..............................................................................................................215

Table 3.13. Interspecific and intergeneric sexual crossing attempts, degree of success and potential for gene introgression .................................................................................................................................220

Table 3.14. Fatty acid composition of rapeseed, canola, soybean, sunflower and linseed oils .......................................................................................................................................................234

Table 3.15. Fatty acid composition of canola and specialty *B. napus* varieties grown in Canada ............................................................................................................................................................................235

Table 3.16. Introgression of nuclear genes conferring desirable traits to *Brassica* crops .........................................................................................................................................................................................243

Table 3.17. Intertribal somatic hybrids in Brassiceae for the integration and incorporation of desirable traits into *Brassica* crops ...........................................................................................................................................244

Table 3.18. Minimum population size required to select the least frequent homozygote at 95% probability ................................................................................................................................................245

Table 3.A1.1. Insect, mite and other Brassicaceous crop pests and their regional distribution ..................................................................................................................................................286

Table 3.A1.2. Diseases of rapeseed = Canola (*B. napus* L. and *Brassica rapa* L. [= *B. campestris* L.]) .................................................................................................................................................................289

**Figures**

Figure 3.1. Genome relationships of *Brassica* species and allied genera ..................................................................................................................................................................................................................155

Figure 3.2. Illustration of a *Brassica nigra* plant and its parts ..................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................158

Figure 3.3. *B. rapa* subsp. *pekinesis* ..............................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................159

Figure 3.4. *B. rapa* subsp. *Chinensis*, Bok choy........................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................160

Figure 3.5. *B. rapa* subsp. *Chinensis*, Baby or Shanghai bok choy ........................................................................................................................................................................................................160

Figure 3.6. *B. rapa* subsp. *Parachinensis*, Gai Lan or Chinese broccoli ..................................................................................................................................................................................................................160

Figure 3.7. *B. rapa* subsp. *Nipposinica* .........................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................160

Figure 3.8. *B. rapa* subsp. *rapa* the common turnip ..................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................160

Figure 3.9. Growth stages in turnip rape (*B. rapa*) ........................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................162

Figure 3.10. Typical intact and opened siliques of *B. napus* and *B. rapa* ................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................162

Figure 3.11. Wild *B. oleracea* plants in their first year of growth ........................................................................................................................................................................................................................163

Figure 3.12. Heads of *B. oleracea* var. *capitata* and Savoy cabbages ........................................................................................................................................................................................................................164

Figure 3.13. Head of cauliflower and broccoli *B. oleracea* var. *botrytis* ..........................................................................................................................................................................................................................164

Figure 3.14. Sprouting purple broccoli ..................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................165

Figure 3.15. Romanesco broccoli ........................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................165

Figure 3.16. *B. oleracea* var. *viridis*, collard plant and row of kale ..........................................................................................................................................................................................................................165

Figure 3.17. *B. oleracea* var. *gemmafera*, Brussels sprouts ..........................................................................................................................................................................................................................166

Figure 3.18. *B. napus* var. *napobrassica*, rutabaga or Swede ..........................................................................................................................................................................................................................167

Figure 3.19. *B. napus* var. *pabularia*, Siberian or rape kale ..........................................................................................................................................................................................................................167

Figure 3.20. Growth stages of *B. napus* var. *napus* f. *annua* ..........................................................................................................................................................................................................................168

Figure 3.21. Upper leaves of *B. rapa*, *B. napus* and *B. juncea* ..........................................................................................................................................................................................................................168

Figure 3.22. Three forms of *B. juncea* ..................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................169

Figure 3.23. *B. juncea* subsp. *integrifolia*, heading mustard, BauSin ..........................................................................................................................................................................................................................169

Figure 3.24. World distribution of *B. rapa* as a reported weed ..........................................................................................................................................................................................................................173

Figure 3.25. Approximate areas of the phytogeographic regions containing the world’s greatest representation of Brassicaceae genera ..................................................................................................................................................175

Figure 3.26. Areas of oilseed rape/canola production in North America ..................................................................................................................................................................................................................178

Figure 3.27. Percentage of the total Canadian *B. napus* production area sown to herbicide-resistant varieties, 1995-2008 ..........................................................................................................................................................179
Figure 3.28. Oilseed rape (B. napus) production regions in Europe showing millions of hectares of winter rape per country ................................................................. 180
Figure 3.29. Areas and concentration of B. napus production by Australian government districts ............................................................................................................. 182
Figure 3.30. Major production region of oilseed mustard (B. juncea) and toria (B. rapa) on the Indian sub-continent ............................................................................................................. 183
Figure 3.31. Phylogenetic tree for the subtribe Brassicinae, based on PAUP analyses of the chloroplast DNA restriction site/length mutations shared by two or more taxa/accessions .................................................................................................................. 191
Figure 3.32. Evolutionary geography of B. juncea, B. carinata and Sinapis alba ................................. 192
Figure 3.33. Distribution of wild “species” of B. oleracea in 1990 .......................................................... 194
Figure 3.34. Dispersal of the B. napus species from a proposed centre of origin ........................................ 195
Figure 3.35. Typical flower of B. napus .................................................................................................. 198
Figure 3.36. Outcrossing percentages as affected by distance from the pollen source ........................... 200
Figure 3.37. Development stages of the Brassica napus zygotic embryo ............................................. 206
Figure 3.38. Distinguishing Brassica species by their seed coat characteristics .................................... 208
Figure 3.39. Illustration of major events in the evolution of selected Brassica species and Arabidopsis thaliana ......................................................................................................................... 213
Figure 3.40. Glucosinolate chemical structure and enzymatic breakdown products formed in broken Brassica plant cells with moisture ......................................................... 229
Figure 3.41. Canola oil compared to other edible vegetable oils as to total saturated fatty acid content and other fatty acids ........................................................................................................ 234
Figure 3.42. Breeding scheme combining the backcross and pedigree selection systems to develop a low erucic, low glucosinolate variety with high seed and oil yield ........................................... 238
Figure 3.43. Breeding scheme for development of commercial synthetic varieties of oilseed Brassica crops .............................................................................................................................. 239
Figure 3.44. Self-incompatibility scheme for breeding cabbage hybrid seed production ..................... 240
Figure 3.45. Production system for cytoplasmic male sterile hybrid seed of oilseed rape ..................... 241
Executive summary

This document constitutes the fifth volume of the OECD Series on Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology, which relates to the environmental risk/safety assessment of transgenic organisms, also called “biosafety”. It is a compendium collating in a single volume the individual “consensus documents” published by the Working Group on the Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology. The four previous volumes of the series covered the documents issued during the 1996-2010 period. This volume contains the consensus documents issued in 2011 and 2012, while Volume 6 will collate those published in 2013, 2014 and 2015.

Modern biotechnologies are applied to plants, and also trees, animals and micro-organisms. The safety of the resulting transgenic organisms when released in the environment for their use in agriculture, food and feed industry, or for other applications, represents a challenging issue. This is true nowadays with the increasing cultivation of genetically engineered crops, and might become more crucial with future biotechnology developments widening to new species (e.g. insects, algae) and new targets such as crops adapted to climate change, plants of improved composition (biofortification), products for easier processing, renewable biofuels, insects modified to prevent diseases, biofertilisers and other applications. Genetically engineered products are rigorously assessed by their developers during their elaboration, and by governments when ready for release, to ensure high safety standards for the environment, human food and animal feed. Such assessments are felt essential for a healthy and sustainable agriculture, industry and trade. The growing number of novel organisms will also need to be assessed through a scientifically sound approach to risk assessment that will inform biosafety regulators and support the decision concerning their release.

The OECD Working Group on Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology was established in 1995. It gathers national authorities responsible for the environmental risk/safety assessment of products of modern biotechnology in OECD countries and in other economies which are key stakeholders in their production and use. Observer international organisations and experts involved in biosafety are associated to this work. The Working Group’s primary goals are to promote international regulatory harmonisation, to ensure that methods used is the risk assessment of genetically engineered products are as similar as possible, therefore opening the way to possible recognition and even acceptance of information from other countries’ assessments. The benefits of harmonisation are multiple: it strengthens mutual understanding among countries, avoids duplication and saves resources, increases the efficiency of the risk assessment process. Overall, it improves safety, while reducing unnecessary barriers to trade.

The consensus documents constitute the main output of the Working Group. They offer practical tools which compile science-based information relevant to the risk/safety assessment of transgenic organisms intended for release in the environment. They are publicly available and considered worldwide as solid references for biosafety.
In this volume, the introduction to the biosafety consensus documents presents the OECD Working Group, the key background concepts, principles and common approach prevailing in risk/safety assessment of transgenic organisms. The purpose of the consensus documents and how they are developed, is also described.

Chapter 1 provides guidance on issues relevant to the risk/safety assessment of commercial environmental applications involving genetically engineered micro-organisms, especially bacteria. It explores the important aspects in bacteria for causing adverse human health effects, and how this knowledge can be used in biosafety regulatory assessment. It contains information on bacterial pathogenicity (general considerations, factors and determinants, molecular aspects), and other elements on assessing potential for bacteria-mediated adverse human health effects.

Chapter 2 deals with the biology of squashes, pumkins, zucchinis and gourds (Cucurbita species). This information can be used as a useful tool for the biosafety assessment. It contains elements of taxonomy, centres of origin and distribution, morphological characters, reproductive biology, genetics, hybridisation and introgression, crop production, interactions with other organisms, pests and pathogens, and biotechnological developments.

Chapter 3 relates to the biology of Brassica species which include oilseed rape, turnip rape, mustards, cabbages and other oilseed crops. Taxonomy for a range of Brassica species is described, their centres of origin and distribution, reproductive biology, genetics, hybridisation and introgression, crop production, interactions with other organisms, pests and pathogens, breeding methods and biotechnological developments, common pathogens and pests.

The set of science-based information and data contained in this volume, previously agreed by consensus and published by the OECD, constitute a solid reference recognised internationally. It is already widely used as part of the biosafety assessments. As such, this publication should be of value to applicants for commercial uses of transgenic organisms, to risk assessors and regulators in national authorities in charge of granting approvals to their release in the environment, as well as the wider scientific community.
Introduction to the biosafety consensus documents

About the OECD’s Working Group for biosafety

The OECD’s Working Group on Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology (the “Working Group”) comprises delegates from the 34 member countries of the OECD and the European Commission. Typically, delegates are from those government ministries and agencies which have responsibility for the environmental risk/safety assessment of products of modern biotechnology. The Working Group also includes a number of observer delegations and invited experts who participate in its work, such as Argentina, the Russian Federation, the United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP), the Secretariat of the Convention on Biological Diversity (SCBD), the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO), the United Nations Industrial Development Organisation (UNIDO) and the Business and Industry Advisory Committee to the OECD (BIAC).

In recent years, with the increasing use of biotech products in many regions of the world, together with the development of activities relating to tropical and subtropical species, participation was enlarged to other non-member economies including Brazil, Bangladesh, the People’s Republic of China, Colombia, India, Indonesia, Kenya, Moldova, Paraguay, the Philippines and South Africa, as well as the African Biosafety Network of Expertise from the New Partnership for Africa’s Development, a body from the African Union (AU-NEPAD-ABNE). From July 2011 to December 2014, a programme was jointly implemented by the World Bank, the ILSI Research Foundation--Center for Environmental Risk Assessment (ILSI-CERA) and the OECD in the framework of the “Partnership for Biosafety Risk Assessment and Regulation”, which developed new links, enhanced collaboration and supported the participation of four non-member economies in the activities of the Working Group.

Regulatory harmonisation

The Working Group was established in 1995\(^1\) at a time when the first commercial transgenic crops were being considered for regulatory approval in a number of OECD member countries. From the beginning, one of the group’s primary goals was to promote international regulatory harmonisation in biotechnology among members. Regulatory harmonisation is the attempt to ensure that the information used in risk/safety assessments, as well as the methods used to collect such information, are as similar as possible. It could lead to countries recognising or even accepting information from one another’s assessments. The benefits of harmonisation are clear. It increases mutual understanding among countries, which avoids duplication, saves on scarce resources and increases the efficiency of the risk/safety assessment process. This, in turn, improves safety while reducing unnecessary barriers to trade (OECD, 2000).
The need for harmonisation activities at the OECD

The establishment of the Working Group and its programme of work followed a detailed analysis by member countries of whether there was a need to continue work on harmonisation in biotechnology at the OECD, and if so, what it should entail. This analysis was undertaken by the Ad Hoc Group for Environmental Aspects of Biotechnology (established by the Joint Meeting), in 1994 mainly.

The Ad Hoc Group for Environmental Aspects of Biotechnology took into consideration, and built upon, the earlier work at the OECD which began in the mid-1980s. Initially, these OECD activities focused on the environmental and agricultural implications of field trials of transgenic organisms, but this was soon followed by a consideration of their large-scale use and commercialisation. (A summary of this extensive body of work is found in the annex to this introduction.)

Key background concepts and principles

The Ad Hoc Group for Environmental Aspects of Biotechnology took into account previous work on risk analysis that is summarised in Safety Considerations for Biotechnology: Scale-up of Crop Plants (OECD, 1993a). The following quote gives the flavour: “Risk/safety analysis is based on the characteristics of the organism, the introduced trait, the environment into which the organism is introduced, the interaction between these, and the intended application.” This body of work has formed the basis for environmental risk/safety assessment that is now globally accepted. In considering the possibilities for harmonisation, the Ad Hoc Group paid attention to these characteristics and the information used by risk/safety assessors to address them.

This was reinforced by the concept of familiarity, also elaborated in the above-mentioned document (OECD, 1993a). This concept “is based on the fact that most genetically engineered organisms are developed from organisms such as crop plants whose biology is well understood... Familiarity allows the risk assessor to draw on previous knowledge and experience with the introduction of plants and micro-organisms into the environment.” For plants, familiarity takes account of a wide-range of attributes including, for example, knowledge and experience with “the crop plant, including its flowering/reproductive characteristics, ecological requirements, and past breeding experiences” (OECD, 1993a – see also the annex for a more detailed description). This illustrates the role of information related to the biology of the host organism as a part of an environmental risk/safety assessment.

The Ad Hoc Group for Environmental Aspects of Biotechnology also considered the document Traditional Crop Breeding Practices: An Historical Review to Serve as a Baseline for Assessing the Role of Modern Biotechnology (OECD, 1993b), which focuses on host organisms. It presents information on an initial group of 17 different crop plants, which are used (or are likely to be used) in modern biotechnology. It includes sections on phytosanitary considerations in the movement of germplasm and on current uses of these crop plants. There is also a detailed section on current breeding practices.

A common approach to risk/safety assessment

An important aspect for the Ad Hoc Group for Environmental Aspects of Biotechnology was to identify the extent to which member countries address the same questions and issues during risk/safety assessment. Big differences would mean
difficulties in working towards harmonisation, while a high level of similarity would suggest it is more feasible.

This point was resolved by two studies considered by the Ad Hoc Group: one covered crop plants (OECD, 1995a; 1995b) while the other concerned micro-organisms (OECD, 1995c; 1995d). Both studies involved a survey with national authorities responsible for risk/safety assessment. The aim was to identify the questions they address during the assessment process (as outlined in national laws/regulations/guidance texts) in order to establish the extent of similarity among national authorities. The studies used the information provided in the OECD’s “Blue Book” on Recombinant DNA Safety Considerations (OECD, 1986) as a reference point, in particular, the sections covering: 1) general scientific considerations; 2) human health considerations; and 3) environmental and agricultural considerations (Appendices B, C and D). Both studies showed a remarkably high degree of similarity among countries in the questions/issues addressed in risk/safety assessment.

The emergence of the concept of consensus documents

The Working Group was therefore established in the knowledge that national authorities have much in common in terms of the questions/issues addressed when undertaking risk/safety assessment. It also took into account those characteristics identified as part of the assessment (i.e. the organism, the introduced trait and the environment) around which harmonisation activities could focus.

It was further recognised that much of the information used in risk/safety assessment relating to the biology of host organisms (crop plants, trees, animals or micro-organisms) would be similar or virtually the same in all assessments involving the same organism. In other words, the questions addressed during risk/safety assessment which relate to the biology of the organism, for example the potential for gene transfer within the crop plant species, and among related species, as well as the potential for weediness remain the same for each application involving the same host species. This also applies to some extent to information related to introduced traits.

Consequently, the Working Group evolved the idea of compiling information common to the risk/safety assessment of a number of transgenic products, and decided to focus on two specific categories: the biology of the host species and traits used in genetic modifications. The aim was to encourage information sharing and prevent duplication of effort among countries by avoiding the need to address the same common issues in applications involving the same organism or trait. It was recognised that biology and trait consensus documents could be agreed upon relatively quickly by member countries (within a few years). This compilation process was quickly formalised in the drafting of consensus documents.

The purpose of consensus documents

The consensus documents are not intended to be a substitute for a risk/safety assessment, because they address only a part of the necessary information. Nevertheless, they should make an important contribution to environmental risk/safety assessment.

Consensus documents are intended to be a “snapshot” of current information, for use during the regulatory assessment of products of biotechnology. They are not intended to be a comprehensive source of information covering the full knowledge about a specific
host organism or trait; but they address – on a consensual basis – the key or core set of issues that countries believe to be relevant to risk/safety assessment.

The aim of the documents is to share information on these key components of an environmental safety review in order to prevent duplication of effort among countries. The documents are envisaged to be used: 1) by applicants as information to be given in applications to regulatory authorities; 2) by regulators as a general guide and reference source in their reviews; and 3) by governments for information sharing, research reference and public information.

Originally, it was said that the information in the consensus documents is intended to be mutually recognised or mutually acceptable among OECD member countries, though the precise meaning of these terms is still open for discussion. During the period of the Ad Hoc Group for Environmental Aspects of Biotechnology and the early days of the Working Group (1993-95), the phrase “mutual acceptance of data” was discussed. This concept, borrowed from OECD’s Chemicals Programme, involves OECD Council decisions that have legally binding implications for member countries. In the case of the consensus documents, there has never been a legally binding commitment to use the information they contain, though the Working Group is interested in enhancing the commitment of countries to make use of the documents. Participation in the development of documents, and the intention by countries to use the information, is done in “good faith.” It is expected, therefore, that reference will be made to relevant consensus documents during risk/safety assessments. As these documents are publicly available tools, they can be of interest for any country wishing to use them in national assessments.

The process through which consensus documents are initiated and brought to publication

There are a number of steps in the drafting of a specific consensus document. The first step occurs when a delegation, in a formal meeting of the Working Group, makes a proposal to draft a document on a new topic, typically a crop species or a trait. If the Working Group agrees to the proposal, a provisional draft is prepared by either a single country or two or more countries working together (“lead country approach”). Typically, the lead country(ies) has had experience with the concerned crop or trait and is able to draw on experts to prepare a provisional draft.

The provisional draft is first reviewed by the Bureau of the Working Group3 to ensure that it addresses the range of issues normally covered by consensus documents and is of sufficiently high quality to merit consideration by the Working Group as a whole.

Based on the comments of the Bureau, a first draft is prepared for consideration by the full Working Group. This is the opportunity for each delegation to review the text and provide comments based on their national experiences. Inputs are incorporated in a second draft, which is again circulated to the Working Group. At this point, the Working Group may be asked to recommend that the document be declassified. Such a recommendation is only forthcoming when all delegations have come to a consensus that the document is complete and ready for publication. Sometimes, however, the text may need a third or even more discussions in the Working Group before a declassification can be contemplated.

When the Working Group has agreed to recommend a document for declassification, it is forwarded to the supervisory committee – the Joint Meeting – which is invited to declassify the document. Following the agreement of the Joint Meeting, the document is then published.
It is important to note that the review of consensus documents is not limited to formal meetings of the Working Group. Much discussion also occurs through electronic means, especially via the protected website dedicated to the Working Group. This enables a range of experts to have input into drafts.

For a number of documents, it has also been necessary to include information from non-member countries. This wider share of expertise has become increasingly important in recent years with the development of activities relating to tropical and subtropical species. This has been particularly true in the case of crop plants where the centre of origin and diversity occurs in a non-member country(ies). In these cases, UNEP, UNIDO and the FAO have assisted in the preparation of documents by identifying experts from concerned countries. For example, this occurred with the consensus document on the biology of *Oryza sativa* (rice) published in 1999.

The full series of consensus documents developed by the Working Group is also published in compendium documents, as it is the case for these volumes 5 and 6 covering 2011-15. Previous volumes 3 and 4 were published in 2010 (covering 2007-10), while volumes 1 and 2 were issued in 2006 (covering 1996-2006) (OECD, 2010b; 2010c; 2006a; 2006b).

**Current and future trends in the Working Group**

The Working Group continues its work on the preparation of specific consensus documents, and on the efficiency of the process by which they are developed. An increasingly large number of crops and other host species (trees, animals, micro-organisms) are being modified, for an increasing number of traits, and the Working Group aims to fulfil the current needs and be prepared for emerging topics.

At the OECD Workshop on Consensus Documents and Future Work in Harmonisation, held in Washington, DC in October 2003, the Working Group considered how to set priorities for drafting future consensus documents among the large number of possibilities. The workshop also recognised that published consensus documents may be in need of review and updating from time to time, to ensure that they include the most recent information. The Working Group considers these aspects on a regular basis when planning future work. For the preparation of future documents, the workshop identified the usefulness of developing a standardised structure of consensus documents. The Working Group contemplated to develop, firstly, a guidance document on “Points to consider” for consensus documents on the biology of cultivated plants that was published in 2006, and then that of the trait documents. The “Points to consider” document, included in Volumes 3 and 4 of the compendia series, is currently under review by the Working Group to update it with the latest developments.

Within the important ongoing activities of the Working Group, a new document is being developed on the “Environmental considerations for the risk/safety assessment for the release of transgenic plants”. Focused on the core of the biosafety work that is applied to crops and trees, and taking into account the most recent views from countries of all regions of the world, this document will constitute a key guidance tool for developers, assessors and regulatory authorities. It is expected to be published around 2017.

Other projects are implemented to prepare consensus documents on the biology of animals, to date on the Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*), and on the mosquito *Aedes aegypti*, for which some genetically engineered strains are used since 2014 in limited areas to control the virus-vector insect population and participate in the fight against the tropical...
diseases such as dengue fever and chikungunya that have been dramatically extending in many regions of the world over the last decade.

The Working Group is also considering projects on micro-organisms, therefore opening to new areas, for instance, bioenergy, with the preparation of a document on eukaryotic micro-algae having started recently. The photosynthetic cyanobacteria are potential providers of renewable energy and are of special interest as they can be cultivated year round on non-arable land, alleviating the pressure on farmland and freshwater resources that would be exerted by crops grown for biofuel purposes, as stated in the proceedings of the OECD Conference on Biosafety and the Environmental Uses of Micro-Organisms set up by the Working Group in 2012 (OECD, 2015a). Other biotechnology developments applied to micro-organisms might be considered to prepare future documents: updated review of biofertilizer organisms living in symbiosis in crop roots and optimising the nitrogen fixation, or biocontrol agents acting as plant protection products to control disease and attack by insects and other herbivores. Other exploratory fields may comprise bio-remediation by using living organisms for removing contaminants from the environment such as polluted land, or the development of detergents containing micro-organisms.

In recent years, the Working Group started to exchange knowledge and promote discussion on the new plant-breeding techniques and their potential impact of risk/safety assessment. An OECD workshop was organised on these matters by the Working Group in 2014, and the report will be published soon.

The OECD Task Force for the Safety of Novel Foods and Feeds

The OECD Task Force for the Safety of Novel Foods and Feeds (“Task Force”), established in 1999, addresses aspects of the assessment of human food and animal feed derived from genetically engineered crops. As with the Working Group, the main focus of the Task Force work is to ensure that the types of information used in risk/safety assessment, as well as the methods to collect such information, are as similar as possible amongst countries. The approach is to compare transgenic crops and derived products with similar conventional ones that are already known and considered safe because of recognised experience in their use. Harmonised methods and the sharing of information are facilitated through the Task Force’s activities.

Similarly to the biosafety programme, the main outcome of the foods and feeds programme is the set of consensus documents on compositional considerations of new varieties of specific crops. The Task Force documents compile a common base of scientific information on the major components of crop plants, such as key nutrients, toxicants, anti-nutrients and allergens. These documents constitute practical tools for regulators and risk/safety assessors dealing with these new varieties, with respect to foods and feeds. To date, 26 consensus documents have been published on major crops and on general considerations for facilitating harmonisation. They constitute the Series on the Safety of Novel Foods and Feeds which is also available on the OECD’s website (www.oecd.org/env/ehs/biotrack).

The full series of consensus documents developed by the Task Force was published in 2015 in two compendium documents, Volume 1 covering 2002-08 and Volume 2 covering 2009-14 (OECD, 2015b; 2015c).

The Working Group and the Task Force are implementing closely related and complementary programmes, focused on environmental aspects for the first and on food and feed aspects for the second. Their co-operation on issues of common interest resulted
in the first document developed jointly by the two bodies, the “Consensus document on molecular characterisation of plants derived from modern biotechnology”, published in 2010 (included in Volume 3 of the current series).

Notes

1. The original title of the Working Group was the “Expert Group for the Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology”. It became an OECD working group in 1998.

2. The Joint Meeting was the supervisory body of the Ad Hoc Group for Environmental Aspects of Biotechnology and, as a result of its findings, established the Working Group as a subsidiary body. Today, its full title is the Joint Meeting of the Chemicals Committee and the Working Party on Chemical, Pesticides and Biotechnology.

3. The Bureau comprises the Chair and Vice-Chairs of the Working Group. The Bureau is elected by the Working Group once per year. At the time of preparing this publication – Volumes 5 and 6 – the Chair is from the United States, and the Vice-Chairs from Australia, Belgium, Finland, Japan and Mexico.
Annex:

OECD biosafety principles and concepts developed prior to the Working Group on Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology (1986-94)

Since the mid-1980s the OECD has been developing harmonised approaches to the risk/safety assessment of products of modern biotechnology. Prior to the establishment of the Working Group on Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology, the OECD published a number of reports on safety considerations, concepts and principles for risk/safety assessment as well as information on field releases of transgenic crops, and a consideration of traditional crop breeding practices. This annex notes some of the highlights of these achievements that were background considerations in the establishment of the Working Group and its development of consensus documents.

Underlying scientific principles

In 1986, the OECD published its first safety considerations for genetically engineered organisms (OECD, 1986). These included the issues relevant to human health, the environment and agriculture that might be considered in a risk/safety assessment. In its recommendations for agricultural and environmental applications, it suggested that risk/safety assessors:

- “Use the considerable data on the environmental and human health effects of living organisms to guide risk assessments.

- Ensure that recombinant DNA organisms are evaluated for potential risk, prior to application in agriculture and the environment by means of an independent review of potential risks on a case-by-case basis.

- Conduct the development of recombinant DNA organisms for agricultural and environmental applications in a stepwise fashion, moving, where appropriate, from the laboratory to the growth chamber and greenhouse, to limited field testing and finally to large-scale field testing. And,

- Encourage further research to improve the prediction, evaluation, and monitoring of the outcome of applications of recombinant DNA organisms.”

The role of confinement in small-scale testing

In 1992, OECD published its Good Developmental Principles (OECD, 1992) for the design of small-scale field research involving transgenic plants and micro-organisms. This document describes the use of confinement in field tests. Confinement includes measures to avoid the dissemination or establishment of organisms from a field trial, for example, the use of physical, temporal or biological isolation (such as the use of sterility).

Scale-up of crop-plants – “risk/safety analysis”

By 1993, the focus of attention had switched to the scale-up of crop plants as plant breeders began to move to larger scale production and commercialisation of transgenic plants. The OECD published general principles for scale-up (OECD, 1993a), which
reaffirmed that, “safety in biotechnology is achieved by the appropriate application of risk/safety analysis and risk management. Risk/safety analysis comprises hazard identification and, if a hazard has been identified, risk assessment. Risk/safety analysis is based on the characteristics of the organism, the introduced trait, the environment into which the organism is introduced, the interaction between these and the intended application. Risk/safety analysis is conducted prior to an intended action and is typically a routine component of research, development and testing of new organisms, whether performed in a laboratory or a field setting. Risk/safety analysis is a scientific procedure which does not imply or exclude regulatory oversight or imply that every case will necessarily be reviewed by a national or other authority” (OECD, 1993a).

The role of familiarity in risk/safety assessment

The issue of scale-up also led to an important concept, familiarity, which is one key approach that has been used subsequently to address the environmental safety of transgenic plants.

The concept of familiarity is based on the fact that most genetically engineered organisms are developed from organisms such as crop plants, whose biology is well understood. It is not a risk/safety assessment in itself (US-NAS, 1989). However, the concept facilitates risk/safety assessments, because to be familiar means having enough information to be able to make a judgement of safety or risk (US-NAS, 1989). Familiarity can also be used to indicate appropriate management practices, including whether standard agricultural practices are adequate or whether other management practices are needed to manage the risk (OECD, 1993a). Familiarity allows the risk assessor to draw on previous knowledge and experience with the introduction of plants and micro-organisms into the environment and this indicates appropriate management practices. As familiarity depends also on the knowledge about the environment and its interaction with introduced organisms, the risk/safety assessment in one country may not be applicable in another country. However, as field tests are performed, information will accumulate about the organisms involved, and their interactions with a number of environments.

Familiarity comes from the knowledge and experience available for conducting a risk/safety analysis prior to scale-up of any new plant line or crop cultivar in a particular environment. For plants, for example, familiarity takes account of, but need not be restricted to, knowledge and experience with the following (OECD, 1993a):

- “The crop plant, including its flowering/reproductive characteristics, ecological requirements, and past breeding experiences
- the agricultural and surrounding environment of the trial site
- specific trait(s) transferred to the plant line(s)
- results from previous basic research including greenhouse/glasshouse and small-scale field research with the new plant line or with other plant lines having the same trait
- the scale-up of lines of the plant crop varieties developed by more traditional techniques of plant breeding
- the scale-up of other plant lines developed by the same technique
the presence of related (and sexually compatible) plants in the surrounding natural environment, and knowledge of the potential for gene transfer between crop plant and the relative, and

interactions between/among the crop plant, environment and trait.”

Risk/safety assessment and risk management

Risk/safety assessment involves the identification of potential environmental adverse effects or hazards, and determining, when a hazard is identified, the probability of it occurring. If a potential hazard or adverse affect is identified, measures may be taken to minimise or mitigate it. This is risk management. Absolute certainty, or “zero risk”, in a safety assessment is not achievable, so uncertainty is an inescapable aspect of all risk assessment and risk management (OECD, 1993a). For example, there is uncertainty in extrapolating the results of testing in one species to identify potential effects in another. Risk assessors and risk managers thus spend considerable effort to address uncertainty. Many of the activities in intergovernmental organisations, such as the OECD, address ways to handle uncertainty (OECD, 2000).

References and additional reading


Part I:

Micro-organisms
Chapter 1.

Bacteria: Pathogenicity factors

This chapter provides guidance on topics and issues relevant to the risk/safety assessment of commercial environmental applications involving genetically engineered micro-organisms, especially bacteria. It explores the important aspects in bacteria for causing adverse human health effects, and how this knowledge can be used in biosafety regulatory assessment. It contains information on bacterial pathogenicity (general considerations, factors and determinants, genetics and molecular biology), and also elements on assessing potential for bacteria-mediated adverse human health effects.

The chapter was prepared by the OECD Working Group on the Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology, Sub-working Group on Micro-organisms, with the Netherlands and Canada having served as lead countries. It was initially issued in September 2011.
General considerations for bacterial pathogenicity

This chapter provides guidance on the concept of bacterial pathogenicity in the context of risk/safety assessment of deliberate release of “genetically engineered”, or “genetically modified”, micro-organisms intended for commercial environmental applications (e.g. bioremediation, biosensors, biofertilisers, biopesticides, biomass conversion or oil recovery). It is limited in scope to bacteria that may exhibit properties pathogenic to human beings. Not included in the scope are environmental releases of known (potential) pathogens, e.g. vaccine strains. The chapter explores the factors that are important in bacteria for causing adverse human health effects and assesses how this knowledge can be used in risk/safety assessment of environmental applications of bacteria. Where appropriate, the chapter also refers to certain aspects of mamalian bacterial pathogens. For specific aspects of plant and/or other animal (e.g. fish, insects and other invertebrates) pathogens, separate documents on these issues would be needed.

Genetically engineered bacteria applied for environmental purposes, including field trials, should be evaluated to determine whether they may pose hazards to human health, which this chapter addresses. The analysis from the OECD “Blue Book” on recombinant DNA safety (OECD, 1986) appears to be still valid: Agricultural applications may result in release of large quantities of modified [micro]-organisms into terrestrial or aquatic ecosystems. Recombinant DNA-derived vaccines for animals and humans, as well as certain plant-associated micro-organisms, may in some cases have a limited pattern of environmental exposure because of biological specificity to the host, but incidental release to the environment certainly occurs in sewage and feed-lot or run-off waters, and may be significant. Environmental applications (e.g. metal extraction, pollutant and toxic waste degradation) may be confined initially to a specific location or may result in broad ecosystem exposure. The scientific considerations for assessing risk/safety will vary with each particular environmental application, depending on the organism, the physical and biological proximity to man and/or other significant biota. Local quarantine regulations, confinement measures and monitoring methodologies utilised during research and development will also be relevant.

In general, prior to their release, bacterial strains should be submitted to an assessment of their potential health effects, including their pathogenicity. As “virulence” is the quantitative measure of the pathogenicity of a micro-organism, the virulence factors of a bacterial strain are its traits that will be taken into account in the risk/safety assessment. For the special case of genetically engineered micro-organisms, the risk/safety assessment should take into account any characteristics of the engineered micro-organism related to pathogenicity, and whether any introduced traits are associated with pathogenicity.

When performing a regulatory review of the role of a donor gene as a virulence factor in the recipient micro-organism, regulators need a good understanding of the significance of a given virulence gene in the physiological background of the donor organism, as well as of the constitution of the recipient micro-organism. A large number of interacting factors affect the ability of a micro-organism to become pathogenic, and acquisition of a single gene in the absence of other genes necessary for pathogenicity will not likely convert a non-pathogen to a pathogen. Only if the newly acquired gene can have a role in the pathogenicity of the recipient micro-organism can an interaction be expected between the newly acquired gene and the resident genes contributing to a pathogenic lifestyle.
Pathogenicity is a multifactorial process which depends on the immune status of the host, the nature of the bacterial species or strain, and the number of organisms in the exposure. Therefore, the risk/safety assessment for human health can only be done on a case-by-case basis, taking into account the activity(s) of the introduced gene(s), the (potential) health hazards of the bacterial strain depending on the route of exposure (e.g. ingestion, inhalation, dermal contact) and the actual way that exposure to the strain is expected to occur under the conditions of the release. Exposure can depend on a number of factors, including the pattern of release (e.g. aerial spray, ground application, deep well injection, application into water bodies or effluent streams, shedding from inoculated humans or animals) and the scale of use (e.g. pilot, field trial, commercial use).

Because this chapter is intended as an aid to general risk/safety assessment tool, its nature is generic, i.e. not organism specific, and refers to specific bacteria and characteristics only to illustrate specific concepts. In addition to describing potential adverse health effects, and the bacterial factors that can contribute to these effects, the chapter describes general considerations in assessing the potential hazard of unmodified bacteria, e.g. a description of some tools available for predicting pathogenicity. Lastly, the chapter addresses considerations for the potential to introduce or alter pathogenicity as a result of genetic modifications to the micro-organism.

**General considerations in assessing the hazardous potential of bacteria:**

**The concept of bacterial pathogenicity**

This section and the following two sections deal with the concept of bacterial pathogenicity in general, as it is discussed for unmodified bacteria; the concept also applies to genetically modified bacteria. Pathogenic bacteria have the ability to invade their hosts and produce disease. In this chapter, “pathogenicity” is referred to as the property of a micro-organism to cause disease. The great majority of bacteria that are encountered in the environment usually do not present problems to human health, in the sense that no record exists of them behaving as pathogens. Many bacteria are even beneficial, e.g. because of their role in essential processes in the environment such as mineralization, or their function as human symbionts. There are many bacteria that may act as opportunistic pathogens, i.e. organisms that are normally present in the environment or as part of the commensal bacterial population of a host, but that may cause disease when defense systems of the host become debilitated, or when the equilibrium within the existing bacterial population is disrupted. In general, given the interplay between members of microbial communities and the interplay between micro-organisms and potential hosts, it is unrealistic to say that a bacterium can never be a pathogen, and probably “non-pathogenic” bacteria can best be seen as bacteria that have not yet proven to have pathogenic potential.

Although “pathogenicity” can be defined in terms of properties of a micro-organism, it is important to keep in mind that the concept of pathogenicity is highly anthropomorphic, as it implies that a micro-organism would cause disease “on purpose”. A more realistic view is that the body is a habitat for micro-organisms to adapt to and use as a favourable environment for survival and growth. Some bacteria have developed a “lifestyle” that enables them to colonise this niche in symbiotic as well as in pathogenic ways (Wassenaar and Gaastra, 2001). Each body surface – skin, conjunctiva, mucous membranes of the upper and lower respiratory tract, intestinal tract, genital tract and so forth – harbors a characteristic commensal bacterial population which differs qualitatively from the population of other areas of the body. Bacteria with pathogenic
behaviour may establish a foothold in this microbial ecosystem. Once established, other pathogenic properties allow the pathogen to penetrate into deeper tissues, to avoid or counteract host defense mechanisms, and to multiply. As they pursue this strategy, pathogenic bacteria produce damage to the host. Virulence-associated factors may be defined as all factors that are essential for expressing pathogenicity.

Whether a host will develop disease is, however, not just determined by the pathogenic potential of the bacterium, but also by host factors. There is a formidable array of specific and non-specific host factors that affect the outcome of an encounter between a host and a pathogenic bacterium. For example, the normal commensal population plays an important role in protecting the host from invasion by pathogenic organisms. They do this by mechanisms such as: 1) competition for the same nutrients; 2) competition for the same receptors on the host cells (tropism); 3) production of bacteriocins or other antimicrobial agents (interference); and 4) stimulation of cross-protective immune factors. The commensal population of the host may be affected by a number of activities (e.g. use of antibiotics). Additional host factors that can affect pathogenicity include the production of antimicrobial substances (e.g. lysozyme in bronchial secretions; or the pancreatic enzymes, bile or intestinal secretions; or secretion of acid [HCl] for low pH of the stomach). Also, humans have an innate immune system that protects against invasion. When this system breaks down, e.g. in advanced stages of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) (Gradon, Timpone and Schnittman, 1992), bacteria that are normally not able to cause disease in humans may become opportunistic pathogens that cause conditions that clinically mimic the more commonly encountered “frank” pathogens. The potential of bacteria that normally occur in the environment to cause opportunistic infections in hosts with debilitated defense systems is recognised as an important human health hazard. The case of the Burkholderia cepacia complex (Bcc) is an example (Mahenthiralingham, Urban and Goldberg, 2005). Bacteria of the Bcc are found throughout the environment, some as plant pathogens.

General considerations in assessing the hazardous potential of bacteria:
Classification of risk groups of bacteria

Pathogenic bacteria are commonly classified in risk groups, according to their pathogenic potential. The classification of the World Health Organization (WHO), as found in its Laboratory Biosafety Manual (WHO, 2004), is generally accepted. It should be noted, though, that these risk groups are primarily concerned with laboratory applications, where exposure may be high. They are valid for persons that are not immunocompromised. According to this classification, risk group 1 (“no or low individual or community risk”) comprises micro-organisms that are unlikely to cause human or animal disease. Risk group 2 (“moderate individual risk, low community risk”) comprises pathogens that can cause human or animal disease but that are unlikely to be a serious hazard to laboratory workers, the community, livestock or the environment; laboratory exposures may cause serious infection, but effective treatment and preventive measures are available and the risk of the spread of infection is limited. Risk group 3 (“high individual risk, low community risk”) comprises pathogens that usually cause serious human or animal disease but do not ordinarily spread from one infected individual to another; effective treatment and preventive measures are available. Risk group 4 (“high individual and community risk”) comprises pathogens that usually cause serious human or animal disease and that can be readily transmitted from one individual to another, directly or indirectly; effective treatment and preventive measures are not usually available.
For practical reasons, also in regulatory practice, a distinction is drawn between bacteria that are pathogenic to humans and bacteria that are pathogenic to other animals. Host specificity of bacteria is the result of differences between the environment that bacteria encounter in different hosts, i.e. in the human body and the bodies of other animals. If there are similarities between these environments, it may be expected that pathogenic organisms frequently “jump the species barrier”. Indeed, there are a number of bacteria that are primarily pathogenic to other vertebrates that are also pathogenic to humans, e.g. *Bacillus anthracis*, *Brucella abortus*, *Yersinia pestis*, *Leptospira* spp. and a number of *Salmonella* species. Human diseases caused by these bacteria are called zoonoses (see also Blancou et al., 2005, for a review). In some cases insect vectors play a specific role in passing the pathogenic bacteria from the animal to the human host. Zoonotic diseases are “animal borne”: animals, or animal products, act as a source of the disease. Consequently, exposure to the disease may change with changing social, behavioral and consumer practices. The risk class of a zoonotic bacterial species may differ depending on the host. For environmental risk/safety evaluations of activities with these bacterial species, the highest risk class has to be taken into consideration.

As pointed out previously, it is difficult to definitively state that a bacterial strain is non-pathogenic. The evidence given for non-pathogenicity can only be tentative. The determination of whether a bacterial strain may be considered non-pathogenic is usually made in a stepwise fashion. The strain may be considered non-pathogenic if it belongs to a species or taxonomic group for which no pathogenic strains are known. If it has direct relatives that are pathogenic, or if it is derived as an attenuated pathogenic strain, it should be shown that the strain effectively lacks the virulence determinants of its pathogenic relatives. If this fails, evidence for non-pathogenicity can be obtained through appropriate animal testing. This requires, however, a validated animal model. If none of this evidence is available or can be obtained, the strain may be considered non-pathogenic because it has a long history of safe use under conditions where no specific physical containment, like a closed fermentor system, has been applied to reduce worker exposure.

Although there is a clear value in using risk groups in practice (e.g. refer to WHO, 2004, Chapters 1 and 2), the concept of “opportunistic pathogenicity” implies that there is a continuum from non-pathogens to full frank pathogens. Some bacteria complete their life cycle independent of a human or animal host. Others that lack the ability to cause disease may still be able to recognise, adhere to and multiply in or on the host, as commensals. Opportunistic pathogens have some limited ability to cause disease, but are normally kept under control by the host immune response and defense systems and the competitive, harmless micro-organisms with which they compete in the host’s habitat. However, they may acquire a toehold, with adverse consequences for the host, generally under circumstances where the host’s defense mechanisms are compromised (e.g. weakening of the immune system through age or HIV infection) or destroyed (e.g. through skin lesions or burns). Some opportunistic pathogens are acquired from the environment while others may constitute part of the host’s normal bacterial population. Some bacterial species causing infections at hospitals are used in bioremediation and/or bioaugmentation processes which may involve inoculation of soil with large amounts of bacteria. For instance, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* are organisms used industrially that cause nosocomial infections in cystic fibrosis and burn patients. *Serratia marcescens*, a common soil bacterium, causes pneumonia, urinary tract infections and bacteremia in compromised human hosts and is lethal to certain insect species with commercial use as a biopesticide while commensal on the rhizoplane of many plant species. Other bacteria, such as *Lactobacillus acidophilus*, may be considered
to be non-pathogens, because they rarely or never cause human disease. However, it should be noted that categorisation as non-pathogens may change due to the inherent variability and adaptability of bacteria and the potential for detrimental effects on host defense systems caused, for example, by radiation therapy, chemotherapy and immunotherapy; genetic defects (cystic fibrosis); or immunosuppressive infection (HIV).

General considerations in assessing the hazardous potential of bacteria: Approaches to bacterial virulence

In 1890 Robert Koch established his “postulates”, a standard for the evidence of causation in infectious disease. The evidence should show that: 1) the micro-organism occurs in every case of the disease in question and under circumstances which can account for the pathological changes and clinical course of the disease; 2) after being isolated from the body and grown in pure culture, 3) the micro-organism can be inoculated into a healthy host and induce the disease anew; and 4) the micro-organism can be re-isolated after this experimental infection.

Virulence factors can be defined in terms of Koch’s postulates as phenotypic properties of a micro-organism that are present in pathogenic strains that fulfill Koch’s postulates but that are not observed in related strains that are not pathogenic. Although the postulates have been generally accepted for over 100 years (Fredricks and Relman, 1996), Koch himself already recognised the limitations of these guidelines. For instance, the ability to cause disease as an invariant virulence trait has been challenged. In recent years, a more integrated view of microbial pathogenesis has been developed which recognises that the contributions of both the pathogen and its host are required. The lack of experimental models for human-specific pathogens limits testing of the third postulate, and consequently also the rigorous testing of the role of a human-specific virulence factor.

Still, based on the notions of Koch’s postulates, a number of virulence factors have been identified because of their clear role in the pathogenesis or their clear-cut coincidence with pathogenic strains, (e.g adhesins, invasins, haemolysins or, in general, cytolsyins). With the development of molecular biological techniques, it became possible to identify the genes encoding these known virulence factors and to identify genes of unknown function for which a possible role in virulence could be determined. This resulted in a new approach of research on bacterial pathogenicity, in which the role of specific genes in bacterial virulence was the key point.

Virulence of a micro-organism is usually considered as the “degree” of pathogenicity of the micro-organism in a susceptible host. Finlay and Falkow (1997) discussed the various definitions of microbial pathogenicity, and the idea that pathogens can be distinguished from their non-virulent counterparts by the presence of such virulence genes. A virulence factor is a phenotypic trait associated with the virulence level of a micro-organism. The term is also used for a gene product (or group of gene products) that is responsible for the phenotypic trait. Virulence factors add to the pathogenicity, by enhancing one or more of the processes involved in the stages of pathogenicity: 1) the ability of the bacterial pathogen to gain access to the individual by surviving on or penetrating skin and mucous membranes; 2) the in vivo multiplication of the pathogen; 3) the inhibition or avoidance of host protective mechanisms; and 4) the production of disease or damage to the host. In this chapter microbial toxins are regarded as virulence factors even though these toxins are defined as gene products produced by a bacterium that can cause harmful effects in the absence of the active living bacterium because in
most cases the bacterium producing the toxin has to be established within the host in order to deliver the toxin most effectively. Therefore, the phenotypic trait of toxin production may be seen as increasing the pathogenic potential of a bacterium, while the full-blown effects of a toxin may be dependent on other virulence factors of the producing micro-organism, (e.g. the ability to colonise the host). It should, however, be noted that some bacteria that are not regarded as pathogenic (e.g. neurotoxin producing cyanobacteria) may also produce toxins, and that some bacteria producing toxins that can act at a distance (e.g. *Clostridium botulinum* causing foodborne disease) are characterised as pathogens.

**Bacterial factors and determinants for pathogenicity**

“Virulence” is a quantitative measure of the pathogenicity of a micro-organism that may be expressed by the ratio of the number of individuals developing clinical illness to the number of individuals exposed to the micro-organism, or in a comparative manner, by the number of individuals that develop clinical illness if the same dose of different micro-organisms is applied to each of them.

Pathogenic bacteria have evolved a number of different mechanisms, which result in disease in the host. The virulence factors and determinants used by bacteria to interact with the host can be unique to specific pathogens or conserved across several different species or even genera. For instance, common mechanisms for adherence, invasion, evasion of host defenses and damage to host cells are shared by profoundly different microbial pathogens. However, a virulence factor can only contribute to the pathogenic potential of a bacterium in and as far as the micro-organism possesses the constellation of traits conducive to pathogenicity. This section examines bacterial factors/determinants that contribute to pathogenicity in bacteria. While these are the determinants that would generally be considered in a risk/safety assessment, it should be noted that the same factor/determinant will not necessarily have a similar effect on the virulence of two different bacteria, and thus simple possession of a trait is not an indicator that the micro-organism is pathogenic. The concept of the “pathogenicity” of bacteria is further discussed in the next section.

**Host recognition/adherence**

Bacterial adherence to host surfaces is an essential first step in colonisation, infection and disease production. Colonisation establishes the organism at the portal of entry. Whereas intact outer skin is generally impervious to invasion by organisms, surface penetration of the urogenital, digestive and respiratory tracts as well as the mucosal barrier is more easily accomplished. Much of the body that is usually regarded as internal is topologically connected to the exterior. For example, the surfaces of the intestinal lumen, the lung alveoli, the bile cannaliculi and the kidney tubules are continuous with the outside skin. Organisms infecting these regions usually have elaborate adherence mechanisms and some ability to overcome or withstand the constant pressure of the host defenses on the surface. Bacterial adherence to host cells is usually a prerequisite to invasion. Consequently, a great deal of research has focused on elucidating bacterial mechanisms of adherence to host cells (adhesin biosynthesis, regulation of adhesins, identification of host receptors).

Adhesion can be defined as the coupling of a bacterium with a substratum. For molecules on the surface of the bacterium to interact with molecules on the surface of a host cell or the extracellular matrix, the two molecules must come into contact,
an action that leads to the creation of intermolecular bonds requiring a certain amount of energy or effort to break. Bacterial adherence to a eukaryotic cell or tissue surface requires the participation of two factors: a receptor and an adhesin. The receptors so far defined are usually specific carbohydrate or peptide residues on the eukaryotic cell surface. Many bacterial adhesins are a macromolecular component of the bacterial cell surface which interacts with the host cell receptor. This interaction is usually complementary and specific, although most receptors can bind several ligands. It is this specificity which determines the tropism of the bacteria for a particular tissue (or a specific animal).

Bacterial adherence to cells or tissue surfaces may be specific or non-specific. Non-specific adherence or “docking” involves attractive forces and allows for the approach and reversible attachment of the bacterium to the eukaryotic surface (Kachlany et al., 2000). Possible interactions and forces involved include: hydrophobic interactions, electrostatic attractions, Brownian movement, recruitment and trapping by biofilm polymers interacting with the bacterial glycocalyx or capsule (Gilbert, Das and Foley, 1997; An, Dickinson and Doyle, 2000; Ukuku and Fett, 2002; Foong and Dickson, 2004). Specific adherence occurs when the bacterium forms a more permanent, yet still reversible, attachment with the eukaryotic surface and may proceed as one or more steps. Many specific lock-and-key bonds between complementary molecules on each cell surface are formed. Complementary receptor and adhesin molecules must be accessible and arranged in such a way that many bonds form over the area of contact between the two cells. Once the bonds are formed, separation under physiological conditions requires significant energy input. Some Gram positive bacteria with microbial surface components recognizing adhesive matrix molecules (MSCRAMMs) employ a dock, lock and latch mode of ligand binding (Ponnuraj et al., 2003). Generally, reversible attachment precedes irreversible attachment, but in some cases specific adherence is not observed.

Mammalian cells communicate with each other through cell surface receptors. Once a receptor is bound with its ligand, a cellular response is triggered. Bacterial recognition of and interaction with host cell ligands facilitates the initial adherence to, and subsequent invasion of, host cells (Table 1.1). Through host receptor binding, bacteria exploit normal cellular processes to invade host cells.

Many micro-organisms have elaborate properties that can be used for industrial purposes in extensive biotechnological applications. For example, Rhodococcus spp. have elaborated adhesive properties for attachment to environmental surfaces or for biofilm formation that are particularly useful for adherence to heavy metals and hydrocarbons (Shabtai and Fleminger, 1994; Stratton et al., 2002). Although Rhodococcus spp. are not generally considered to be human pathogens, some species have emerged as rare opportunistic human pathogens. Rhodococcus equi infection is characterised by bronchiopneumonia following adherence and entry into alveolar macrophages. Garton et al. (2002) postulated that a novel lipoarabinomannan (LAM) variant may contribute to pathogenesis of disease caused by R. equi, similar to Manosylated LAM of Mycobacterium tuberculosis which facilitates adherence to alveolar macrophages via mannose receptors. Evaluators must always be cognisant that those factors which have extensive industrial applications (for instance, adhesive properties) may also confer one of the properties that allow a micro-organism to cause disease in susceptible individuals.
### Table 1.1. Examples of specific bacterial adherence to host cell surfaces

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bacterium/disease</th>
<th>Adherence factors</th>
<th>Cellular receptors</th>
<th>Attachment rites</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bordetella pertussis/whooping cough</td>
<td>fimb; FHA; pertactin; pertussis toxin</td>
<td>VL5; β2 integrin via LR1/LAP</td>
<td>Monocytes/macrophages respiratory epithelium</td>
<td>Hazenbos et al. (1995); Mattoo et al. (2001); Ishibashi et al. (2002); McGuirk, McCann and Mills (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burkholderia cepacia/</td>
<td>Cable (cbi) type II pili</td>
<td>Mucus glycoproteins</td>
<td>Respiratory epithelium</td>
<td>Sajjan et al. (1995)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportunistic infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterococcus faecalis/</td>
<td>Collagen adhesin gene (acm)</td>
<td>Collagen</td>
<td>Various tissue</td>
<td>Nallapareddy, Singh and Murray (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportunistic bacteria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escherichia coli –</td>
<td>FaEG (F4 or K88 fimbriae, pigs); FanC (F5 or K99 fimbriae, calves, lambs); GAG</td>
<td>Specific glycoconjugates</td>
<td>Brush borders of intestinal enterocytes</td>
<td>Nagy and Fekete(1999); Van den Broeck et al. (2000); Grange et al. (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETEC/diarrhoea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escherichia coli –</td>
<td>Sfta (S fimbriae)</td>
<td>Sialyl-α2-3 β-galactosyl- containing receptor molecules</td>
<td>Endothelial and epithelial cells</td>
<td>Tullus et al. (1992); Saren et al. (1999); Bonacorsi et al. (2000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPEC/diarrhoea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escherichia coli –</td>
<td>Flagellin</td>
<td>TLR-5</td>
<td>Human monocyte epithilium</td>
<td>Miyamoto et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EHEC/haemolytic uraemic syndrome</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escherichia coli –</td>
<td>P pili [PapG (I, II, III)]; FimH; fimbria</td>
<td>GB03, GB04, GB05; CD55, Gal[α1-4]Gal containing isoreceptors, mannosylated glycoproteins</td>
<td>Kidney epithelial cells, erythrocytes; urinary tract epithelium</td>
<td>Dodson et al. (2001); Johnson et al. (2001); Ishikawa et al. (2004); Nowicki, Selvarangan and Nowicki (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPEC/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyelonephritis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemophilus influenzae</td>
<td>Fimbriae LKP family</td>
<td>Sialic acid-containing lactosyl ceramides and AnW6 antigen</td>
<td>Oropharyngeal epithelial cells and erythrocytes</td>
<td>Van Alphen et al. (1991)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helicobacter pylorippticus/</td>
<td>BabA, SabAB adhesins</td>
<td>MUC5AC, MUC5B and MUC57</td>
<td>Oral cavity and stomach epithelium</td>
<td>Goodwin et al. (2008); Lindén et al. (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulcer disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legionella pneumophila/</td>
<td>PiiE (pili adhesin); HMW1, HMW2, Hap, Hia</td>
<td>Fibronectin</td>
<td>Epithelial cells</td>
<td>McCrea et al. (1997); Laarmann et al. (2002); St, Geine III (2002); O'Neill et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legionnaires disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listeria monocytogenes/</td>
<td>InIA; InIB</td>
<td>E-cadherin; gC1q-R</td>
<td>Respiratory epithelium</td>
<td>Braun, Ghebrehiwet and Cossart (2000); Katharu et al. (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listeriosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moraxella catarrhalis</td>
<td>UspA1 and UspA2</td>
<td>Fibronectin</td>
<td>Epithelial cells</td>
<td>Tan, Fongren and Riesbeck (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moraxella leprae/leprosy</td>
<td>PGL-1 glycolipid</td>
<td>α2-laminin-dystroglycan complex</td>
<td>Schwann cells</td>
<td>Marques et al., 2001; Brophy (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycobacterium leprae/leprosy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycobacterium avium/pulmonary disease</td>
<td>FAP</td>
<td>Fibronectin</td>
<td>Extracellular matrix</td>
<td>Schorey et al. (1998); Middleton et al. (2000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycoplasma pneumoniae/atypical</td>
<td>P1; P30</td>
<td>Sulfated glycolipids, sialylated compounds</td>
<td>Respiratory epithelium, alveolar macrophages</td>
<td>Athamna, Kramer and Kahane (1996); Seto et al., 2001; Balsh et al. (2003); Seto and Miyata (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;walking&quot; pneumonia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycoplasma genitalium/M. pneumoiae</td>
<td>MG; P140 and P110; MP; P1 and P30 (specific adhesions of attachment organelles)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Burgos et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neisseria meningitidis/carry state</td>
<td>plic (type IV pili) Opa; Opc</td>
<td>CD46; HSPGs, fibronectin, vitronectin</td>
<td>Nasopharyngeal epithelium, endothelium</td>
<td>Merz and So (2000); Dehio, Gray-Owen and Meyer (2000); Hauck and Meyer (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porphyromonas gingivalis</td>
<td>Type II fimbriae</td>
<td>α551-integrin</td>
<td>Epithelium</td>
<td>Nakagawa et al. (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</td>
<td>Type IV pili, OprF, PA-IL, PA-IL</td>
<td>asialo-GM1 –GM2; galactose- and fucose/mannose-containing glycoconjugates</td>
<td>Epithelium</td>
<td>Craig, Pique and Tainer (2004); Azghani et al. (2002); Winzer et al. (2000); Imberty et al. (2004)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rickettsia sp.</td>
<td>rOmpA; Crystaline proteic layer (S-layer) made of surface protein antigen (SPA)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Endothelial cells</td>
<td>Li and Walker (1998)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 1.1. Examples of specific bacterial adherence to host cell surfaces (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bacterium/disease</th>
<th>Adherence factors</th>
<th>Cellular receptors</th>
<th>Attachment sites</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Salmonella enterica serovar Typhimurium/gastroenteritis</td>
<td>fim (type I fimbriae); perl (PE.fimbriae); tfl (LP fimbriae); agf (curli fimbriae); ShdA</td>
<td>oligomannose motifs; Hep-2 domain of fibronectin</td>
<td>Intestinal epithelium</td>
<td>Bäumler, Tsolis and Heffron (1997); Thankavel et al. (1999); Kingsley et al. (2004)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shigella flexneri/dysentery</td>
<td>Invasion plasmid antigen BCD</td>
<td>αβι integrin; carbohydrate moieties associated with mucin layer</td>
<td>Colonic epithelial cells</td>
<td>Rajkumar, Devaraj and Niranjali (1998); Kerr (1999); Kohler, Rodrigues and McCormick (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staphylococcus aureus/boils, furuncles, impetigo, septic shock</td>
<td>MSCRAMMs (FnBP, Protein A, PNSG, Cna, coagulase, Cif)</td>
<td>αβι integrin; other unknown receptors on collagen, fibrinogen, IgG, prothrombin</td>
<td>Extracellular matrix</td>
<td>Shuter, Hatcher and Lowy (1996); Salyers and Whitt (2002); Roche et al. (2004)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staphylococcus pneumoniae/ sepsis, meningitis, otitis media, pneumonia</td>
<td>PavA</td>
<td>Fibronectin</td>
<td>Nasopharynx and alveolar epithelium</td>
<td>Holmes et al. (2001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcus pyogenes/throat infections, other serious infections</td>
<td>MSCRAMMs (Stbl/F1, Fjb54, Stbl/ISOF, F2)</td>
<td>αβι integrin (fibronectin receptor)</td>
<td>Pharyngeal epithelium</td>
<td>Cui et al. (2000); Towers et al. (2003); Kreikemeyer et al. (2004)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group A Streptococcus (S. pyogenes)</td>
<td>Protein M</td>
<td>CD46</td>
<td>Keratinocytes,</td>
<td>Rezaallah et al. (2005)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group B Streptococcus</td>
<td>BiBA</td>
<td>hC4bp</td>
<td>Epithelial cells</td>
<td>Sanii et al. (2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group G Streptococcus (S. dysgalactiae)</td>
<td>Surface protein FOG</td>
<td>Collagens I fibrils</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nitsche et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treponema Pallidum/lyphophilis</td>
<td>MSCRAMMs</td>
<td>Fibronectin receptor containing ααβι,αβι integrin</td>
<td>Mucosal epithelium</td>
<td>Cameron (2003); Lee et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibrio cholerae/cholera</td>
<td>Tcp pil: others (O Ag of LPS, MSHA, MFRHA)</td>
<td>Specific carbohydrate and glycoprotein receptors</td>
<td>Intestinal epithelium</td>
<td>Franzon, Barker and Manning (1993); Häse and Mekalanos (1998); Sasmal et al. (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yersinia enterocolitica/diarhoea</td>
<td>Invasin (OMP); YadA</td>
<td>βι integrins (αβι, αβι, αβι, αβι, αβι and αβι); collagen, laminin, fibronectin</td>
<td>Intestinal epithelium and submucosa</td>
<td>Schulte et al. (2000); El Tahir and Skurnik (2001); Isberg and Barnes (2001)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

- asialo-GM1 -GM2: glycolipids
- Bfp: bundle forming pilus
- C4bp: complement component 4 binding protein
- CD46: membrane cofactor protein, member of superfamily of complement resistant proteins
- CD55: decay accelerating factor for complement
- Clf: clumping factor
- Cna: collagen binding protein
- CR1: complement receptor type 1
- CR3: complement receptor type 3
- Curli fimbriae: thin aggregative fimbriae
- EHEC: Enterohemorrhagic Escherichia coli
- EPEC: Enteropathogenic Escherichia coli
- ETEC: Enterotoxigenic Escherichia coli
- FAP: fibronecin attachment protein
- FcR: Fc receptor
- FHA: filamentous hemagglutinin
- Fim: fimbriae
- FnBP: fibronecin binding protein
- FOG: Friend of GATA
- HbhA: heparin-binding hemagglutinin
- HSPGs: heparansulphate proteoglycans
- InlA: internalin A
- InlB: internalin B
- LKP: long-thick fimbriae
- LP fimbriae: long polar fimbriae
- LPS: lipopolysaccharide
- LRI/IP: leukocyte response integrin (αVβ3, CD61/intergrin associated protein (CD47)
- MFRHA: mannose fucose resistant hemagglutinin
- MOMP: major outer membrane protein
- MSCRAMMS: microbial surface components recognizing adhesive matrix molecules
- MSHA: mannose sensitive hemagglutinin
- MUC: mucin gene
- NMEC: Neonatal Meningitidis Escherichia coli
- Opc: class 5 outer membrene protein
- Opa: opacity associated
- Opf: porin F
- PavA: Adherence and virulence protein A
- PGL-1: phenolic glycolipid 1
- Pil: pili (fimbriae)
- PNSG: Poly-n-succinyl-β-1,6 glucosamine
- rOmpA: 190-kDa cell surface antigen
- ShdB: host colisation factor
- Tcp: toxin co-regulated pili (demonstrably important in humans)
- Tir: Translocated intimim receptor
- TLR-5: Toll-like receptor 5
- UspA: ubiquitous surface protein
- UPEC: Uropathogenic Escherichia coli
- VLA-5: very late antigen-5
While not an all-inclusive list, Table 1.1 gives examples of specific attachments of micro-organisms to host cell surfaces. It should be noted that many, but not all, adherence factors also play a role in invasion. For a more comprehensive review of adhesins, receptors and related structures, the reader is directed to articles by Connell et al. (1997), Soto and Hultgren (1999), Klemm and Schembri (2000), and Nougayredé et al. (2006).

In addition to determining pathogen location, adhesins affect important aspects of the biology of infection. Many pathogens have evolved the ability to bind to cell adhesion molecules (CAMs), which are eukaryotic cell-surface receptors that facilitate cell interaction and communication with other cells and the extracellular matrix. In these cases, cell signaling processes involving actin rearrangements are affected by virtue of their contact with the cytoskeleton (Mims, Nash and Stephen, 2001). Host cell adhesion receptors can be subdivided into several groups, for example, integrins, cadherins, immunoglobulin superfamily cell adhesion molecules (IgCAMs), selectins, receptor protein tyrosine phosphatases, syndecans and hyaluronate receptors (Freemont, 1998; Hauck, 2002). Since multiple adhesion molecules are found on a single host cell, they are ideal targets for pathogens trying to anchor themselves. Often, bacteria are able to bind to cell adhesion molecules by mimicking or acting in place of host cell receptors or their ligands, and may allow bacteria to exploit several of these molecules to establish tight contact with eukaryotic cell surfaces and the extracellular matrix (Hauck, 2002; Boyle and Findlay, 2003).

Bacterial adhesins\(^3\) have been divided into two major groups: 1) pili (fimbriae) and 2) non-pilus (afimbrial) adhesins. Pili and fimbriae are interchangeable terms to designate short hairlike structures on the surface of bacterial cells. For the purposes of this chapter, the terms are used interchangeably and depend upon the article referenced.

Many bacteria express adhesive pili, which are hairlike surface appendages extending out from the bacterial surface to establish contact with the surface of the host cell. Pili may be displayed circumferentially (Salyers and Whitt, 2002; Hardy, Tudor and St. Geme III, 2003) or preferentially located on one part of the bacterial cell (Nougayrède et al., 2006). Binding to the host cell target is specific and it is this specificity that determines the preferential site/host for adherence.

The P pilus operon serves as a useful model for the general study of different bacterial pilus systems since the concepts are similar and many of the components are interchangeable, even though the host receptors differ. For example, the pyelonephritis-associated pili-D (PapD) chaperone, in addition to mediating the assembly of P pili, can modulate the assembly of type 1 pili (Bonci et al., 1997). There is a family of periplasmic PapD-like chaperones needed for the assembly of several pili, including K88, K99 and Haemophilus influenzae pili. Additionally, since the molecular machinery required for pilus biogenesis and bacterial surface assembly is conserved among diverse pili (Hultgren et al., 1993) the operons of type 1 and P pili are very similar with alignment of functionally analogous sequences. Nevertheless, they are structurally distinct pili (type 1 are flexible, rod-like fibers, while P pili are rigid structures) and bind to different receptors (Finlay and Falkow, 1997). Many adhesins of E. coli include their common pili and many strains of E. coli are able to express a variety of pili encoded by distinct regions of the chromosome or plasmids (Johnson, 1991).

Type 1 pili produced by E. coli strains recognise mannose receptors on host cells (Schwan et al., 2002). The mannose binding site may be located at the tips or inserted along the length of the pilus. Different tip protein adhesins allow the bacterium to adhere to different host cell receptors. This is of specific interest for evaluators since changes to
tip proteins can significantly alter the tropism of the bacteria for a specific receptor. For example, tip proteins on pyelonephritis-associated (pap) pili recognise a galactose-galactose disaccharide, while tip proteins on S-fimbriae recognise sialic acid. It is equally important to recognise that while a receptor may be cell- or host-specific, this specificity may also change during the developmental stages of the host. Thus, while \textit{E. coli} has been associated with meningitis in the neonate, in the adult this association is lost. Animal studies have demonstrated that endothelial receptors for \textit{E. coli} are only present in the brain of the newborn (Parkkinen et al., 1988).

Type 4 pili (Tfp) constitute a separate, unique class of pili expressed by diverse gram-negative organisms of medical, environmental and industrial importance including \textit{Pseudomonas aeruginosa}, \textit{Neisseria} spp., \textit{Moraxella} spp., Enteropathogenic \textit{E. coli} (EPEC) and \textit{Vibrio cholera}. Tfp share structural, biochemical, antigenic and morphological features (Strom and Lory, 1993) and a biogenesis pathway that is highly conserved and resembles the type II protein secretion pathway (Wolfgang et al., 2000). It has been suggested that the pilin molecules located at the tip may function as adhesins since the sequences exposed differ from those packed into repeating structures within a pilus. For instance, Tfp-mediated adherence is strongly correlated with a separate tip protein, PilC for \textit{N. gonorrhoeae}, rather than the more abundant pilin subunit protein PilE (Winther-Larsen et al., 2001). Alterations in the pilus subunit can also affect adherence levels. Whereas \textit{P. aeruginosa} strains usually express only one pilus subunit, the considerable variation exhibited by this subunit by the various strains affects the proficiency of adherence of the strains.

Bacteria usually adhere to receptor molecules via protein structures on their cell surface (typically pili) with distinct surface-binding capacities (Soto and Hultgren, 1999). However, other important adhesins found in a number of gram-negative pathogens may, alternatively, be anchored directly to the outer membrane (OM), resulting in an intimate attachment with the target cell receptor (Veiga, de Lorenzo and Fernandez, 2003). Afimbrial adhesins are bacterial surface proteins, structurally distinct from the adhesins of fimbriae, that facilitate the tighter binding of bacteria to host cell that usually follows initial binding via fimbriae. These proteins are important components of the systems that allow bacteria to attach to and invade host cells. Some may recognise proteins on host cell surfaces while others recognise carbohydrates (Salyers and Whitt, 2002). \textit{Legionella pneumophila} afimbrial adhesin seems to be involved in attachment to and invasion of amoebae. Adhesins require presentation on the bacterial surface in an active binding conformation for interaction with the host cell. In gram-negative bacteria, surface localisation requires the translocation of the protein through the cytoplasmic membrane (export into the periplasm) and through the OM (secretion). Generally, surface localisation occurs via one of six different secretion pathways distinguished at least in part by the mechanisms of translocation across the OM and designated types I-VI (Stathopoulos et al., 2000; Cascales, 2008; Pukatzki, McAuley and Miyata, 2009).

Proteins secreted by the type V pathway are referred to as autotransporters (AT; Henderson, Cappello and Nataro, 2000). For example, the \textit{H. influenzae} Hap autotransporter is a non-pilus adhesin that influences adherence to epithelial cells and some extracellular matrix proteins and impacts bacterial aggregation and microcolony formation. Other autotransporter proteins that function as adhesins include: ShdA and MisL of \textit{Salmonella enterica} (Kingsley et al., 2002); Pertactin, Vag8 and TcfA of \textit{Bordetella} spp. (Li et al., 1992; Finn and Stevens, 1995; Finn and Amsbaugh, 1998); AIDA-I, TibA and Ag43 of \textit{E. coli} (Benz and Schmidt, 1989; Lindenthal and Elsinghorst, 1999; Kjaergaard et al., 2000; Henderson and Owen, 1999); Hap, Hia and Hsf of
H. influenzae (St. Geme III, de la Morena and Falkow, 1994; St. Geme III, Cutter and Barenkamp, 1996; Barenkamp and St. Geme III, 1996; Yeo et al., 2004); BabA of 
H. pylori (Ilver et al., 1998); UspA2, UspA2h of Moraxella catarrhalis (Aebi et al., 1998; 
Lafontaine et al., 2000) and rOmpA of Rickettsia spp. (Crocquet-Valdes, Weiss and 
Walker, 1994).

The AT secretion system is a modular structure consisting of three domains. 
These include a C-terminal transporter or β domain, an internal passenger domain and 
an N-terminal signal sequence. The β-domain ends up being inserted as an oligomer in 
the OM while the passenger domain is the protein moiety eventually presented on and 
anchored to the cell surface (Henderson, Navarro-Garcia and Nataro, 1998; Veiga, 
de Lorenzo and Fernandez, 2003; Desvaux, Parham and Henderson, 2004). The AT 
secretion system tolerate a wide range of protein modules that become displayed with the 
same structure, which favours the emergence of novel adhesins with new specificities. 
Veiga, de Lorenzo and Fernandez (2003) have demonstrated this property by creating 
hybrid fusion proteins containing the β-AT domain of an AT protein of Neisseria 
gonorrhoeae and the partner leucine zippers of eukaryotic transcription factors Fos and 
Jun. When the hybrid proteins were expressed in E. coli, the cells acquired novel 
adherence traits resulting in the self-association and clumping of planktonic bacteria in 
liquid media, or in formation of stable consortia between cells of strains expressing the 
dimerisation domains.

Another type of adherence is bacterial attachment to a surface and each other to form 
a biofilm. In a biofilm the adherence is mediated by an extracellular polysaccharide slime 
that acts as a kind of non-specific (although the signal to produce the biofilm may be 
specific) glue to bind the bacteria to each other and to a surface (Watnick and Kolter, 
2000; Salyers and Whitt, 2002).

Many microbes can occupy a variety of habitats whereas others are confined to a 
specific microenvironment. The range of hosts, tissues or cell types colonised by bacteria 
is determined, in part, by adhesin recognition of and affinity for host receptors. For 
example, most Bordetella spp. can cause a similar disease in the upper respiratory tract of 
many mammals but their host specificities can differ considerably. B. pertussis is human 
specific while B. bronchisepta is responsible for infecting a wide variety of mammals and 
birds but only rarely causes disease in humans. Strains of B. parapertussis can be divided 
into two groups, one which is human specific, the other ovine specific (Cummings et al., 
2004).

Host invasion

Subsequent to attachment, the bacterium may or may not invade the host, depending 
upon the pathogen. In any case, the host-associated pathogen must now repel the host 
defenses. Infection is the invasion of the host by micro-organisms, which then multiply in 
close association with the host’s tissues. Mechanisms that enable a bacterium to invade 
eukaryotic cells make entry possible at mucosal surfaces. Whereas some invasive bacteria 
are obligate intracellular pathogens, most are facultative intracellular pathogens. In many 
cases, the exact bacterial surface factors that mediate invasion are not known, and 
multiple gene products are frequently involved. Pathogens may have mechanisms to 
disguise or switch antigens on their surface, thus confusing humoral and cellular 
immunity. Defensive mechanisms include the expression of proteins and enzymes to 
destroy phagocytes and weaken surrounding host tissues, making it easier to spread to
new areas. Many pathogens have also developed resistance to common antibiotics, allowing them to continue infection even when the host is treated with antibiotics.

Entry into tissues may take several forms. Micro-organisms may pass directly through the epithelia, especially mucous membranes that consist of a single cell layer. However, in the case of skin, which is tough and multilayered, access is usually via trauma, insect bites or other damage to the surface.

Invasion through mucosal surfaces requires that the bacteria first cross the mucus layer coating the epithelium and then adhere to and infect the underlying target tissue. Many micro-organisms must first interact with specific receptors on the surface of the host cell to penetrate through mucosal epithelia. Mucosal and submucosal glands secrete a protective network of carbohydrate-rich glycoproteins called mucin. Aside from the lubricative value of mucin, the primary function is to trap bacteria and prevent them from gaining access to mucosal cells. Most bacteria have mucin-binding surface molecules and are removed with the mucus flow, some establish residence within the mucus layer or penetrate the mucus and adhere to epithelial cells (Salyers and Whitt, 2002). Bacteria which lack mucin-binding surface proteins or carbohydrates may have the ability to transit the mucin layer. Since mucin is an extremely viscous material that is relatively resistant to enzymatic digestion (de Repentigny et al., 2000; Moncada et al., 2000) bacteria that are able to move through viscous material or degrade mucin can overcome the first major barrier to mucosal invasion. In risk/safety evaluation, attention should be given, in general, to any changes in surface proteins or carbohydrate moieties involved in binding to mucin or with an ability to degrade mucin.

In most cases, once a micro-organism crosses an epithelial barrier, it is recognised by macrophages (mononuclear phagocytes and neutrophils) resident in tissues. Binding to specific cell-surface receptors triggers phagocytosis. When internalised bacteria become enclosed in a membrane vesicle or phagosome, it becomes acidified by the lysosomes. Fusion with lysosomes mediates an intracellular antimicrobial response to kill the bacteria. Most bacteria are destroyed by this process; however, there are various bacterial strategies for coping with phagolysosome formation and evading destruction. One strategy prevents phagosome-lysosome fusion and is used by *Mycobacterium, Legionella* and *Chlamydia* spp. Another strategy exemplified by *Actinobacillus* spp., *Listeria* spp., *Rickettsia* spp. and *Shigella* spp. involves disruption of the vesicle membrane and entry into the cytoplasm (Gouin et al., 1999). Bacterial survival and evasion of host response are covered in more detail in the section “Evasion of host immune response and multiplication in host”.

Host invasion may be aided by the production of invasins which act against the host by breaking down primary or secondary defenses of the body. Part of the pathology of a bacterial infection may be the result of invasive activity. One of the best-studied invasins is produced by *Yersinia* spp. Isberg and Leong (1990) demonstrated that invasin tightly adheres to β₁ integrins (host cell adhesion receptors) to mediate bacterial uptake by “zippering” the host cell membrane around the bacterium as it enters. The ability of various bacteria to induce internalisation following contact with eukaryotic cells appears to play a crucial role in pathogenesis (Finlay and Cossart, 1997). This uptake is directed into host cells that are not naturally phagocytic, including epithelial and endothelial cells lining mucosal surfaces and blood vessels, and is manipulated by the invading bacteria.

The two main mechanisms of induced uptake are zipper and trigger. Bacteria utilising the zipper mechanism of entry express a surface protein which binds to host surface receptors involved in cell-matrix or cell-cell adherence. This directed contact between
bacterial ligands and cellular receptors proceeds sequentially, inducing host membrane extension and bacterial uptake through a “zippering” mechanism (Cossart and Sansonetti, 2004). Various pathogens such as *Helicobacter pylori* (Kwok et al., 2002), *Listeria monocytogenes* (Lecuit et al., 1997), *Neisseria* spp. (McCaw, Liao and Gray-Owen, 2004) and some streptococci (Dombek et al., 1999) use this type of mechanism. With the trigger mechanism of entry, bacteria bypass the first step of adhesion and interact directly with the cellular machinery. Effectors are injected through a type III secretory system and the bacterial signals sent to the host cell induce prominent membrane ruffling and cytoskeletal rearrangements resulting in macropinocytosis and almost passive entry of bacteria (Finlay and Cossart, 1997). This type of system is used by *Salmonella* spp. (Hayward et al., 2002) and *Shigella flexneri* (Van Der Goot et al., 2004). Generally, invasion into normally non-phagocytic cells establishes a protected cellular niche for bacterial replication, survival and persistence.

It must be stressed that a same single invasion strategy may not be shared by all members of a species. *Streptococcus pyogenes* strains have been shown to trigger different uptake events via distinct mechanisms. For instance, in *S. pyogenes* strain A40, the protein SfbI (Streptococcal fibronectin binding protein) has been shown to be the main factor for attachment and invasion and uptake is characterised by the lack of actin recruitment and the generation of large membrane invaginations (Molinari et al., 1997). Whereas in *S. pyogenes* strain A8, the SfbI gene is absent and uptake involves major rearrangements of cytoskeletal proteins leading to recruitment and fusion of microvilli and the generation of cellular leaflets (Molinari et al., 2000).

There is little distinction between the extracellular proteins which promote bacterial invasion and various extracellular protein toxins or exotoxins which damage the host. The action of an invasin is usually proximal to the site of bacterial growth and may not kill the cells, whereas exotoxins may act at sites distant to those of bacterial growth and are usually cytotoxic. In general, exotoxins are more targeted and result in greater pathology than invasins (Henderson, Poole and Wilson, 1996; Al-Shangiti et al., 2004). However, some exotoxins such as diphtheria toxin or anthrax toxin play a role in invasion while some invasins (e.g. staphylococcal leukocidin) have a relatively specific cytopathic effect. Table 1.2 lists some extracellular proteins which act as invasins. Host damage by exotoxins is more fully discussed in the section “Ability to damage or kill host”.

**Evasion of host immune response and multiplication in host**

Microbial infections rarely cause disease without first multiplying within the host. Usually, multiplication is the main cause of disease associated with bacterial infection. Following entry into a host cell, most bacteria, including pathogens, are killed by macrophages and polymorphonuclear leukocytes. The incubation period reflects the time needed for the bacteria to overcome these early defenses and increase in number. The potential of a pathogen to cause a successful infection is reflected in the infective dose (ID). There can be wide variations in IDs, depending on the nature of the bacterial strain, the route of exposure (oral, inhalation, etc.), age (IDs would likely be lower for the very young and the very old) and the immune status of the host. Since the success of many pathogens relies on their ability to circumvent, resist or counteract host defense mechanisms, pathogens have developed numerous ways to avoid and manipulate host responses. This is reflected in the constant evolution of host defenses and bacterial pathogenic mechanisms.
Phagocytes are the first line of defense encountered by bacteria following tissue invasion. Phagocytosis has two main functions: 1) disposal of microbial pathogens; and 2) antigen processing and presentation for the induction of specific immune responses. Bacteria that readily attract phagocytes and are easily ingested and killed are generally unsuccessful pathogens. In contrast, most successful pathogens interfere to some extent with the activities of phagocytes or in some way avoid their attention. Bacterial pathogens have devised numerous and diverse strategies to avoid phagocytic engulfment and killing, with most strategies aimed at blocking one or more of the steps in phagocytosis, thereby halting the process. Other bacterial pathogens, exemplified by *Brucella* spp., *Mycobacterium* spp. and *Legionella* spp., survive and proliferate within “professional” phagocytes such as macrophages, neutrophils and dendritic cells. Survival inside of phagocytic cells, in either neutrophils or macrophages, protects the bacteria from antibodies, antibiotics, bacteriocides, etc. during the early stages of infection or until they develop a full complement of virulence factors.

**Table 1.2. Extracellular bacterial proteins that act as invasins**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invasin</th>
<th>Bacteria</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C5a peptidase</td>
<td>Group A and B Streptococcus</td>
<td>Inactivates human C5a and promotes epithelial cells invasion leading to the dissemination of bacteria</td>
<td>Wexler, Chenoweth and Cleary (1985); Cheng et al. (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collagenase</td>
<td>Clostridium spp.</td>
<td>Dissolves collagen</td>
<td>Borriello (1998); Poilane et al. (1998)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gingipain (cystein protease)</td>
<td><em>Porphyromonas gingivalis</em></td>
<td>Destruction of connective tissue, degradation of paxillin and focal adhesion kinase (FAK)</td>
<td>Nakagawa et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAD superfamily member SerB653</td>
<td><em>Porphyromonas gingivalis</em></td>
<td>Secreted when in contact with gingival epithelial cells</td>
<td>Tribble et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyaluronidase (see also paragraph ‘Spreading factor’ under sub-section ‘Ability to damage or kill host’ below)</td>
<td>Streptococcus spp., <em>Staphylococcus</em> spp. and Clostridium spp.</td>
<td>Degrades hyaluronic acid of connective tissue</td>
<td>Paton et al. (1993); Borriello (1998); Hynes et al. (2000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemolysins/lysolysins</td>
<td><em>Edwardsiella tarda</em>, <em>Escherichia coli</em>, <em>Bordetella pertussis</em>, <em>Listeria monocytogenes</em>, <em>Streptococcus</em> spp., <em>Staphylococcus</em> spp. and <em>Clostridium</em> spp.</td>
<td>Destroy red blood cells and other cells by lysis</td>
<td>Paton et al. (1993); Strauss, Ghori and Falkow (1997); Bassinet et al. (2000); Cockeran, Anderson and Feldman (2002); Doran et al. (2002); Nizet (2002); Sierig et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinases (see also paragraph ‘Kinases’ under sub-section ‘Ability to damage or kill host’ below)</td>
<td><em>Staphylococcus</em> spp. and <em>Streptococcus</em> spp.</td>
<td>Convert plasminogen to plasmin which digests fibrin</td>
<td>Ringdahl et al. (1998); Gladysheva et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lecithinas</td>
<td><em>Clostridium perfringens</em>, <em>Listeria monocytogenes</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Awad et al. (1995); Appelberg and Leal (2000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leukocidin</td>
<td><em>Staphylococcus aureus</em></td>
<td>Disrupts neutrophil membranes and causes discharge of lysosomal granules</td>
<td>Rogolsky (1979); Dinges, Orwin and Schlievert (2000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phospholipases</td>
<td><em>Clostridium perfringens</em>, <em>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</em>, <em>Shigella flexneri</em>, <em>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</em></td>
<td>Hydrolytic enzymes involved in phospholipid cleavage</td>
<td>Vasil (1986); Awad et al. (1995); Meyer, Mintz and Fives-Taylor (1997); Guhathakurta et al. (1999); Edwards, Entz and Apicella (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sialidases/neuraminidases</td>
<td><em>Vibrio cholerae</em>, <em>Shigella dysenteriae</em>, <em>Streptococcus pneumonia</em>, <em>Trichomonas vaginalis</em>, <em>Bacteroides fragilis</em>, <em>Gardnerella vaginalis</em>, <em>Mycoplasma hominis</em></td>
<td>Degradation of sialomucin on epithelial cell layer</td>
<td>Paton et al. (1993); Wiggins et al. (2001); Stewart-Tull, Lucas and Bleakley (2004)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Phagocytosis comprises several steps:

- Recognition and attachment of bacteria to professional (macrophages/neutrophils) or non-professional phagocytes (e.g. epithelial cells). The recognition is usually receptor-mediated (e.g. opsonisation – Fc receptors) but can be non-specific (bulk fluid pinocytosis).

- Endocytic entry of bacteria into the phagocytic cell with the generation of a phagocytic vacuole (endosome, phagosome).

- Generation of a phagolysosome via fusion of the phagosome with primary and secondary lysosomal granules.

- Degranulation and killing through the release of lysosomal or granular contents in direct apposition to the bacteria within the phagolysosome (maybe via oxygen-dependent and/or oxygen-independent mechanisms of killing).

The various strategies employed by bacteria to avoid destruction by phagocytes include: 1) adaptation to withstand the antimicrobial activity of the fused phagolysosome; 2) alteration of phagocytosis to target the bacterium to a novel phagosome; 3) escape from the phagosome into the cytosol by lysing the vacuolar membrane; 4) blocking lysosome/phagosome fusion or attenuating the acidification of phagolysosomes; 5) circumventing or resisting phagocytosis.

**Adaptation to withstand the antimicrobial activity**

With some intracellular bacteria, phagosome-lysosome fusion occurs, but the bacteria are resistant to inhibition and killing by the lysosomal constituents. Also, some extracellular pathogens can resist killing in phagocytes utilising similar resistance mechanisms. Resistance to phagocytic killing within the phagocytic vacuole is not completely understood, but it may be due to the surface components of the bacteria or due to extracellular substances produced which interfere with the mechanisms of phagocytic killing. *Brucella abortus* and *Staphylococcus aureus* are vigorous catalase and superoxide dismutase producers, which might neutralise the toxic oxygen radicals that are generated by the NADPH-oxidase and myeloperoxidase systems in phagocytes. *S. aureus* also produces cell-bound pigments (carotenoids) that “quench” singlet oxygen produced in the phagocytic vacuole. There are some micro-organisms, however, that are dependent upon phagosome-lysosome fusion for intracellular replication and persistence.

The pH that develops in the phagosome after engulfment induces bacterial gene products that are essential for their survival in macrophages. For instance, replication and synthesis of metabolic factors required for intracellular persistence of *Coxiella burnetti, Brucella suis* and *S. typhimurium* is induced by the acidic pH found within the phagolysosome (Hackstadt and Williams, 1981; Rathman, Sjaastad and Falkow, 1996; Porte, Liautard and Kohler, 1999; Ghigo et al., 2002).

**Alteration of phagocytosis**

Bacteria such as *Salmonella* spp. are able to induce phagocytosis in non-professional phagocytes. The Salmonella-containing vacuole (SCV), a unique cytoplasmic organelle formed following phagocytic induction, actually protects the bacterium; *Salmonella* spp. interfere with the ability of this phagosome to fully mature into a phagolysosome (Duclos and Desjardins, 2000).
Escape from the phagosome

Escape from the phagosome is a strategy employed by the Rickettsiae. *Rickettsia* spp. enter host cells in membrane-bound vacuoles (phagosomes) but are free in the cytoplasm a short time later, perhaps in as little as 30 seconds. A bacterial enzyme, phospholipase A, may be responsible for dissolution of the phagosome membrane. *Listeria monocytogenes* rely on several molecules for early lysis of the phagosome to ensure their release into the cytoplasm. These include listeriolysin O (LLO), a cholesterol-dependent cytolysin and two forms of phospholipase C. The low optimal pH activity of LLO allows the bacterium to escape from the phagosome into the host cytosol without damaging the plasma membrane of the infected cell.

Glomski et al. (2002) demonstrated that a single amino acid change from leucine 461 to threonine profoundly increased the hemolytic activity of LLO at a neutral pH and promoted premature permeabilisation of the infected cells. This discovery demonstrates how minor changes in proteins can be used by bacterial pathogens to establish and maintain the integrity of their specific niches or be exploited by researchers working with bacteria to produce a protein with novel properties. Once in the cytoplasm, *Listeria* spp. induce their own movement through a process of host cell actin polymerisation and formation of microfilaments within a comet-like tail. *Shigella* spp. also lyse the phagosomal vacuole and induce cytoskeletal actin polymerisation for the purpose of intracellular movement and cell-cell spread.

Blocking fusion or attenuating acidification

Some bacteria survive inside of phagosomes by blocking the fusion of phagocytic lysosomes (granules) with the phagosome thus preventing the discharge of lysosomal contents into the phagosome environment. This strategy is employed by *Salmonella* spp., *M. tuberculosis*, *Legionella* spp. and the chlamydiae. With *Legionella* spp., it is known that a single gene is responsible for the inhibition of phagolysosomal fusion. Attenuating the acidification of phagolysosomes is observed with *Rhodococcus* spp. Toyooka, Takai and Kirikae (2005) demonstrated that phagolysosomes did not acidify when they contained virulent *R. equi* organisms. Their research indicated that *R. equi* in phagolysosomes produced substance(s) to suppress acidification. Results by Tsukano et al. (1999) indicated that inhibition of phagosomal acidification by *Y. pseudotuberculosis* was due to attenuation of vacuolar-ATPase activity.

Phagocytic circumvention

Bacteria may avoid phagocytosis by simply penetrating areas inaccessible to phagocytes such as the lumens of glands and the urinary bladder and surface tissues such as the skin.

Other strategies for phagocyte evasion include suppression of the inflammatory response and inhibition of phagocyte chemotaxis. For example, pneumolysin (streptolysin) toxin produced by *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (Paton and Ferrante, 1983; Ernst, 2000) and components of *Mycobacterium* spp. inhibit polymorphonuclear leukocyte (PMN) migration. Also, studies involving pathogen-induced PMN alterations have suggested that *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* delays PMN apoptosis and lessens proinflammatory cytokine release (Yoshiie et al., 2000; Klein et al., 2000). Bacteria using host cell mimicry for phagocytic evasion cover their surface with a component which is recognised as “self” by the host phagocytes and immune system. This effectively hides the antigenic surface of the bacterial cell. Phagocytes are unable to recognise bacteria.
upon contact and thus opsonisation by antibodies to enhance phagocytosis is minimised. For example, *Staphylococcus aureus* produces cell-bound coagulase which clots fibrin on the bacterial surface, *Treponema pallidum* binds fibronectin to its surface, while Group A streptococci synthesise a capsule composed of hyaluronic acid which forms the ground substance of host connective tissue.

Resistance to phagocytic ingestion is usually due to a component of the bacterial cell surface (cell wall or fimbriae or a capsule). Examples of antiphagocytic substances on the bacterial surface include: Polysaccharide capsules (*S. pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, Treponema pallidum* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae*); M protein and fimbriae of Group A streptococci; polysaccharide produced as biofilm by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa;* O polysaccharide associated with lipopolysaccharide (LPS) of *E. coli,* K or Vi antigens (acidic polysaccharides) of *E. coli* and *Salmonella typhi,* respectively; cell-bound or soluble Protein A produced by *Staphylococcus aureus* which attaches to the Fc region of IgG and blocks the cell-binding domain of the antibody.

Whereas phagocytic resistance and intracellular proliferation is accomplished via surface components, such as bacterial capsules and LPS, which effectively shield the bacteria, resistance to many bactericidal components of host tissues is usually a function of some structural property. For example, the poly-D-glutamate capsule of *Bacillus anthracis* protects the organisms against the action of cationic proteins (defensins) or by conventional proteases in sera or in phagocytes (Fouet and Mesnage, 2002). Similarly, the OM of gram-negative bacteria serves as a permeability barrier that is not easily traversed by hydrophobic compounds harmful to the bacteria, for example bile salts of the gastrointestinal tract. Intact LPS of gram-negative pathogens may protect the cells from complement-mediated lysis or the action of lysozyme. The OM and capsular components of gram-negative bacteria (e.g. *Salmonella* spp., *Yersinia* spp., *Brucella* spp., *E. coli*) can protect the peptidoglycan layer from the lytic activity of lysozyme (Hughey and Johnson, 1987; Martinez de Tejada et al., 1995). Mycobacteria (including *M. tuberculosis*) have waxy, hydrophobic cell wall and capsule components (mycolic acids), which are not easily attacked by lysosomal enzymes (Gao et al., 2003).

Other factors that enhance intracellular survival include bacterial enzymes which neutralise oxygen radicals and secreted proteolytic enzymes which degrade host lysosomal proteins. Another strategy in defense against phagocytosis is direct attack by the bacterium upon professional phagocytes. Most of these are extracellular enzymes or toxins that kill phagocytes either prior to or after ingestion and are discussed in the section “Ability to damage or kill host”.

*Multiplication in host*

Multiplication in the host also requires that the micro-organism obtains the necessary nutrients and factors needed for growth and replication. Iron is an essential nutrient that is usually limited within eukaryotic hosts. Many pathogenic bacteria have developed regulated networks of genes important for iron uptake and storage. Also, available iron concentration may trigger the regulation of virulence gene expression (Merrell et al., 2003). *Salmonella* spp. and *E. coli* produce siderophores (extracellular iron-binding compounds) which extract Fe$^{3+}$ from lactoferrin (or transferrin) and supply iron to bacterial cells for growth.

Successful intracellular lifestyle is conditional on the ability of the bacteria to obtain essential nutrients from the hostile phagosomal environment. For example, the virulence of both *M. tuberculosis* and *Salmonella enterica* (Hingley-Wilson, Sambandamurthy and
Jacobs Jr., 2003) is dependent upon their ability to acquire magnesium while inhabiting the phagosome.

**Ability to damage or kill host**

To counter infection the human host relies, initially, on the innate immune system. Prior to mounting an immune response, however, the host must first detect the pathogen. The innate immune system uses sets of recognition molecules, called pattern recognition receptors.

The toll-like receptors (TLRs) are one of the most important pattern recognition receptor families (Armant and Fenton, 2002). Pattern recognition receptors bind conserved molecular structures, unique to micro-organisms, termed pathogen-associated molecular patterns. Pathogen-associated molecular patterns such as peptidoglycan, teichoic acids, LPS, mycolic acid and mannose, bind to pattern recognition receptors on a variety of defense cells of the body causing them to synthesise and secrete a variety of cytokines. These cytokines can, in turn promote innate immune defenses such as opsonisation, activation of proinflammatory signaling cascades, phagocytosis, activation of the complement and coagulation cascades, and apoptosis (Wilson et al., 2002).

The host immune response plays a critical role in determining disease manifestations of chronic infections. Inadequate immune response may fail to control infection, although in other cases the specific immune response may be the cause of tissue damage and disease. Not infrequently, host defense mechanisms go overboard and it is this overaggressive immune response which contributes to the tissue damage observed with some infections.

A number of bacterial proteins that act as immune modulators are presented in Table 1.3. This chapter, however, focuses on specific bacterial factors directly responsible for tissue damage or host death.

Bacteria produce a large number of cell-associated or secreted proteins which play a role in colonisation, infection and subsequent tissue damage. The great majority of bacterial virulence factors are secreted products that augment the survival of the bacteria and/or damage the host (Jett, Huycke and Gilmore, 1994; Fournier and Philpott, 2005; Kuehn and Kesty, 2005). The following is a summary of activities of many bacterial proteins that contribute to host invasion, tissue damage or death.

**Collagenase**

Collagenase, produced by *Clostridium histolyticum* and *Clostridium perfringens* (Legat, Griesbacher and Lembeck, 1994; Rood, 1998), breaks down collagen, the single most abundant protein in mammals. Collagenases are thought to play a major role in the pathology of gas gangrene caused by clostridia because they can destroy the connective tissue barriers.

**Spreading factor**

Hyaluronidase, or more descriptively “spreading factor”, affects the physical properties of tissue matrices and intercellular spaces. Hyaluronidase, an enzyme produced by streptococci, staphylococci and clostridia (Bergan, 1984; Li et al., 2000), is also a component of venom from snakes, spiders, jellyfish, etc. (Girish et al., 2004; Kuhn-Nentwig, Schaller and Nentwig, 2004). The enzyme attacks the ground substance of connective tissue by depolymerising hyaluronic acid thereby promoting the spread of...
the bacteria. Its activity also causes invasion, hence hyaluronidase is also seen as an invasin (Table 1.2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bacteria/disease</th>
<th>Immunomodulator</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Borrelia burgdorferi/Lyme disease</td>
<td>OspE</td>
<td>Binds factor H</td>
<td>McDowell et al. (2004)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterococcus faecalis</td>
<td>Capsular polysaccharide</td>
<td>Resistance to opsonophagocytic killing</td>
<td>Hancock and Gilmore (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Franciscella tularensis/Tularemia</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>Survive and multiply inside macrophages</td>
<td>Maier et al. (2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcus pneumoniae</td>
<td>PspA</td>
<td>Inhibitor of factor B mediating complement activation and opsonisation</td>
<td>Tu et al. (1999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group A Streptococcus (S. pyogenes)</td>
<td>Fba</td>
<td>Binds factor H and fh-like protein, contribute to phagocytosis resistance</td>
<td>Wei et al. (2005)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococci</td>
<td>Protein M</td>
<td>Alteration of opsonophagocytosis by recruitment of factor H</td>
<td>Jarva et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group B Streptococcus (GBS) CspA (serine protease-like)</td>
<td>Evasion of opsonophagocytosis</td>
<td>Harris et al. (2003)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysteria monocytogenes Lysterio-lysin O</td>
<td>Evasion of phagosome</td>
<td>Schnupf and Portnoy (2007)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neisseria gonorrhoea Por 1A</td>
<td>Binds factor H, C4 bp, mediates serum resistance</td>
<td>Ram et al. (1998; 2001)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neisseria meningitides</td>
<td>Bind factor H</td>
<td>Avoids lysis by complement system</td>
<td>Schneider et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staphylococcus aureus Secretes extracellular adherence protein (EAP)</td>
<td>Binds to Inter-Cellular Adhesion Molecule (ICAM)-1, fibrinogen, vitronectin resulting in the disruption of the leukocyte recruitment</td>
<td>Athanasopoulos et al. (2006)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yersinia enterocolitica YadA</td>
<td>Alteration of opsonophagocytosis by recruitment of factor H</td>
<td>China et al. (1993)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Kinases**

Streptokinase and staphylokinase are produced by streptococci and staphylococci, respectively. These enzymes convert inactive plasminogen to plasmin which digests fibrin and prevents clotting of the blood. The relative absence of fibrin in bacterial lesions allows more rapid diffusion of the bacteria (Gladyshева et al., 2003). Like hyaluronidase, kinases also cause invasion, and are seen as invasins (Table 1.2).

**Sialidases/neuraminidase**

Extracellular sialidases or neuraminidases, produced by various pathogens, have the ability to hydrolyse the sialic acid residues located on many mammalian cell membranes (Rood, 1998). The neuraminidase produced by Mannheimia haemolytica decreases the viscosity of respiratory mucus, thus providing the bacteria with greater access to the cell surface (Zecchinon, Fett and Desmecht, 2005).
Toxins

An overview of bacterial protein toxins may be found in Alouf (2000). Many toxins act on the animal cell membrane by insertion into the membrane (forming a pore that results in cell lysis), or by enzymatic attack on phospholipids, which destabilises the membrane. They may be referred to as lecithinases or phospholipases, and if they lyse red blood cells they may be called hemolysins. Hemolysins, notably produced by staphylococci (i.e. alpha toxin), streptococci (i.e. streptolysin/pneumolysin) and various clostridia, may be channel-forming membrane toxins capable of damaging a broad range of eukaryotic cell types (Awad et al., 1995; Menzies and Kourteva, 2000; Doran et al., 2002). Lecithinases destroy lecithin (phosphatidylcholine) in cell membranes (Awad et al., 1995; Appelberg and Leal, 2000). Phospholipases, for example alpha toxin produced by Clostridium perfringens, hydrolyse phospholipids in cell membranes by removal of polar head groups. Leukocidin, a bacterial exotoxin similar to streptolysin, is produced by staphylococci and specifically lyses phagocytes and their granules. Although leukocidin may be referred to as a bi-component leukotoxin (Morinaga, Kaihou and Noda, 2003; Futagawa-Saito et al., 2004), it should not be confused with the leukotoxins of the RTX family described below.

Exotoxins have sometimes been categorised according to the cells primarily affected by the toxin. For example, leukotoxins are a group of exotoxins that produce their primary effect on leukocytes, especially polymorphonuclear cells. Mannheimia (Pasteurella) haemolytica, one of the key pathogens associated with bovine respiratory disease complex produces a leukotoxin (LKT) that both activates and kills bovine leukocytes. Atapattu and Czuprynski (2005) have shown that LKT produced by Mannheimia haemolytica induces apoptosis of bovine lymphoblastoid cells (BL-3) via a caspase-9-dependent mitochondrial pathway. While LKT is able to bind leukocytes from various animal species, it is only cytotoxic for ruminant leukocytes. This virulence factor is a member of the RTX (repeats in toxins) family of multidomain gram-negative bacterial toxins. RTX toxins fall into two categories: hemolysins which attack different cell types from a variety of species and leukotoxins which show a marked specificity for both cell type and host species (Lally et al., 1999). Other bacteria that produce RTX toxins include: E. coli (hemolysins), Bordetella pertussis, Actinobacillus spp. and Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans and various Pasteurella spp. (leukotoxins), (Narayanan et al., 2002; Davies, Campbell and Whittam, 2002; Ward et al., 2002).

Toxins with short-range effects related to invasion

Bacterial protein toxins which have adenylate cyclase activity are thought to have immediate effects on host cells that promote bacterial invasion. One component of the anthrax toxin (EF or Edema Factor) is an adenylate cyclase that acts on nearby cells to cause increased levels of cyclic AMP and disruption of cell permeability (Leppla, 1982). One of the toxin components of Bordetella pertussis, pertussis adenylate cyclase, has a similar effect. These toxins may contribute to invasion through their effects on macrophages or lymphocytes in the vicinity which are playing an essential role to contain the infection.

Co-ordination of expression of virulence factors: Quorum sensing (QS)

To establish an infection, bacteria carefully orchestrate a number of bacterial factors and determinants which have a role in determining pathogenicity. Proficient co-ordination of these factors is required for bacterial survival and successful colonisation. Thus, bacteria have developed sophisticated regulatory systems to adapt gene expression to
changing environmental conditions. The notion that bacteria can signal each other and co-ordinate their assault patterns against susceptible hosts is now well established (Miller and Bassler, 2001). When invading their host, bacteria do not operate in isolation. Pathogens employ a series of chemical signals and sensing systems that jointly engage bacterial communities to genetically respond in concert to specific conditions in the host and promote an advantageous lifestyle within a given environmental niche. A central component in this process is a sophisticated communication system known as quorum sensing (QS) (Ng and Bassler, 2009). QS systems regulate microbial pathogenesis through the following points: 1) helping pathogens’ invasion and colonisation; 2) regulating production of the virulent factor; 3) giving pathogens the ability of immunity or drug resistance (Wu and Xie, 2009).

QS was first observed in the marine halophilic bioluminescent bacterium Vibrio fischeri (Nealson et al., 1970), in which the bacterial light-emitting luciferase operon is activated when the population reaches a threshold concentration. It was later realised that QS is achieved through the production, release, and subsequent detection of and response to threshold concentrations of signal molecules called autoinducers, which are synthesised throughout the growth of the bacterium. When a threshold concentration is reached, these signals interact with a transcriptional regulator, allowing the expression of specific genes (Bassler, 2002).

QS systems were shown to regulate a multitude of transcriptional programmes in bacteria in vitro and probably in vivo, which are relevant for the pathogenic phenotype. These include biofilm formation, growth potential, antibiotic resistance expression and genetic determinants of virulence (Kendall and Sperandio, 2007; Yarwood and Schlievert, 2003; Mack et al., 2007; Kong, Vuong and Otto, 2006; Costerton et al., 2003; Bjarnsholt et al., 2010). That QS has a fundamental role in bacterial pathogenesis was confirmed as researchers began to find that many clinically relevant microbial pathogens displayed auto-inducer systems homologous to the one discovered in V. fischeri. Many common bacterial pathogens, including Escherichia coli, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Bacteroides, Yersinia, Burkholderia and Enterococcus spp., and many clinically important staphylococcal and streptococcal pathogens were shown to contain QS genes, which participate in the regulation of multiple bacterial genes, including virulence genes (Miller and Bassler, 2001; Greenberg, 2003; Câmara, Williams and Hardman, 2002; Shiner, Rumbaugh and Williams, 2005; Qazi et al., 2006; Parsek and Greenberg, 2000; Brady et al., 2008; Williams, 2007).

QS circuits can also regulate human transcriptional programmes to the advantage of the pathogen. Human stress hormones and cytokines can be detected by bacterial quorum sensing systems. By this mechanism, the pathogen can detect the physiologically stressed host, providing an opportunity to invade when the patient is most vulnerable. (Li et al., 2009).

QS systems are broadly grouped into three categories. The quorum sensing systems identified in many gram-negative bacteria mostly resemble the typical quorum sensing circuit of the bioluminescent bacterium V. fischeri (Miller and Bassler, 2001; Smith et al., 2006) in which they consist, at a minimum, of homologues of the two V. fischeri regulatory proteins called LuxI and LuxR. The LuxI-like proteins (the auto-inducer synthases) are responsible for the biosynthesis of a specific acylated homoserine lactone signaling molecule, termed type I autoinducers (AI-1). The autoinducer concentration increases with increasing cell-population density. The LuxR-like proteins (the transcription factors) bind cognate AI-1 autoinducers that have achieved a critical
threshold concentration and the LuxR-autoinducer complexes activate target gene transcription, including virulence genes (Wagner et al., 2007). Over 50 species of gram-negative bacteria produce acylated homoserine lactones that differ only in the acyl side chain moiety, and each LuxR-type protein is highly selective for its cognate autoinducer signal molecule (Bassler, 2002).

The autoinducers in the QS system of a gram-positive bacterium are short, usually modified peptides processed from precursors. In contrast with the diffusible behaviour of AI-1 autoinducers, these signals are actively exported out of the cell (through an ATP-binding cassette transporter, ABC-transporter), and interact with the external domains of membrane bound sensor proteins. Signal transduction triggers a phosphorylation cascade that culminates in the activation of a DNA binding protein that controls transcription of target genes. Similar to gram-negative bacteria, gram-positive bacteria can use multiple autoinducers and sensors (Bassler, 2002).

Finally, a third QS pathway, initially discovered in the *V. harveyi* bioluminescence system, is mediated by the luxS gene locus (the autoinducer synthase gene) and related homologues. Signaling elements in this system, termed type 2 autoinducers (AI-2), are composed of rather complex, unusual, multiple-ringed, cyclical furanosyl-borate diester molecules. The AI-2 pathway uses a more complex, two-component membrane receptor, LuxPQ, comprised of periplasmic binding protein (LuxP) and histidine sensor kinase (LuxQ) subunits (Neiditch et al., 2006). Components of this system are detectable in almost one-half of all sequenced bacterial genomes, so this system is now recognised as the most ubiquitous signaling system employed by both gram-negative and gram-positive bacteria. It has been proposed that the AI-2 pathway is a more universal, interspecies chemical language (Bassler, 2002).

Quorum sensing molecules and systems show a remarkable array of very complex properties. These systems are also capable of influencing environmental processes. Geochemical and biological modifications of signals probably occur in extracellular environments, and these could disrupt or interfere with intended communication signals. It has been postulated that quorum sensing occurs within cell clusters, where signal dispersion might be significantly influenced by existing extracellular polymers (Decho, Norman and Visscher, 2010).

**Molecular aspects of pathogenicity**

*Molecular genetic definition of bacterial virulence*

The application of molecular biology to microbial pathogenesis was described by Falkow (1988) in a molecular form of Koch’s postulates: 1) the phenotype or property under investigation should be associated with pathogenic members of a genus or pathogenic strains of a species; 2) specific inactivation of the gene(s) associated with the suspected virulence trait should lead to a measurable loss in pathogenicity or virulence; and 3) reversion or allelic replacement of the mutated gene should lead to restoration of pathogenicity. Meeting these postulates requires the technical possibility to directly affect the genes in question, and, even more important, the availability of models to measure virulence. As this is not always feasible, an alternative approach was added: 4) the induction of specific antibodies to a defined gene product should neutralise pathogenicity. This fourth postulate is sometimes taken alone: when antibodies against a certain factor protect an animal from disease, this is sufficient to call this factor a virulence factor.
Like Koch’s postulates, the “molecular Koch’s postulates” cannot always be applied rigidly. If the virulence phenotype is multifactorial, as will usually be the case, the gene products identified as virulence factors may either be a “classical” virulence factor or an accessory factor that is essential for expression of the phenotype, but not directly involved in it. As an example: the fimbriae, hairlike surface structures, that are virulence factors of uropathogenic Escherichia coli strains carry an adhesin molecule at their tip that performs the directly virulence related task of adherence to epithelial cells of the host. They can, however, only efficiently perform this task when carried at the tip of the fimbriae that are composed of other protein molecules that lack the adhesive property. The gene identified as a virulence factor may not even be a structural gene, coding for a gene product, but may have a regulatory function in the expression of the structural gene. In the literature there is a tendency to describe all genes that pass the tests described in the molecular Koch’s postulates as virulence genes. This approach has resulted in the identification as “virulence genes” genes that are not directly involved in virulence as such, but are indispensable for the expression of the virulent phenotype because they are required in some way for correct expression of virulence genes. In fact, the molecular approach may detect a whole spectrum of “virulence genes” ranging from “true” virulence genes to genes encoding “house-keeping enzymes” that through some remote mechanism influence the virulence phenotype. This may indicate a need for a more restrictive definition of virulence genes than simply genes that are detected in virulence assays.

A definition of bacterial virulence should enable the discrimination between “true” virulence genes that are directly associated with the virulent phenotype, and accessory genes, that will also be identified as virulence genes by screening methodologies that rely on gene inactivation resulting in attenuation of virulence. A well-known example of a housekeeping gene identified as a virulence factor is the gene aroA (as well as other “housekeeping” genes; see Uzzau et al., 2005), inactivation of which results in attenuation of pathogenicity. The aroA gene, however, is involved in aromatic amino acid biosynthesis, and as such is present in both pathogens and non-pathogens and is not considered a virulence gene. This is easily understood in the case of aroA, but when the gene product has no known housekeeping function, such genes would be described in the literature as virulence genes. The problem is where to draw the line in the continuum between “virulence-associated genes” and “housekeeping genes”. In order to exclude housekeeping genes from the set of “virulence” genes, the requisite is often added to Falkow’s molecular postulates that virulence genes should not be expressed outside the host. However, this would exclude certain well-characterised virulence genes, for instance lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-producing enzymes are expressed under all circumstances, and yet LPS is a generally accepted virulence factor. Moreover, lack of expression outside the host may be a reflection of the applied culture conditions. In conclusion, the border between virulence-associated genes and housekeeping genes cannot be sharply defined.

Molecular approaches to identify virulence genes

Three basic approaches are used to identify virulence genes: genetic methods to obtain phenotypic evidence for virulence, methods based on the proposed immunogenicity of virulence factors for immunological evidence and comparative genetic methods that yield additional indirect evidence.
Phenotypic evidence: Within the genetic methods, two approaches are used: 1) inactivation of a virulence gene must result in loss of virulence; or 2) introduction of a virulence gene into a non-virulent strain must add virulent properties. It should be noted that both principles are heavily dependent on models to determine the virulent phenotype. Models to determine virulence are ideally animal models that minutely mimic natural disease, but these are not always available. More often, animal models have to be used that display only some of the naturally occurring characteristics, or in vitro models that only poorly resemble disease characteristics. Most processes leading to virulence are multi-factorial. The complicated interaction of host and bacteria is often ignored when in vitro models are applied. Even under simplified conditions of in vitro models, a presumably straightforward process such as bacterial invasion can be driven and regulated by multiple genes and gene loci, which work in concert or complementarity. Inactivation of one link of the chain may eliminate invasiveness, but complementation in a different setting may require several genetic loci. Alternatively, inactivation of a factor may be overcome by alternative factors so that loss of virulence is not observed, but complementation in a different environment may have strong phenotypic effects. The relevance of the applied models to extrapolate their outcome as phenotypic evidence of virulence is a point of debate, which is pragmatically ignored by lack of alternatives.

Immunological evidence: A second approach for identifying virulence genes is based on the proposed immunogenicity of virulence factors. Knowing that acquired immunity can protect against disease, it is assumed that protective antibodies are directed against virulence-associated genes. When an infection results in an antigenic response directed against one or more specific antigens, this is taken as a strong indication that these antigens represent virulence-associated factors.

Comparative genetical evidence: Examples of the genetic approach to identification of potential virulence-associated genes are the identification of: 1) genes with a degree of homology to known virulence-associated genes that is considered significant in bioinformatics surveys; 2) related genes that show variation that can be interpreted as antigenic variation; 3) genes that are shown to be present in (more) virulent strains, while absent in avirulent strains. Comparative genetic approaches are further discussed in the section on trends in virulence gene identification.

In addition to these approaches, several techniques have been developed to identify and characterise bacterial genes that are induced during the intracellular infection and therefore, potentially, may play a role in pathogenesis. Examples are the search for genes that are specifically induced in the host, and “signature-tagged mutagenesis” (STM), involving comparative hybridisation to isolate mutants unable to survive the environmental conditions in the host (Mahan, Slauch and Mekalanos, 1993; Chiang, Mekalanos and Holden, 1999; Harb and Abu Kwaik, 1999). A very powerful approach to isolate mutants that may be affected in a virulence gene is STM as discussed by Autret and Charbit (2005). The general technique of STM can be applied to find specific genes involved in survival persistence of a bacterium in a host; virulence genes would fall into this class of genes (Wassenaar and Gaaster, 2001). The only prerequisite for a gene to be found by STM is that its loss of function should not result in a lethal phenotype under conditions of growth in vitro, in broth. This is probably not an impediment for most virulence genes to be identified by this technique. The STM approach involves transposon (usually) mutagenesis of a bacterial strain, followed by pooling of a number of mutants that can be individually recognised by a polymerase chain reaction amplifiable tag. The pooled mutants are inoculated in an animal model, and bacteria retrieved from the animal are analysed for mutants that are present, as shown by the presence of their
tag. Mutants that are lost have been mutated in genes that have a function in the pathogenic process, or which at least have a function that is needed to survive and be retrieved in the experiment.

Ideally, for the identification of virulence, several approaches should lead to the same gene or set of genes, and the characterisation of a gene as virulence-associated should be based on evidence from more than one approach. Even then, the controversy between housekeeping genes and virulence genes is not always solved. For example, the housekeeping magnesium transport system of *Salmonella typhimurium*, mgtA/B, is under PhoP/PhoQ regulation, and is activated during invasion *in vitro* (Smith and Maguire, 1998). One example is glutamine synthetase of *Salmonella typhimurium*, which is under the regulation of ntrC (an alternative sigma factor that can be indicative for *in vivo* regulation of expression) and which was identified as a virulence gene based on phenotypic evidence, since inactivation resulted in attenuation (Klose and Mekalanos, 1997). The enzyme presumably provides glutamine to the organism while surviving in the host, and could for that reason be considered a virulence-associated gene that enables colonisation. Since glutamine synthetase is also present in non-pathogenic bacteria, it is not considered a virulence gene in the comparative genetic approach. As the absence of virulence genes in non-pathogenic bacteria receives a lot of weight in this approach, two points need to be considered: 1) the outcome of such comparative genetics is heavily dependent on the content of the databases used; and 2) gene function is not always correctly predicted by comparative genetics alone. Putative virulence gene candidates identified in this way should therefore at least be confirmed by phenotypic evidence, despite the mentioned shortcomings of such evidence.

*Trends in virulence gene identification*

Due to explosive developments in genomics it is now feasible to analyse the complete genome of bacterial pathogens by *in silicio* subtractive hybridisation. With the expanding annotation of genes from genome sequences, this can lead to the identification of new virulence genes (Field, Hood and Moxon, 1999; Frosch, Reidl and Vogel, 1998). The annotation of these newly sequenced genes is based on sequence identity. This identification of virulence genes by comparative genomics, based on genetic similarity is, however, risky for several reasons.

An acceptable level of sequence conservation is seen as (indirect) evidence of conserved function, so that the gene function of a newly sequenced gene is extrapolated from a well-characterised analogue in another species. However, genes may have a niche-adapted function in a particular organism, and this may have its effect on the role of the gene product in virulence. Functional domains may not be conserved (Lee and Klevit, 2000). Therefore, sequence homology does not always predict function, and even when there is a high degree of genetic conservation between a non-characterised gene and a known virulence gene, the function of the gene product of the non-characterised gene as a virulence factor should first be experimentally tested before functional homology is assigned. Until then, the newly identified virulence gene should be annotated as “putative”. Misannotation based on “putativism” is quite common, since it is now easier to generate sequencing data than to experimentally prove a function of the given gene product.

Another, diametrically opposed, pitfall of comparative genetics is that genes that share no sequence homology can have identical functions, as is demonstrated for actA of *Listeria monocytogenes* and IcsA in *Shigella flexneri*, whose gene products recruit host
Many virulence genes display antigenic polymorphisms, presumably to evade the selection pressure of the host immune system (Deitsch, Moxon and Wellems, 1997). The correlation between polymorphism and virulence is so strong that polymorphisms observed \textit{in silicio} are taken as indirect evidence for a role in virulence. It should be noted that the term polymorphism is used for different phenomena. The term is used when one isolate of a bacterial species can produce antigenic variants of a gene product by means of gene multiplication, alternative expression or post-translational modification. “Polymorphism” is also used for antigenic or genetic differences observed between isolates of the same species, for which the term “allelic polymorphism” is more exact. In addition, slippage during replication or translation can cause variation in the number of DNA repeats (with units of one to seven nucleotides) present within a gene, leading to polymorphic offspring (either represented in DNA or in protein) of a given cell (Van Belkum et al., 1998). All of these polymorphic mechanisms serve the general goal of adaptation to varying conditions. In the case of pathogens this is often, though not exclusively, a mechanism to avoid host defense responses. With the high throughput of sequencing data, it becomes possible to identify putative virulence properties for genes based on the polymorphic nature of their predicted translation products.

In conclusion, different paths lead to the identification of virulence genes. A “top-down” approach, starting from a single pathogen, will start by defining the pathogenic phenotype of the organism (“adhering”, “invasive”, “toxin producing”, “phagocytic survival”), and subsequently zoom in on the virulence genes responsible for this phenotype. A “bottom-up” approach will start from an annotated genome sequence, from which putative virulence genes can be identified by comparative genetics. The relevance of such identified putative virulence genes for the pathogenic phenotype then remains to be proven. For this, a “lateral” approach can be useful, as pathogens often employ similar pathogenic mechanisms, and analogies between virulence factors can be used for identification strategies. In parallel, genetically related organisms that have a different pathogenic repertoire can be compared to identify the genes responsible for the differences in virulence. The second section of this chapter presented an overview of genes that are involved in different stages of pathogenicity: host recognition and adherence, host invasion, multiplication in the host, the ability to overcome the host immune response and host defense systems, and the ability to damage or kill the host.

\textit{The perspective of virulence genes}

Understanding of bacterial virulence factors can be biased because of the experimental setup applied to identify or study the factor (Quinn, Newman and King, 1997). For instance, many bacterial toxins are described as “haemolysin”, because they have been originally recognised as cytolytic to erythrocytes. However, in real life these toxins may not be targeted at erythrocytes, but at leukocytes or other host cells instead. This is just one example of how the perception of bacterial virulence factors is influenced by experimental design.

Pathogenicity and virulence are often addressed in an anthropomorphic manner, i.e. the incorrect concept that it is the “aim” of pathogenic bacteria to cause disease in their host. Like every organism, pathogens have adapted to occupy their ecological niche. Their close association with a host causes damage to their host. Often this damage is “coincidental”, but it may even be beneficial to the survival or spreading of the pathogen.
Examples are the release of nutrients by cell damage, or enabling contagion of the next host by inducing coughing or diarrhea. The degree of damage is dependent on the equilibrium that results from the interplay of pathogen and host, and may, for instance, be dependent on the immune response of the individual (Casadevall and Pirofski, 1999). Conditions that result in disease can vary among host individuals, and from host species to host species. This adds to the difficulties to identify the bacterial genes that are directly responsible for the disease. Ideally, experimental shortcomings, subjective observations and the anthropomorphistic view on pathogenicity should all be considered when establishing the relevance of a certain virulence gene to the pathogenicity of a microorganism.

Classification of virulence genes

From the previous sections it is clear that there are many ways of defining, identifying and testing virulence genes. But, since each pathogen has evolved to fit its own niche, different pathogens do not necessarily share common pathogenic characteristics. Despite the recognition of common themes in bacterial virulence (Finlay and Falkow, 1989; 1997), a larger part of all virulence genes described in the literature that resulted from over 30 years of research have little in common, other than having some function in virulence. In order to interpret the vast amount of data on this subject these genes need to be classified.

As already stated in the introduction to this chapter, regulators dealing with risk/safety assessment of genetically engineered bacteria need a good understanding of the significance of a given virulence gene in its physiological background; only if the newly acquired gene can have a role in the pathogenic lifestyle of the recipient microorganism can an interaction be expected between the newly acquired gene and the resident genes contributing to the pathogenic lifestyle. Wassenaar and Gaastra (2001) have proposed a classification of virulence genes according to their potential role in pathogenic lifestyles that should be helpful to evaluate the potential influence of newly acquired genes on virulence.

Wassenaar and Gaastra (2001) discriminate among four lifestyles: exclusive pathogens, host-dependent pathogens, opportunistic pathogens and fully non-pathogenic organisms. Seven types of virulence gene classes are distinguished: true virulence genes, directly involved in interactions with the host and responsible for pathological damage (e.g. toxins); colonisation genes, determining the localisation of the infection; host defense system evasion genes (e.g. immunoglobulin specific proteases); processing genes involved in the biosynthesis of virulence lifestyle factors (e.g. chaperonins; gene products with a virulence lifestyle substrate), secretory genes, virulence housekeeping genes (e.g. urease, catalase) and regulatory genes, involved in the regulation of virulence lifestyle genes. Further subclasses may be identified for these classes.

Evolution and spread of virulence genes: Pathogenicity islands

In general, three mechanisms can be proposed for the evolution of pathogens: acquisition of virulence genes from existing pathogens by horizontal gene transfer; a change in host specificity (host jump) of an existing pathogen, possibly together with, or as a result of, the acquisition of genes to adapt to a new ecological niche; and evolution of new virulence genes from the existing gene pool of a bacterial species, resulting in (an increase of) virulence.
Over the past few years it has become apparent that of these, the evolutionary consequences of horizontal gene transfer are probably the most drastic. There is ample evidence that virulence genes have spread by horizontal gene transfer, by all processes known to contribute to the process (see OECD, 2010). Of special importance are bacteriophages, that confer virulence factors to bacteria (Boyd and Brüssow, 2002; Wagner and Waldor, 2002).

In the late 1980s, Hacker and colleagues (Dobrindt et al., 2004; see also Schmidt and Hensel, 2004) were the first to notice that pathogenicity related genes are often located on mobile genetic elements, called “pathogenicity islands” (PAIs). PAIs may be identified as strain specific sequences by subtractive hybridisation between virulent and avirulent strains of the same species. They are frequently found integrated in or near to tRNA genes, which have perfect properties for docking sites because they are highly conserved and often present in multiple copies. They are characterised by (the remains of) insertion sequences at their borders that, if still functional, may lead to genetic instability and to the spread of the PAI to other strains by horizontal gene transfer. The guanine-cytosine (GC)-content and codon usage of PAIs is often different from the GC-content and codon usage of the rest of the genome, which is taken as an indication of their recent acquisition in the genome.

PAIs typically contain sequences that code for gene products that have a (putative) role in virulence. The uropathogenic strain 536 of *E. coli* that has been extensively studied by the group of Hacker (Brzuszkiewicz et al., 2006), provides a good example of what might be found on PAIs. *E. coli* 536 contains seven PAIs coding for different types of fimbriae, haemolysins, a capsule, a siderophore system, a Yersiniabactin, proteins involved in intracellular multiplication, and for a hybrid peptide-polyketide genotoxin that causes cell cycle arrest and eventually cell death of eukaryotic cells that are in contact with this *E. coli* strain (Nougayrède et al., 2006).

The ongoing elucidation and analysis of prokaryotic genomes has shown that not only pathogenicity related traits are located on “islands”. PAIs are a specific example of a “genomic island” (GEI), the term that has been coined for the phenomenon that bacteria carry in their genome a flexible gene pool that encodes additional traits that can be beneficial under certain circumstances, and that allows them to occupy a specific niche, while the more constant part of the genome takes care of “household” functions. GEIs are commonly found in the “metagenome”, i.e. the combined genomes, of bacteria that share a niche. They would appear to facilitate exchange of useful genes between these bacteria that are mutually supportive in occupying the same environment. The traditional view of bacterial evolution occurring through clonal divergence and selection must be broadened to include gene exchange as a major driving force for adaptation to specific niches. PAIs would be an example of this phenomenon of gene transfer, in facilitating bacteria to function as pathogenic organisms.

The genome flexibility that leads to enhanced virulence is not restricted to acquisition of virulence factors; it may also include loss of genomic sequences, as has been shown for *Shigella flexneri* and enteroinvasive *E. coli* (Maurelli et al., 1998). In general, it appears to be evolutionarily profitable to counteract the acquisition of genes that provide selective advantage with loss of genetic information that can be dispensed with in the new niche, as is the case for instance for intracellular symbionts.

In conclusion, pathogenicity is not a singular trait of a singular type of organism, “the pathogens”. Rather, pathogenic traits are adaptive traits that equip a bacterium for a
Assessing potential for bacteria-mediated adverse human health effects

In the previous sections it has been argued that deleterious effects that are caused by pathogenic organisms can be understood as effects of a “lifestyle”, or constellation of traits, that enables these organisms to colonise and use specific environments in or on the human or, in general, animal body, as a niche. This line of thinking has been broadened by Casadevall (2006), who has pointed out that many micro-organisms in the environment have developed lifestyles that allow them to interact with the other organisms that they encounter in the environment. The same or similar gene products may have a role in different lifestyles, e.g. the interaction with fungi, protozoa as well as vertebrates. Bacterial strains that have no directly apparent role in human pathogenicity, for instance because they do not survive or replicate at 37°C, may still carry genes that code for gene products with a potential role as virulence factors in bacteria that are more compatible with a lifestyle as a human pathogen. DNA exchange between microbial strains may in the end provide bacteria that thrive in the human environment with new virulence factors derived from such bacteria. This complicates the risk/safety assessment of deliberate release of environmental strains, particularly if these strains have been subject to genetic engineering. The following is intended to help the assessor negotiate these complications.

Risk/safety assessment of environmental release of bacterial strains to determine whether these may cause adverse human health effects

Environmental release of bacteria should be preceded by a risk/safety assessment. Risk assessment usually comprises four steps: 1) hazard identification; 2) hazard characterisation (e.g. dose-response assessment); 3) exposure assessment (dose, concentration, survival); and 4) risk characterisation. In the risk assessment of environmental releases of bacterial strains, one aspect that has to be taken into account in hazard identification and hazard characterisation is the pathogenic potential of the bacteria to cause adverse human health effects. The WHO Laboratory Biosafety Manual (WHO, 2004, Chapters 2 and 16) provides helpful considerations on the risk/safety assessment of (potentially) pathogenic organisms. These considerations apply primarily to laboratory settings, but they can be easily adapted and applied to environmental settings.

For genetically engineered bacteria, the risk group of the species is a first approximation of the degree of bacterial pathogenicity in humans. But assessing the degree of pathogenicity of a bacterial strain calls for an unequivocal identification of the location of the strain in the spectrum from clear non-pathogen to clear pathogen. This should be done with caution. Truly non-pathogenic bacteria will lack the ability to survive in a human host (with the exception of commensal bacteria), or cause any adverse effects. Bacteria that are incompatible with the human environment e.g. bacteria that cannot survive at temperatures between 30-42°C, or that are exclusively phototrophic or lithotrophic would be expected to be non-pathogenic. Still, one should be careful drawing this conclusion. For instance, lithotrophic bacteria have been found in infections associated with surgical implants in the human body (Dempsey et al., 2007). Indeed, Casadevall (2006) has pointed out that bacterial strains that have lifestyles that do not link them to pathogenicity in humans can carry genes that code for gene products with a
potential role as virulence factors in bacteria that are or could develop into human pathogens. Falkow (2008) argues that it is difficult to separate the pathogenic from the commensal lifestyle. What is the difference between a pathogen and a commensal? Pathogens possess the inherent ability to cross anatomic barriers or breach other host defenses that limit the survival or replication of other microbes and commensals. Therefore, most, but certainly not all, pathogens establish themselves in an environment usually devoid of other stable microbial populations. These invasive properties are essential for their survival in nature, and, are often host specific. However, many “commensal” bacteria, that are able to colonise the human host without displaying immediate virulence phenotypes, can cause disease, (e.g. Group A and B streptococci, \textit{S. aureus}, \textit{N. meningitidis}, \textit{S. pneumonia}, \textit{H. influenza}). Many features that are seen as virulence factors of pathogens (pili, antiphagocytic proteins, capsules) may also be found in non-pathogenic bacteria. Virulence factors may simply be examples of a more general class of “adaptive factors” common to all bacteria (Casadevall, 2006).

Bacterial strains that have been derived from wild type isolates from the environment may have changed significantly in their pathogenicity compared to fresh wild type isolates. This may, in particular, be the case if the strains have been mutated, e.g. for attenuation, or if new virulence related genes have been introduced by genetic engineering, have been lost afterwards. But also the fact that strains have been handled in the laboratory during many generations may have led to the occurrence of mutants with changed properties. Losses of properties that have no function in survival under laboratory conditions, like virulence factors, occur quite frequently under these circumstances. As in all cases of attenuation, strains that have been attenuated in this way should be thoroughly tested for stability of the non-pathogenic phenotype.

Predicting the effects of introduced (potential) virulence genes on the pathogenicity of the recipient strain is not straightforward (see below). If “true virulence genes” (as defined above) have been introduced, an effect on pathogenicity is more likely, as these genes are directly responsible for pathological damage, such as toxins. However, the degree of damage that these gene products can cause is highly dependent on the context of the pathogenic “lifestyle” of the bacterium, which depends on the secondary virulence factors available in the bacterial strain. This discussion is especially pertinent for medical and veterinary applications of potentially (non)pathogenic strains. The discussion is also highly relevant for risk/safety assessments of releases of environmental strains that have been engineered in the laboratory. The case of the \textit{Burkholderia cepacia} complex (Bcc) is an example of a group of host species where the effect on pathogenicity of introduced potential virulence genes could be difficult to predict. It has has already been mentioned that these bacteria occur normally in the environment, but are now recognised as an important human health hazard. The species in this complex have for a long time been seen as (potential) plant pathogens, and their potential as human (opportunistic) pathogens has only recently been recognised. It would require more insight into the lifestyle of these bacteria to be able to predict the role of introduced virulence genes in the establishment of pathogenic potential. In cases like this, caution should be used in establishing conclusions on their pathogenicity.

The likelihood of the strain actually causing adverse human health effects will depend on the exposure of humans to the bacterial strain during and after the release. Adverse effects are only to be expected if the exposure is such that it will lead to contact of humans with the bacteria in sufficient numbers in relation to the infectious dose of the specific bacterium, and in such a way that pathogenic effects may ensue, e.g. by ingestion, inhalation, dermal contact. Factors that determine the degree of exposure are:
1) number of bacteria released into the environment; 2) physiological state of the bacteria, e.g. due to fermentations conditions prior to the administration; 3) spread during release, dependent on the method used, e.g. by aerosols, injection or mixing in the soil, seed coating; 4) survival; and 5) dissemination after release, e.g. through surface and subsurface water movement, by soil fauna or by disturbance of the site of application. Spreading of aerosols is dependent on conditions of wind at the time of the application; survival of bacteria in aerosol droplets is dependent on environmental factors, e.g. temperature, humidity and UV radiation. Survival of bacteria in soil is variable for different strains of the same species. In many cases where bacteria have been introduced into the environment, a rapid decrease has been observed, i.e. the number of detectable bacteria drops below the detection limit of a direct viable count within months or even weeks. This is even the case for many strains that are well-adapted to a soil lifestyle, e.g. the root colonising \textit{Pseudomonas} spp. (Glandorf et al., 2001; Weller, 2007). The bacteria are, however, not “lost” from the environment, and may appear again readily if environmental circumstances are favourable, for instance if the plant that they are prone to colonise is again present in the environment; also, in some cases long-term survival and persistence of introduced micro-organisms has been demonstrated (Hirsch, 1996).

If a human health hazard is expected, risk estimations should be made based on worst case assumptions on survival and spreading. Risk estimates may be refined if the results of further research show that the worst case assumptions are not realistic.

\textbf{General considerations for assessing altered pathogenicity of micro-organisms as a result of genetic engineering}

The risk/safety assessment of genetically engineered micro-organisms requires careful consideration of numerous factors, not the least of which is the genetic composition of both the recipient and the donor organisms, and their respective lifestyles and phenotypic expression. While the intended use of the organism is factored into the initial assessment, some foresight should be given to potential unintended uses, in particular if the genetically engineered strains are meant to be commercially available.

Genetic engineering may cause, advertently or inadvertently, changes in the various factors that determine the niche of a bacterium, and may broaden its niche, that then needs to be redefined. As described in the previous sections, pathogenicity is the capacity to cause disease, and is related to the ability of a micro-organism to reach and occupy a particular habitat on or in the host and to subsequently cause harm to the host. Thus, when performing an assessment of pathogenic potential to humans, one should consider how the engineering may change a bacterium’s capacity to cause disease.

There are several determinants that should be considered when assessing the potential for bacterial pathogenicity as a result of genetic engineering. Consideration should be given to the biological and ecological characteristics of the non-modified strain, i.e. its “lifestyle”, insofar as it is compatible with causing pathogenicity in humans. Due to the lifestyle of the vast majority of bacterial strains in the environment, e.g. psychrophilic or thermophilic, lithothrophic or phototrophic bacteria, it is not likely that they will turn into potential human pathogens just by the introduction of one virulence factor derived from a human pathogen. On the other hand, genes derived from bacteria that are not suspected human pathogens on the basis of their lifestyle may still code for gene products that can contribute to future virulence (Casadevall, 2006).

Genetic engineering may involve genes whose products are not inherently harmful but adverse effects may still arise from the modification or exacerbation of an existing
constellation of traits in the recipient micro-organism. This may arise as the result, for example, of the product of an inserted gene acting alongside existing pathogenic determinants or the addition of a trait completing the suite of traits necessary for a pathogenic lifestyle. Alternatively it is possible that modification of normal genes may also alter pathogenicity. In an assessment for environmental risk/safety of an application intended for environmental release, the following points should be considered:

- characteristics of the recipient, for instance whether the recipient possesses a sufficient number of the constellation of traits that it could be a potential human or mammalian pathogen
- existing traits in the recipient organism that might lead to an increase in pathogenicity or infectivity when altered (e.g. alteration of host range or tissue tropism)
- the likelihood that any disabling mutation within the recipient might be overcome, for example through complementation or reversion, due to the insertion of the foreign DNA, or through the inserted gene encoding an enzyme that would complete an anabolic pathway for a pathogenicity determinant
- the transmissibility of the vector used to introduce relevant genes
- whether the foreign DNA carries a pathogenicity determinant from a related organism (toxin, invasin, integrin, and surface structures such as fimbriae, LPS and capsule)
- when the foreign DNA does carry a virulence factor, the feasibility that this gene could contribute to the pathogenicity of the genetically engineered micro-organism, or whether the virulence factor provides resistance to host defense mechanisms
- whether the foreign DNA carries a gene that renders the recipient resistant to an antibiotic, especially if the specific resistance has not yet spread by natural processes to the genus to which the recipient belongs (see Appelbaum, 2006; Noble, Virani and Cree, 1992), or if the mechanism of resistance has emerged newly, like Qnr determinants (Nordmann and Poirel, 2005)
- whether susceptibility to antibiotics or other forms of therapy may be affected as a consequence of the genetic engineering
- whether attenuated or inactivated strains remain stably attenuated or inactivated
- whether a surface component that might bind to a different receptor than that used by recipient micro-organism could increase virulence
- whether the foreign DNA encodes gene products, e.g. toxins, that even in the absence of live organisms, may cause pathogenic effects
- whether the derived from unrelated bacteria foreign DNA encodes a protein that does not interact with the pathogenic properties of the parental strain but may cause pathogenic reaction, e.g. a modulator of growth (hormone, cytokine), or other protein with a potentially harmful biological activity (see also Bergmans et al., 2008)
- when mutations are introduced that inactivate specific virulence factors of potential pathogens, whether the stability of the mutation has been demonstrated,
and whether attenuation has been shown to be sufficient so that the resulting strain can be considered non-pathogenic.

The above points are illustrative rather than inclusive. Assessors must use good judgment in utilising this list, recognising that additional examples may be pertinent to the case at hand. Although there are a number of considerations that must be taken in the evaluation of the pathogenic potential of genetically engineered bacteria, it is highly unlikely that a pathogen will be inadvertently created from a non-pathogen lacking most or the entire constellation of traits enabling the pathogenic lifestyle by combining virulence factors.

Notes

1. The terms “genetically engineered micro-organism” and “genetically modified micro-organism” are used in different legislative systems for micro-organisms in which genetic information has been added or removed by techniques of modern biotechnology.

2. Toxins may also be low molecular weight metabolites; this type of toxins is, however, not taken into consideration in this chapter.

3. The following paragraphs describing adhesion of bacteria to various surfaces are restricted to the pili, adhesins and secretion systems of gram-negative bacteria.

4. Other aspects that have to be taken into account in various steps of the risk assessment include (but are not limited to) natural background levels; conditions for survival, persistence, growth and reproduction; mode of dispersal; potential for gene transfers, in particular genes associated with pathogenicity, toxicity or persistence; antibiotic resistance.

5. One factor that complicates this prediction is the influence of the condition of the host, e.g. the immune status of the host, on the effectiveness of a virulence factor. In regulatory discussions, however, this complication is usually evaded, as for the outcome of the discussion the conditions of the host is usually supposed to be “normal”.

6. For guidance on the detection of bacteria in soil, see OECD (2004).

References


Ghigo, E. et al. (2002), “*Coxiella burnetti* survival in THP-1 monocytes involves the impairment of phagosome maturation: IFN-γ mediates its restoration and bacterial killing”, *Journal of Immunology*, Vol. 169, No. 8, pp. 4 488-4 495, October.


Kingsley, R.A. et al. (2002), “*Salmonella enterica* serotype typhimurium ShdA is an outer membrane fibronectin-binding protein that is expressed in the intestine”, *Molecular Microbiology*, Vol. 43, No. 4, pp. 895-905, February.


Part II:

Biology of crops
Chapter 2.

Squashes, pumpkins, zucchinis and gourds
(Curcurbita species)

This chapter deals with the biology of squashes, pumpkins, zucchinis and gourds (Curcurbita species). It contains information for use during the risk/safety regulatory assessment of genetically engineered varieties intended to be grown in the environment (biosafety). It includes elements of taxonomy, centres of origin and distribution, morphological characters, reproductive biology, genetics, hybridisation and introgression, crop production and cultivation practices, interactions with other organisms, pests and pathogens, and biotechnological developments.

The chapter was prepared by the OECD Working Group on the Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology, with Mexico as the lead country and the collaboration of the United States. It was initially issued in August 2012. Data from FAOSTAT have been updated.
Species or taxonomic group

The genus *Cucurbita* is well known for its cultivated species which in English are called by the general names of squashes, pumpkins, marrows and gourds, and in Spanish are commonly known as *calabazas* and *zapallos* or in some areas of the Americas by indigenous names. Other names have been given to *Cucurbita* species in countries where these species have been adopted into local agriculture, e.g. in the French language, *citrouille*, *courgette* and *potiron*. The cultivated *Cucurbita* species are: *C. argyrosperma*, which includes the cushaw type (long curved neck) of squash; *C. maxima*, which includes pumpkins and hubbard, turban and buttercup squash; *C. moschata*, which includes the winter squashes; and *C. pepo*, which includes both summer squash (e.g. zucchini, scallop, scallopin, crookneck and cocozelle squash) and winter squash (e.g. the common or “true” pumpkin, delicata, acorn and spaghetti squash) as well as ornamental gourds. *C. ficifolia* includes the fig leaf gourd and lacayote. The most important of these species in terms of agricultural production worldwide are *C. maxima*, *C. moschata* and *C. pepo*.

The genus *Cucurbita* is exclusively native to the Americas. Prior to the European contact (i.e. prior to 1492 of the Common Era), various *Cucurbita* were a mainstay of traditional Native American agriculture. In the Americas, *Cucurbita* have traditionally been one of the “three sisters” of native agriculture together with beans (*Phaseolus vulgaris*) and maize (*Zea maize*). The three crops were grown together, with the maize providing support for the climbing beans, and shade for the *Cucurbita*. The *Cucurbita* provide ground cover to limit weeds and keep the soil moist. The beans fix nitrogen for all three crops. Subsequent to the European contact, *Cucurbita* species were disseminated worldwide and cultivated on other continents (Paris, 1989). Today, *Cucurbita* species are cultivated worldwide, and are an important food source for much of the world’s population. In 2013, Asia region (primarily the People’s Republic of China, and India) was the largest producer of squashes, pumpkins and gourds with more than 65% of the total hectares planted to *Cucurbita* species worldwide, followed by Africa with 15% of the global acreage, then North and Central America and the Caribbean with 8%, Europe with 7.5%, South America with 3% and Oceania with 0.9 % (FAOSTAT, 2013).

Domesticated species are cultivated in large production areas for processing and the fresh market, as well as in home gardens. Cultivated *Cucurbita* species are grown primarily for their seeds, fruits and gourds. *Cucurbita* seeds can be eaten directly, ground into paste, meal, “nut” butter or fine flour. The seeds are also sources of oils and proteins (Robinson and Decker-Waters, 1997). After the hull is removed, the seeds contain about 50% oil and up to 35% protein. Most of the oil is made up of non-saturated fatty acids, and thus is of high nutritional value. Conjugated fatty acids among some *Cucurbita* oils make them highly useful as drying oils, as they combine readily with oxygen to form an elastic, waterproof film. Mature and immature *Cucurbita* fruits are edible and eaten as a vegetable. The flesh of some fruits (e.g. *C. maxima*) can be dried, ground into a powder and used with cereals to make bread, cakes, etc. (Chiej, 1984; Facciola, 1990; See, Wan Nadiah and Noor Aziah, 2007). The fruits of one *Cucurbita* (*C. ficifolia*) are used to make confections and beverages, some alcoholic. In addition, in many places in Latin America and elsewhere in the world, flowers and some vegetative parts (e.g. tender stem tips, leaves, tendrils) are also eaten as vegetables (Nee, 1990; Merrick, 1991; Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995). The vines and fruits can also be used as fodder for domesticated animals (Mariano and Dirzo, 2002). The gourds can be used for ornamental purposes or, as has been the case historically, as containers. Few people grow *Cucurbita* flowers for decorative purposes as a flower lasts only one morning. Only one species (*C. maxima*)
II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CURCURBITA SPECIES)

is known to have very aromatic flowers (Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995). Several Cucurbita species are used in traditional medicine; as an anthelmintic (Chou and Huangfu, 1960; Schabot, 1978; Chiej, 1984; Argueta, 1994); to treat benign prostatic hypertrophy (Duke and Ayensu, 1985; Kreuter, 2000; Gossell-Williams, Davis and O’Connor, 2006); as a diuretic (Chiej, 1984); as a nerve tonic and to soothe burns, inflammations and boils (Chopra, Nayar and Chopra, 1956); and as an antihyperglycemic agent (Andrade-Cetto and Heinrich, 2005; Xia and Wang, 2006). Lira, Andres and Nee (1995) discuss several of these uses.

Cultivated species of Cucurbita are very diverse locally, regionally and worldwide, having a wealth of innumerable strains, landraces and varieties (e.g. Esquinas-Alcazar and Gulick, 1983; Jeffrey, 1990; Nee, 1990; Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995; Sanjur et al., 2002). It should be noted that commonly used descriptors such as “pumpkin” or “squash” apply broadly to morphotypes across all of the cultivated Cucurbita, as does the term “gourd”. Thus, the term “pumpkin” is applied to certain fruits of C. maxima as well as certain fruits of C. moschata, C. argyrosperma and C. pepo; and the term “squash” is applied to certain fruits of C. pepo as well as certain fruits of C. maxima, C. moschata and C. argyrosperma. Similarly, in English the word “pumpkin” or “squash” as used colloquially could be describing a variety, a subspecies, a species or, at the extreme, a genus. In order to avoid confusion, this chapter will rely on taxonomic identifiers to the extent possible.

**Taxonomy**

The genus Cucurbita, which is native to the Americas, is in the order Cucurbitales, the family Cucurbitaceae, the subfamily Cucurbitoideae and the tribe Cucurtiteae (Jeffrey, 1990). The Cucurbita are not closely related to other Cucurbitaceae genera.

Cucurbita traditionally has been considered a distinct genus of 20-27 species (Bailey, 1943, 1948; Cutler and Whitaker, 1961; Esquinas-Alcazar and Gulick, 1983), which, due to the ecological characteristics of their habitats and duration of their life cycles, are divided into two large groups: the xerophytic species, perennials adapted to dry climates with tuberous storage roots; and the species adapted to moister or mesophytic environments, either annuals or short-lived perennials with fibrous roots. Within this second group are the five cultivated species, whose amazing morphological variation – especially of fruits and seeds – has led to multiple names and classification schemes. Crossability experiments have more recently revealed that some of the species considered separate members of the 27-member cohort were merely from different wild populations. Nee (1990) recognises 12 or 13 species. Lira, Andres and Nee (1995) recognise 15 species and 20 taxa.

The Cucurbita can be categorised into seven groups (Table 2.1): the Argyrosperma group, the Maxima group, the Pepo group, the Okeechobeesis group, the Digitata group, the Foetidissima group and a seventh group, those species with no defined group (i.e. C. ecuadorensis, C. ficifolia, C. lundelliana and C. moschata). The five cultivated Cucurbita species are listed amongst these seven groups, and highlighted in Table 2.1 in bold.

The cultivated species C. argyrosperma, C. maxima, C. moschata and C. pepo each are comprised of a large series of convarieties, varieties and forms, including numerous local races (landraces) or varieties, and commercial cultivars. At least three of the cultivated species, C. argyrosperma, C. maxima and C. pepo are known to interbreed...
naturally with wild relatives, and the appropriate taxonomic assignments for these wild relatives vis-à-vis the cultivated species is still in flux as new information becomes available. In some instances the wild relative has been classified as a distinct species, in others it has been classified as a subspecies of the cultivated species. Annex 2.A1 provides a listing of the various names associated with 13 of the species. The taxonomic relationships of two Cucurbita species, *C. argyrosperma* and *C. pepo*, have been studied more intensively, and these studies have provided a much clearer perspective of the relationships within these cultivated species, and between the cultivated species and their wild relatives. The other three domesticated species have been less studied in terms of relationships within the species and between the cultivated species and their wild relatives.

Morphological, ecogeographical, archaeological and biosystematic evidence, such as those derived from studies on hybridisation and molecular biology (e.g. Decker, 1988, 1986; Andres, 1990, 1987a, 1987b, 1987c; Decker-Walters et al., 2002, 1993; Decker and Wilson, 1987; Kirkpatrick and Wilson, 1988; Wilson, 1990, 1989; Merrick, 1990; Rodriguez and Lira, 1992; Wilson, Doebley and Duvall, 1992; Wilson, Lira and Rodriguez, 1994; Sanjur et al., 2002), as well as field observations, contribute to the development of the currently recognised limits and relationships of the five cultivated species. Table 2.1 and Annex 2.A1 are syntheses of information from various sources describing the most commonly referred to *Cucurbita* taxa, both wild and domesticated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Taxa</th>
<th>Natural distribution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma</em> Huber ssp. <em>argyrosperma</em></td>
<td>Southwestern United States, Mexico, Mesoamerica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma</em> ssp. <em>sororia</em> (L.H. Bailey)</td>
<td>Mesoamerica (Pacific coast from Mexico to Nicaragua)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. maxima</em> Duchesne ex Lam. ssp. <em>maxima</em></td>
<td>South America (Argentina, Bolivia, Chile)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. maxima</em> ssp. <em>andreana</em> (Naudin) I.A. Filov</td>
<td>South America (Argentina, Bolivia, Uruguay)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. pepo</em> L.</td>
<td>Northern Mexico, southern and central United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. pepo</em> ssp. <em>fraterna</em> (L.H. Bailey)</td>
<td>Northeastern Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. pepo</em> ssp. <em>texana</em> (Scheele) I.A. Filov</td>
<td>Central, southcentral, southeastern United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. okeechobeensis</em> (J.K. Small)</td>
<td>Southern United States (Florida)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. okeechobeensis</em> ssp. martinezii</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. digitata</em> A. Gray * *</td>
<td>Mexico, United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. cordata</em> S. Watson *</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. palmata</em> S. Watson *</td>
<td>Mexico, United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. foetidissima</em> H.B.K. *</td>
<td>Mexico, United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. pedatifolia</em> L.H. Bailey *</td>
<td>Central Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. scabridifolia</em> L.H. Bailey *</td>
<td>Northwestern Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. radicans</em> Naudin *</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. eucuadorensis</em> Cutler &amp; Whitaker</td>
<td>Ecuador (Pacific coast)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. lundelliana</em> L.H. Bailey</td>
<td>Belize, Costa Rica, El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras, Mexico, Nicaragua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. ficifolia</em> Bouché</td>
<td>Mexico to Argentina and Chile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. moschata</em> (Duchesne ex Lam.)</td>
<td>Mesoamerica and South America</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Names in bold correspond to domesticated taxa; those with an asterisk (*) correspond to perennial species. Names used preferentially in this table and in the text are based on the nomenclature used by Lira, Andres and Nee (1995); Lira Saade, Eguiarte Fruns and Montes Hernández(2009); and Gong et al. (2012).
Cucurbita argyrosperma

A number of researchers have investigated *Cucurbita argyrosperma*, which was formerly known as *C. mixta* Pang (e.g. Nabhan, 1984; Merrick and Nabhan, 1985; Merrick and Bates, 1989; Merrick, 1991, 1990). *C. argyrosperma* is a collection of interfertile domesticated, feral and wild plants. Based on morphological variation, geographical distribution and allozyme variation, Merrick and Bates (1989) and Merrick (1990) have divided *C. argyrosperma* into two subspecies: 1) ssp. *argyrosperma*, with four varieties, three of which (var. *argyrosperma*, var. *callicarpa*, var. *stenosperma*) encompass all the cultivated types of the species, and one that encompasses the wild populations from northern Mexico (var. *palmeri*); and 2) ssp. *sororia*, which is considered the evolutionarily ancestral wild stock (based on its ecogeographical distribution, morphological similarity and reproductive compatibility) and is comprised of the wild populations from Mexico through Central America. Hybridisation studies (Merrick, 1990) and field data (Nabhan, 1984; Merrick and Nabhan, 1985; Decker, 1986; Lira, 1991) have revealed that all five of these taxa are completely interfertile and thus belong to the same biological species.

Spontaneous hybrids between the wild and cultivated plants of the group have been documented for some regions of Mexico in populations quite separated from each other, as reported by Decker (1986), between plants from various taxa of ssp. *argyrosperma* in the state of Jalisco. Moreover, the characteristics of cultivated varieties do not differ much from those that can be found in the wild plants of the group, nor from those of spontaneous hybrids between the wild and cultivated plants of the group. It is therefore not easy to readily distinguish between the various subspecies and varieties. For these reasons, this chapter follows the general convention and recognises only the two subspecies, placing all the cultivated types within ssp. *argyrosperma*, and the wild or spontaneous plants within ssp. *sororia* (as in Table 2.1).

Cucurbita pepo

*Cucurbita pepo* is probably the most well-studied species of the genus. Systematic, ethnobotanical and morphometric research, together with archaeological information, constitute the main sources of information concerning its origin and domestication. Similar to *C. argyrosperma*, *C. pepo* is a collection of interfertile domesticated, feral and wild plants.

Morphometric and molecular research, as well as studies on artificial and spontaneous hybridisation, indicate that the wild taxa most closely related to *C. pepo* L. are: 1) *C. pepo* ssp. *fraterna* (also known as *C. fraterna*), only found currently in a few localities in northeastern Mexico (in the states of Tamaulipas and Nuevo León; Bailey, 1943; Andres, 1987a; Nee, 1990; Rodríguez and Lira, 1992; Wilson, Lira and Rodríguez, 1994); and 2) two wild *Cucurbita* originally identified as *C. texana* (identified now as *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera* var. *texana* and *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera* var. *ozarkana*), which are endemic to parts of the United States (Gray, 1850; Bailey, 1943; Fursa and Filov, 1982; Decker, 1988, 1986; Andres, 1987a; Decker and Wilson, 1987; Kirpatrick and Wilson, 1988; Wilson, 1990, 1989; Decker-Walters et al., 1990; Wilson, Doebley and Duvall, 1992; Sanjur et al., 2002).

There is still some disagreement concerning the appropriate taxonomic relationship of the members of the *Pepo* group, with no fewer than three different reclassifications suggested, including those from Decker (1988, 1986); Andres (1987a); Decker-Walters et al. (1993, 1990). The first proposal by Decker (1988, 1986) recognised...
two subspecies: 1) ssp. *pepo*, composed of two varieties: var. *pepo*, in which all edible cultivars are included, and var. *fraterna*, corresponding to the wild ancestor of this part of the group; and 2) ssp. *ovifera*, also with two varieties: var. *ovifera*, which includes cultivars used as decoration, and var. *texana*. The second classification (Andres, 1987a) is simpler and proposes that *C. pepo* is only constituted by three subspecies: ssp. *pepo*, which includes all edible and ornamental cultivated types, and the subspecies *texana* and *fraterna*, in which the wild ancestors of the group are located. The third proposal (Decker-Walters et al., 1993) is a modification of the first, as it has three subspecies: ssp. *pepo*, which includes local races and commercial cultivars, ssp. *fraterna* and ssp. *ovifera*. Under this proposal, subspecies *ovifera* is composed of three varieties: 1) var. *ozarkana* (wild plants in the states of Arkansas, Illinois, Louisiana, Missouri and Oklahoma in the United States), 2) var. *texana* (wild plants in the states of Louisiana, Mississippi, New Mexico and Texas in the United States), and 3) var. *ovifera* (mainly ornamental cultivars). For simplicity, this chapter, in developing the *C. pepo* grouping in Table 2.1, follows the classification proposed by Andres (1987a), but recognises that the classification is still in flux as new molecular information is developed, as discussed below.

Work by Wilson, Doebley and Duvall in 1992 using restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis on 15 species in the genus supports the separation of cultivars of *C. pepo* into two distinct lineages, *C. pepo* ssp. *pepo* and *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera*, as do isozyme studies of these taxa (Decker-Walters et al., 1993; Jobst, King and Hemleben, 1998). Analysis of the sequence of an intron of the mitochondrial *nad1* gene has also been used to elucidate the relationship between the various members of the *Pepo* group (Sanjur et al., 2002), and this analysis also suggests that *C. pepo* can be subdivided into two subspecies: *C. pepo* ssp. *pepo* and *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera*.

Smith (2006) agrees that *C. pepo* is comprised of two subspecies: *C. pepo* ssp. *pepo* and *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera*. *C. pepo* ssp. *pepo* includes pumpkin, zucchini and other marrow squashes, Mexican landraces and a few ornamental gourds. *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera* comprises both domesticated and free-living populations, and is further divided into three taxa: *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera* var. *ovifera*, which includes some cultivars (e.g. acorn, crookneck and scallop squash and some pumpkin) and most ornamental gourds; and the free-living populations in the United States, which represent two molecularly distinct populations; *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera* var. *texana* and *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera* var. *ozarkana* (Decker-Walters et al., 1993, 2002).

The analysis by Sanjur et al. (2002) of an intron of the mitochondrial *nad1* gene shows that *C. fraterna*, *C. pepo* var. *texana*, *C. pepo* var. *ozarkana* and cultivated *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera* form a closely related clade, with any of the three wild species a potential progenitor of the domesticated species. The *C. pepo* ssp. *pepo* lineage is separated from the *ovifera* clade on the basis of a three base pair difference in an intron of the gene *nad1* of the mitochondrial DNA, a finding which supports the hypothesis that *C. pepo* ssp. *pepo* and *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera* arose from two separate domestication events.

All of the *C. pepo* subspecies and variants can successfully hybridise with each other, suggesting that the *C. pepo* progenitors for both subspecies *pepo* and *ovifera* were once part of an extended contiguous population reaching from Mexico through the eastern United States. Whether this extended range occurred naturally or was influenced by humans is still uncertain (Newsom, Webb and Dunbar, 1993; Smith, 2006). Upon reviewing archaeological evidence found in the state of Florida (United States), Hart, Daniels and Sheviak (2004) suggest that the pepo gourd may have first been
employed in North America as a float for fish nets, and this use may have facilitated spread of the species in North America.

**Cucurbita maxima**

Taxonomically, the species *C. maxima* is composed of two subspecies, *maxima* and *andreana*. *C. maxima* ssp. *maxima* contains ornamental and cultivated forms, while *C. maxima* ssp. *andreana* contains only the wild forms. Gene sequence analysis work by Sanjur et al. (2002) on the mitochondrial *nad1* gene detects no base pair differences in an intron of the mitochondrial *nad1* gene between *C. maxima* and *C. andreana*, supporting the assignment based on ecological and morphological evidence that these two species form a wild/domesticated species pair (Nee, 1990). The work of Sanjur et al. (2002) also shows that *C. maxima* is closely related to the free-living South American species, *C. ecuadorensis*. This supports research using chloroplast DNA analysis which shows that *Cucurbita ecuadorensis* groups with *C. maxima* and *C. andreana* to form a South American group of allied species (Wilson, Doebley and Duvall, 1992). Nee (1990) suggests that *C. andreana* appears to be ancestral to *C. maxima*, while Wilson, Doebley and Duvall (1992) suggest that *C. ecuadorensis*, *C. maxima* and *C. andreana* are derived from the same ancestor. *Cucurbita ecuadorensis* itself has been regarded as a species subjected to an incipient domestication process which, however, did not continue (Nee, 1990; Sanjur et al., 2002).

**Cucurbita moschata**

Although a very important vegetable crop in many parts of the world (e.g. Africa), *C. moschata* has been subject to less scientific scrutiny aimed at elucidating taxonomic relationships within the species than *C. argyrosperma* or *C. pepo*. Filon in 1966 classified more than 20 varieties of *C. moschata* into geographical subspecies. This classification reflects several centres of diversity of *C. moschata* such as Columbia, Japan, Mexico, Central America, the western United States, Florida, India and Asia Minor. Gwanama, Labuschagne and Botha (2000), using random amplified polymorphic DNA analysis, elucidated the relationship between 31 landrace genotypes obtained from Malawi and Zambia. That analysis revealed four clusters, with genotypes from Malawi mainly grouping in three clusters, while all genotypes from Zambia and three from Malawi clustered in another group.

That *C. moschata* has a closer affinity to the *Argyrosperma* group taxa than to other *Cucurbita* species has been argued from floral, seed and ecological similarities, and the fact that these species are partially interfertile (Merrick, 1995, 1990). Sanjur et al. (2002) confirmed this relationship through mitochondrial *nad1* gene sequence analysis.

**Cucurbita ficifolia**

*C. ficifolia* has been subject to less scientific scrutiny aimed at elucidating taxonomic relationships within the species than other cultivated *Cucurbita*. The species is reproductively incompatible with the other species of the genus and shows far less variability than the other species of the genus. The scant morphological variation of this species is consistent with the limited variability in the pattern of isozymes studies conducted so far (Andres, 1990). It has no associated wild ancestor in studies to date (e.g. Sanjur et al., 2002).

Work by Sanjur et al. (2002) examining a sequence of an intron region from the mitochondrial gene *nad1*, and work by Wilson, Doebley and Duvall (1992) using chloroplast restriction fragment length polymorphism, suggest that *C. ficifolia* is basal to
all other mesophytic Cucurbita species. More work is needed to decipher the relationship of C. ficifolia to the xerophytic species of the genus with which it shares some morphological features.

Centres of origin and distribution

All of the Cucurbita are native to the Americas. The centres of origin and domestication for cultivated Cucurbita species can be identified as various areas in North and South America (Jeffrey, 1990). Table 2.1 lists the natural distribution for both cultivated and wild Cucurbita species. At least five species of the genus Cucurbita were domesticated before the European contact in the late 15th century, forming important food sources in Native American economies, and some of these species were among the earliest plants taken under cultivation and domestication in the New World (Smith, 2001; Sanjur et al., 2002).

Cucurbita argyrosperma

The natural distribution of C. argyrosperma ranges from the southwestern United States through Mexico into Central America (Table 2.1). The area of domestication for C. argyrosperma is considered to be from the southwestern United States to the centre-south region of Mexico (Merrick and Bates, 1989). Archaeological remains of C. argyrosperma found from southwestern United States to the centre-south region of Mexico suggest that domestication of this species occurred in the region several thousand years ago (Table 2.2). Unlike the other cultivated Cucurbita species, data on the distribution of C. argyrosperma outside the Americas are scarce and there is some question as to whether this species was cultivated at any time in other parts of the world. Today, it is cultivated primarily in South America, Mexico, and on very limited areas in the United States.

Cucurbita ficifolia

The natural distribution of C. ficifolia ranges from the Mexican highlands south to northern Chile and Argentina (Table 2.1). It grows as an annual in temperate climates and can appear to be a perennial in tropical zones. The precise location of the centre of domestication of Cucurbita ficifolia is still uncertain. Some have proposed that its centre of origin is Central America or southern Mexico/Central America. Linguistic evidence tends to support this hypothesis because of the wide use of names based on the Nahuatl name “chilacayohiti” as far south as Argentina. Others suggest that its centre of domestication is located in South America and, more specifically, in the Andes (Nee, 1990). Andres (1990) compared diverse types of evidence and was not able to determine precisely the probable domestication site of this crop. So, while native names from indigenous Nahua influence like “chilacayote” and “lacayote” suggest a Mexican origin, systematic evidence has been inconclusive because a strong reproductive incompatibility has been found between C. ficifolia and the wild taxa of Cucurbita native to Mexico. While archaeological evidence favours a South American origin since the most ancient remains have been found in Peru (Table 2.2), it has not been possible to support this evidence by means of systematic studies, including those involving the two wild South American taxa (C. maxima ssp. andreana and C. ecuadorensis) as both prosper in habitats different from those in which C. ficifolia is cultivated (Nee, 1990). Also, the bee Peponapis atrata, until recently considered a pollinator specific to C. ficifolia, has not been found in South America. Cucurbita ficifolia differs in its karyotype from all other
II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CURCURBITA SPECIES) – 91

SAFETY ASSESSMENT OF TRANSGENIC ORGANISMS: OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS, VOLUME 5 © OECD 2016

taxa of the genus and is always clearly separated in analyses with various molecular markers (Weiling, 1959; Andres, 1990; Wilson, Doebley and Duvall, 1992; Sanjur et al., 2002). All of these data have led to the proposition that the wild ancestor of C. ficifolia could be an undiscovered (or possibly extinct) species from South America (Andres, 1990; Nee, 1990; Sanjur et al., 2002). Although archaeological records show that it was the most cultivated Cucurbita species in the Americas prior to the European contact (Bisognin, 2002), currently C. ficifolia is the least cultivated of the Cucurbita species in the Americas. In the 16th and 17th centuries, Europeans introduced C. ficifolia to the Mediterranean countries (specifically France and Portugal) and India. It was also spread to other parts of the world and picked up other names, e.g. shark skin melon in Asia, Malabar gourd in India, and pie melon in Australia and New Zealand.

Table 2.2. Synthesis of archaeological records of cultivated species of Cucurbita

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C. argyrosperma</th>
<th>C. ficifolia</th>
<th>C. maxima</th>
<th>C. moschata</th>
<th>C. pepo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>– Valley of Tehuacán, Puebla, Mexico (before 5200 BCE)</td>
<td>– Huaca Prieta, Peru (2700-300 BCE)</td>
<td>– Casma Valley, Peru (2000-1500 BCE)</td>
<td>– Ocampo, Tamaulipas and Valley of Tehuacán, Puebla, Mexico (2700-300 BCE)</td>
<td>– Valley of Oaxaca (8750 BCE-700 CE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Ocampo, Tamaulipas, Mexico (200-900 CE)</td>
<td>– Casma Valley, Peru (2000-1500 BCE)</td>
<td>– Viru Valley, Peru (1800 BCE-600 CE)</td>
<td>– Huaca Prieta, Peru (2700-300 BCE)</td>
<td>– Ocampo, Tamaulipas (7000-5000 BCE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Zape River, Durango, Mexico (700 CE)</td>
<td>– Valley of Oaxaca, Mexico (700 CE)</td>
<td>– Ica, Peru (500-1400 CE)</td>
<td>– Valle Casma, Peru (500 BCE)</td>
<td>– Ozark Highlands, Missouri, United States (4000 BCE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– San Nicolás, Peru (1200 CE)</td>
<td>– Southwest United States (300 BCE)</td>
<td>– West of Kentucky, United States (3000-600 BCE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Viru Valley, Peru (600-1100 CE)</td>
<td>– Philips Spring, Missouri, United States (2300 BCE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Chinch, Peru (1310-1530 CE)</td>
<td>– Valley of Tehuacan, Mexico (2000-1000 BCE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Great Plains, west of the Mississippi River, United States (1700 CE)</td>
<td>– Southwest United States (300 BCE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Zape River, Durango, Mexico (600-700 CE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Edzna, Campeche, Mexico (850 CE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– Great Plains, west of the Mississippi River, United States (1400 CE)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Lira, Andres and Nee (1995).

Cucurbita maxima

The natural distribution of Cucurbita maxima is comprised of Argentina, Bolivia and Chile (Table 2.1). C. maxima was domesticated in South America. Historical chronicles indicate that during the time of the conquest of Rio de La Plata (16th century), this species was one of the main crops of the Guarani people living in what is now northeastern Argentina and Paraguay (Parodi, 1935). Then, as now, there were many variants under cultivation in the Andean valleys (Cárdenas, 1944). Archaeological evidence for C. maxima uses and domestication has been found from Peru to northern Argentina as shown in Table 2.2. The wild species that have shown higher genetic affinity or otherwise are more similar to this crop (Puchalski and Robinson, 1990; Wilson, Doebley and Duvall, 1992; Sanjur et al., 2002) are C. maxima ssp. andreana,
endemic to Argentina and Uruguay (Martínez-Crovetto, 1974; 1965; 1954), and \textit{C. ecuadorensis}, known only from the coast of Ecuador (Cutler and Whitaker, 1969; Nee, 1990). \textit{C. maxima} ssp. \textit{andreana} is the most probable wild ancestor of this crop (Millán, 1945; Fursa and Filov, 1982; Nee, 1990; Sanjur et al., 2002).

From the 16th century, several types of \textit{C. maxima}, such as the turban type, were transported directly from South America to Europe. Many other cultivars reached Australia, Africa and Asia, where local landraces evolved. In the 19th century, several cultivars were introduced into the United States from South America (Decker-Walters and Walters, 2000). Secondary centres of diversity include Bangladesh, Burma, India and the southern Appalachians of the United States, e.g. the landrace “Candy Roaster” was originally developed by the Cherokee people in the southern Appalachians. These findings suggest that for \textit{C. maxima}, in addition to the regions of South America mentioned above, multiple centres of diversity, primarily composed of landraces, exist around the world.

\textit{Cucurbita moschata}

The natural distribution of \textit{Cucurbita moschata} is from the lowlands of Mexico into Central America (Table 2.1). \textit{Cucurbita moschata} was domesticated in Latin America (Whitaker, 1947) but there is no consensus as to the precise area where domestication likely occurred. It has been proposed that \textit{C. moschata} was domesticated in Mesoamerica (Whitaker and Davis, 1962) or alternatively in South America, more specifically in what is now Colombia. However, available evidence has been difficult to interpret and the centre of origin/domestication question is still open to debate. The oldest archaeological remains of \textit{C. moschata} (4900-3500 BCE) have been recovered from the Ocampo caves, in the state of Tamaulipas, in northeast Mexico; however, very early dates have been registered for several localities in Central America (2000 BCE-850 CE) and South America (2700-300 BCE; Table 2.2). One of the main arguments against the South American origin hypothesis is that \textit{C. moschata} is capable of producing highly fertile hybrids with the wild taxa of the \textit{C. argyrosperma} group (Merrick, 1990), which has an identified centre of origin from the southwestern United States to the centre-south of Mexico. Morphological and ecological studies as well as comparative mitochondrial, ribosomal and chloroplastic analyses (Wilson, Doebly and Duvall, 1992; Jobst, King and Hemleben, 1998; Sanjur et al., 2002) suggest that the ancestor of \textit{C. moschata} might have derived from a wild taxon of \textit{C. argyrosperma} ssp. \textit{sororia}. However, \textit{C. moschata} and \textit{C. argyrosperma} have different isoenzymatic patterns (Sanjur et al., 2002). Although studies by Merrick (1990, 1991) and Sanjur et al. (2002) support a high level of relatedness between \textit{C. moschata} and members of the \textit{Argyrosperma} group, these authors do not support the possibility of the ancestor being the subspecies \textit{sororia}. \textit{C. lundelliana} has also been proposed as the \textit{C. moschata} ancestor, and that wild taxon is indigenous to the Yucatan Peninsula in Central America (Whitaker, 1974). However, there are several morphological differences between \textit{C. lundelliana} and \textit{C. moschata} (i.e. the greenish-grayish-blue seed colour in \textit{C. lundelliana} has not been seen in \textit{C. moschata}). Results from molecular biology studies (Puchalski and Robinson, 1990; Wilson, Doebly and Duvall, 1992) have also lent evidence to exclude \textit{Cucurbita lundelliana} as a possible ancestor. Some characteristics associated with \textit{C. moschata} have been identified in landraces from Bolivia, Columbia and Panama (e.g. dark-coloured seeds, small fruits, a lignified and warty rind; Wessel-Beaver, 2000b), suggesting hybridisation between \textit{C. moschata} and wild local species in Columbia (Nee, 1990). Based on these sets of information, some authors have suggested the existence of two independent
domestications, one in Mexico and the other in northern South America. This hypothesis is supported by linguistic evidence – i.e. *C. moschata* is known by native names specific to the language used in each region (Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995; Robinson and Decker-Walters, 1997; Decker-Walters and Walters, 2000).

After its domestication, it is likely that *C. moschata* spread through the Caribbean Islands, giving rise to various native cultivars (Robinson and Decker-Walters, 1997; Piperno, Andres and Stothert, 2000). After the European contact, *C. moschata* was spread rapidly to other continents, adapting to different ecological conditions. *C. moschata* was being cultivated at the end of the 17th century in western Mississippi (United States), and in the 19th century in Angola, India, Java, Northern Africa and Japan, where the species diversified (Sauer, 1993; Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995; Decker-Walters and Walters, 2000). Wu et al. (2011) report the existence of 1,032 landrace accessions of *C. moschata* in the People’s Republic of China, hereafter “China”), reflecting a large diversity in landraces developed in China. *C. moschata* accessions are among the best represented *Cucurbita* accessions at the genebank of the Center for the Conservation and Breeding of Agricultural Diversity (COMAV) at the Polytechnic University at Valencia, Spain with a strong representation of landraces still cultivated under traditional cropping systems (Esteras et al., 2008). In Spain the cultivation of this species is mainly based on landraces maintained for centuries. Ferriol et al. (2004) examined 47 COMAV accessions from the Spanish peninsula, the Canary Islands, and Central and South America. The morphological characterisation showed considerable variability. Molecular analysis using amplified fragment length polymorphism and sequence related amplified polymorphism markers showed a genetic variability concordant with the morphological variability (Ferriol et al., 2004). In addition, *C. moschata* is the best represented *Cucurbita* in gene banks of the Americas (e.g. Center for International Food and Agricultural Policy [CIFAP] in Mexico). *C. moschata* is also one of the most important vegetables cultivated in Malawi, Zambia and tropical Africa, where its cultivation is mainly based on landraces with a high degree of autogamy (Gwanama, Labuschagne and Botha, 2000). These landraces have adapted to a variety of climatic conditions and soil types (Gwanama, Labuschagne and Botha, 2000). In general, *C. moschata* is the most widely cultivated *Cucurbita* in the tropics, where it is primarily grown on a small-scale basis for local consumption (Andres, 2004). These findings indicate that for *C. moschata*, in addition to the diversity seen in the Americas, multiple centres of diversity, primarily composed of landraces, exist around the world.

**Cucurbita pepo**

The natural distribution of *C. pepo* ranges from the eastern United States north into the state of Illinois through the Mississippi Valley, through the state of Texas and south into Mexico (Table 2.1). The archeological record, summarised in Table 2.2, shows that *C. pepo* initially became a fundamental element of agriculture in the Americas in the highlands of Mexico thousands of years ago (Smith, 1986). The most ancient remains of this species have been found in the Valley of Oaxaca (8750 BCE-700 CE) in the Ocampo caves, in the state of Tamaulipas in northeast Mexico (Table 2.2). The appearance of *C. pepo* in the United States as a domesticated crop also dates back thousands of years (King, 1985) as supported by the archaeological record which indicates *C. pepo* was being used by native populations thousands of years ago (7000-5000 BCE; Table 2.2) in what is now west central Illinois (United States). According to archaeological records, *C. pepo* appears to be one of the first domesticated species of *Cucurbita*, with a domestication even older than that attributed to other important domesticated crops:
C. pepo domestication appears to have predated that of other American crops such as maize (Zea mays) and common beans (Phaseolus vulgaris) by some 2,000 to 5,000 years (Smith, 2006). The archaeological record shows that C. pepo was cultivated in different ecological niches in the Americas from the high plains to fluvial systems.

The archaeological record suggests that C. pepo was domesticated on at least two occasions and in two different regions of North America: in Mexico and in the United States (Decker, 1988, 1986; Andres, 1987a). The hypothesis of two domestication events is supported by the grouping of allozymic patterns of the cultivated forms (Decker, 1985). The hypothesis is also supported by additional allozymic assays, comparisons of chloroplastic and mitochondrial DNA, as well as random amplified polymorphic DNA markers (Kirkpatrick and Wilson, 1988; Wilson, Doebley and Duvall, 1992; Decker-Walters et al., 1993, 2002; Sanjur et al., 2002). As evidence has accumulated, it has become clear that C. pepo is comprised of two molecularly divergent groups that had already differentiated through geographical isolation long before humans domesticated them (Decker-Walters et al., 1993, 2002; Smith, 2006). These two divergent groups are classified as two subspecies: C. pepo ssp. pepo and C. pepo ssp. ovifera. C. pepo ssp. pepo includes pumpkin, zucchini and other marrow squashes, Mexican landraces and a few ornamental gourds. C. pepo ssp. ovifera comprises both domesticated and free-living populations, and is further divided into three taxonomic varieties: C. pepo ssp. ovifera var. ovifera which includes some cultivated cultivars (e.g. acorn, crookneck and scallop squash) and most ornamental gourds, Mexican landraces and a few ornamental gourds. C. pepo ssp. ovifera appears to have been domesticated in what is now the United States, while C. pepo ssp. pepo appears to have been domesticated in Mexico (Sanjur et al., 2002).

With regard to the likely ancestor(s) of the cultivated C. pepo, the three most closely related wild relatives are: C. pepo ssp. fraterna which is found in Mexico, and C. pepo ssp. ovifera var. texana and var. ozarkana which are found in the United States. C. pepo ssp. fraterna is known only from a few localities in the states of Tamaulipas and Nuevo León in the northeastern region of Mexico (Bailey, 1943; Andres 1987a; Nee, 1990; Rodriguez and Lira, 1992; Wilson, Lira and Rodriguez, 1994). C. pepo var. texana and var. ozarkana have distribution patterns associated with drainage patterns of the river systems that lead from the central United States to the Gulf of Mexico (Smith, 1992; Asch and Sidell, 1992; Wilson, 1998; US Department of Agriculture, 2011a).

With regard to the probable ancestor of C. pepo ssp. ovifera, Sanjur et al. (2002), on the basis of sequence analysis of and intron of the mitochondrial gene nad1, suggest that C. pepo ssp. fraterna is the most probable ancestor of C. pepo ssp. ovifera. In the Sanjur et al. studies (2002), C. pepo ssp. fraterna, C. pepo ssp. ovifera, C. pepo ssp. ovifera var. texana and var. ozarkana form a group and share the same haplotype. Smith (2006), however, posits that although the analysis of the nad1 mitochondrial gene in the studies by Sanjur et al. (2002) could not distinguish between these taxa, random amplified polymorphic DNA data (Decker-Walters et al., 2002; 1993) was able to separate ssp. fraterna from ssp ovifera var. texana and var. ozarkana and effectively excluded ssp. fraterna from the cluster that includes all cultivated and wild varieties of ssp. ovifera. Further support for excluding ssp. fraterna from potential contention as an ancestor of ssp. ovifera is provided by a recent genetic study employing amplified fragment length polymorphism, inter simple sequence repeat and simple sequence repeat markers, in which ssp. fraterna was placed at a greater genetic distance from the domesticates of ssp. ovifera than the eastern North American wild gourds (Paris et al.,...
II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CUCURBITA SPECIES) – 95

2003). Smith (2006) and others (Emshwiller, 2006; Rieseberg and Harter, 2006) therefore argue that C. pepo ssp. ovifera var. ozarkana is the most likely ancestor of cultivated C. pepo ssp. ovifera.

With regard to the possible wild ancestor of C. pepo ssp. pepo, some authors consider it unknown or extinct (Wilson, Doebley and Duvall, 1992; Decker-Walters et al., 2002). That C. pepo ssp. fraterna is found on the muddy or volcanic plains of northeastern Mexico supports the suggestion that it might be the ancestor. Sanjur et al. (2002) suggest that C. pepo ssp. fraterna could have existed in the past in small and half-isolated populations which were genetically divergent, and some C. pepo ssp. fraterna population still not collected could be the possible ancestor of C. pepo ssp. pepo. Morphometric and molecular research, as well as studies on artificial and spontaneous hybridisation support C. pepo ssp. fraterna as a closely related wild relative. Nonetheless, at this time, no C. pepo ssp. pepo ancestor has been identified.

Today, populations composed of C. pepo wild relatives, C. pepo ssp. fraterna, C. pepo var. texana and C. pepo var. ozarkana, range from northeastern Mexico through the state of Texas, east to the state of Alabama and north through the Mississippi Valley to the state of Illinois in the United States. They occupy a diversity of environments and ecological niches – from upland seasonally dry thornscrub habitat in northeastern Mexico to primarily riverbanks and moist thickets in Texas, to a variety of riparian and other disturbed lowland habitats (e.g. agricultural fields, railroad tracks and highway embankments) throughout the Mississippi Valley. Different morphological and physiological adaptations have evolved in these areas, including early fruit abscission from the peduncle in response to riverine dispersal in the state of Texas, as well as relatively quick seed germination in response to a shorter growing season in the more northerly populations (Decker-Walters et al., 1993). In North America, C. pepo is a morphologically and ecologically diverse species composed of genetically distinct groups of cultivars and free-living populations (i.e. self-sustaining wild populations), all of which are interfertile.

Following its domestication, C. pepo experienced great diversification in the Americas and subsequent to the European contact, in Europe and Asia (Decker, 1988). That several cultivars were known in the Americas prior to the European contact is demonstrated by the great variability found in the first European herbaria (Whitaker, 1947; Paris, 2001, 1989). The various forms of C. pepo which were geographically isolated in the Americas were brought together and cultivated together in European gardens where hybridisation unavoidably occurred to produce new recombinants (Paris, 1989). C. pepo accessions are, for example, among the best represented Cucurbita accessions at the genebank of the COMAV at the Polytechnic University at Valencia Spain. Landraces still cultivated in Europe under traditional cropping systems (Esteras et al., 2008) are well represented (see also Aliu et al. [2011] for a description of C. pepo landrace diversity in the Balkans). The Newe Ya’ar Research Center in Israel maintains a C. pepo collection with 320 accessions collected almost entirely from North America, Europe and Asia (Paris, 2011). C. pepo is planted in all countries of Africa on a limited scale, even though it is less tolerant of tropical conditions than C. moschata (Grubben, 2004). Landraces or traditional varieties are maintained in traditional cropping systems in Mexico and the northern region of Central America, and the variation of this species in rural communities, at least in Mexico and Central America (mainly Guatemala), is also large. It includes variants which are cultivated at altitudes above 2000 m (during the rainy season or even the dry season on land that remains wet), and still others that can grow near the sea and in even more extreme conditions (i.e. those
found on the Yucatan Peninsula). On the other hand, it is common for small farmers in Latin American to manage, in common plots, a fair representation of races or local varieties with morphological features similar to those that have been considered specific to some groups of commercial cultivars. *C. pepo* accessions are well represented in genebanks of the Americas (e.g. CIFAP). As with *C. maxima* and *C. moschata*, in addition to the diversity seen in the Americas, multiple centres of diversity exist for *C. pepo*, primarily as landraces, around the world.

**Morphological characters**

*Cucurbita* is a genus of dicotyledonous flowering plants in the family *Cucurbitaceae*. The wild and cultivated species of *Cucurbita* are trailing or climbing vines, or subshrubs (bushes) in some cultivated varieties. The cultivated and wild mesophytic species are annuals or such long-lived annuals to be seen as short-lived perennials. The xerophytic species are perennials, persisting for years due to their long tap roots. Mature stems are approximately 1 cm thick, but considerably thicker at the base of the plant. Cultivated forms have internodes that are usually 15-25 cm long, with petioles having a similar range of length and leaf laminae that are generally pentagonal in outline, ranging to 30 cm diameter or more. Wild forms have more diminutive vegetative parts. Emerging from the leaf axil are solitary branched tendrils 20 cm long and solitary flowers. Wild and cultivated species of *Cucurbita* are mostly monoecious, i.e. both male and female flowers are produced by a single plant, the exception being *C. foetidissima*, where some varieties are gynomonoecious. The large flowers are gamopetalous with tubular-campanulated corollas, very showy, light yellow or bright yellow-orange in colour. Rooting commonly occurs at the stem nodes. Some varieties produce tendrils that help secure vines, limit wind damage and improve vine growth across weedy and uneven ground.

For purposes of identification, the five domesticated species are differentiated by the following morphological characteristics: habit of growing, stems, leaves (in distal nodes), indument (petioles and primary veins in the lower surface of blades), receptacle (in staminate flowers), corolla, filaments, peduncle of fruit, size and shape of fruit, surface of fruit, colour of fruit, pulp of fruit, seeds (shape and size), and colour of seeds. Table 2.3 shows only the most outstanding features of the cultivated species. A complete treatment (descriptions, synonyms, illustrations, distribution maps, etc.) of *Cucurbita* is available in Lira, Andres and Nee (1995). Note, however, that cultivated species of *Cucurbita* are very diverse locally, regionally and worldwide (e.g. Jeffrey, 1990; Nee, 1990; Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995; Sanjur et al., 2002), having a wealth of innumerable strains, landraces and varieties that defy facile description (Esquinas-Alcazar and Gulick, 1983; Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995). As more plants are considered, the array of variations and combinations of notable traits increases and the differentiations become less distinct and meaningful.

This section and Annex 2.A2 offer examples of cultivars available in the retail seed market (“commercial” cultivars) for four of the five cultivated *Cucurbita* species; commercially available cultivars for *C. ficifolia* are scarcely found, but some are available online, e.g. from heirloom seed vendors.
Table 2.3. **Principal morphological characters that generally differentiate the domesticated species of Cucurbita**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><em>C. argyrosperma</em></th>
<th><em>C. ficifolia</em></th>
<th><em>C. maxima</em></th>
<th><em>C. moschata</em></th>
<th><em>C. pepo</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stems</strong></td>
<td>Rigid, angulated and sulcated</td>
<td>Rigid, angulated and only slightly sulcated</td>
<td>Soft, rounded or slightly angulated in lateral view, not sulcated</td>
<td>Rigid, angulated and only slightly sulcated</td>
<td>Rigid, angulated and sulcated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Leaves (in distal nodes)</strong></td>
<td>Generally deeply lobed, but not palmatifid with the terminal lobe pinnatifid</td>
<td>Moderately lobed, rounded</td>
<td>Not lobed or only occasionally very slightly so</td>
<td>Never or very rarely with lobed acute or rounded lobes</td>
<td>Generally deeply lobed almost palmatifid with the terminal lobe pinnatifid, rounded or acute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indument (petioles and primary veins in the lower surface of blades)</strong></td>
<td>Soft and shortly pubescent to pilose</td>
<td>With short glandular hairs that stain dark brown or black</td>
<td>Hirsute to hispid, aculeate, but not conspicuously spinulose</td>
<td>Soft, short to long pubescent or villous</td>
<td>Sometimes spinulose with persistent, conic bases of the hairs, strongly aculeate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Peduncle of fruit</strong></td>
<td>Rigid, angulated to non-angulated except where it joins the fruit, smooth or costate, frequently very thickened, becoming cylindrical, claviform or subglobose</td>
<td>Rigid, angulate with obtuse ribs, without obtuse lobes and moderately widened where it joins the fruit, the ribs not having to extend or spread towards the apex of the fruit</td>
<td>Rigid or soft, cylindrical, not angulate, with irregular suberous strias, commonly not widening where it joins the fruit</td>
<td>Rigid, angulate with obtuse ribs, with obtuse lobes and notably widened where it joins the fruit, the ribs not tending to extend or spread towards the apex of the fruit</td>
<td>Rigid, angulate, with acute ribs, widened where it joins the fruit, the ribs sometimes more or less tending to extend or spread towards the apex of the fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colour of the seeds</strong></td>
<td>Usually white, sometimes dull white, tan; margins the same colour as the centre of the seed or a little darker, sometimes yellowish to golden, not fibrillos to very slightly so, or greenish, greyish, blue</td>
<td>Black or brownish-black, less commonly dull white or tan when mature; margins the same colour as the centre of the seed, sometimes lighter particularly near the apex</td>
<td>White to tan; margins usually of different colour than the centre of the seed (never greenish, greyish, blue), except in the white ones</td>
<td>White, dull white to tan or dark brown; margins usually of different colour than the centre of the seed, but never greenish-greyish-blue, usually yellow to golden and fibrillos or fimbriate</td>
<td>Dull white to tan; margins the same color as the centre of the seed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Source:** Adapted from Lira, Andres and Nee (1995).

**Cucurbita argyrosperma**

There is less variation within *C. argyrosperma* as compared to other cultivated species of the genus such as *C. pepo*, *C. maxima* or *C. moschata*, as *C. argyrosperma* is limited for the most part to races or local varieties that are cultivated in the southwestern United States, Mexico and Central America, plus several commercial cultivars which have been developed mainly in the United States, such as “green striped cushaw”, “white cushaw”, “magdalena striped”, “papago”, “Japanese pie”, “hopi”, “taos”, “parral cushaw”, “Veracruz pepita” and “silver seed gourd”. The most important variations observed between these cultivated varieties correspond to the dimensions, shape and colour patterns of fruits and seeds.

**Cucurbita ficifolia**

*Cucurbita ficifolia* is by far the least variable species of the cultivated *Cucurbita*. Morphologically, the most important variation is in colour patterns (white to green fruits with colour patterns: spots or white stripes, and tan to dark brown or black seeds), and dimensions of fruits and seeds. Its relatively low morphological variation coincides with that observed regarding isoenzymatic patterns (Andres, 1990). However, including
South American populations in the survey may uncover wider genetic diversity (e.g. collections with differential resistance to viral diseases have been identified). Field observations have shown that some average-sized fruits contain more than 500 seeds, and that each plant can produce numerous fruits (Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995).

**Cucurbita maxima**

*Cucurbita maxima* is one of the most diversified cultivated species of the genus. Its variation includes numerous races and local varieties, and many commercial cultivars, some edible and some ornamental, with trailing and subshrub habits, and with fruits and seeds that are sometimes unique in dimension, shape and colour. Some varieties have also proven to have various degrees of resistance to several viral diseases (Tapley, Enzie and Van Eseltine, 1937; Millán, 1947; Martínez-Crovetto, 1974, 1965; Rochelle, 1974; Maluf and Souza, 1984). A total of 52 cultivars of this species were described by Tapley, Enzie and Van Eseltine in 1937. These cultivars differ not only in morphological characteristics, but in aspects of agronomic interest, such as duration of the life cycle, productivity and, in some cases, in their ability to adapt to limiting ecological conditions.

Castetter (1925) and others (Whitaker and Davis, 1962; Robinson and Decker-Walters, 1997; Decker-Walters and Walters, 2000) have addressed the diversity displayed by *C. maxima* forms, and several types have been identified. The “Banana” type includes long fruits which are pointed at both ends, with a soft rind and brown seeds. The fruits of the “Delicious” type are turbinate-shaped and have shallow ribs, a hard rind and white seeds and a high-quality flesh. The “Hubbard” type includes oval fruits, with pointed or curved ends, a very hard rind and white seeds. Fruits of the “Show” type are wide and orange coloured with a smooth rind and white seeds. A wide variability in this type is seen in India. The “Turban” type contains turban shaped fruits. Most *C. maxima* fruits are eaten at maturity as the fruit is of high quality. However, fruits of the “Marrow” type are picked a few days post-anthesis for consumption, have a soft skin, are oval or pear shaped, bulbous and have white seeds (see Annex 2.A2 for additional information on horticultural types).

Of particular interest among *C. maxima* are varieties of the Mammoth group in the “Show” type (“Mammoth Chilli” or “Mammoth Whale”) whose fruits reach gigantic dimensions. Some *C. maxima* fruits exceeding 450 kg in weight have been documented. Also impressive are the turbinate fruits like “French Turban” and “Turks Cap”.

**Cucurbita moschata**

*Cucurbita moschata* also displays striking morphological variation: the variation of its fruits (colours, shapes and widths, and the durability of the fruits, shell, etc.) and seeds, the number of variants with life cycles of different length, the existence of numerous cultivars developed in various parts of the world, and the existence of races and local varieties with outstanding agronomic characteristics, suggest the extensive genetic variation of this species. Some examples of interesting regional variants are found in the Yucatan Peninsula (and possibly in other regions of Latin America), with two life cycles of different length (Lira, 1988; 1985), as well as the variants grown in some Mexican states (e.g. Chiapas, Guanajuato), which have been found to be resistant to certain viral diseases, and which have been used in improvement programmes (Garzón-Tiznado, Montes-Hernández and Becerra, 1993; Gallegos, 1990). The most variation of fruit and seeds of *C. moschata* occur in Columbia (Wessel-Beaver, 2000b). During the 500 years of cultivation in China, *C. moschata* has adapted to different agro-ecological conditions,
II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CURCUBITA SPECIES) – 99

and now displays high variability for many agronomic characteristics, such as fruit shapes and colours, flowering habits, leaf characters, etc. (Du et al., 2011).

_C. moschata_ fruits are generally harvested at maturity as the fruits possess a high-quality flesh. _C. moschata_ is one of the most popular species for the large number and size of seeds. A few types have been identified. The “Cheese” type includes fruits that are variable in shape, mostly oblong, and have a leather-coloured rind. Fruits of the “Crookneck” type have a rounded distal end and a long curved or straight neck. The “Bell” type presents fruits with a shape that ranges from flared to almost cylindrical. Because _C. moschata_ grows well in tropical areas, it is known as “Tropical pumpkin” (see Annex 2.A2 for information on horticultural types).

**Cucurbita pepo**

_C. pepo_ also displays a very high level of striking morphological variation. _C. pepo_ is perhaps the most variable species for fruit characteristics in the plant kingdom. Its fruit range in size to over 20 kg; in shape from round to flat-scalloped to long bulbous cylindrical over 75 cm long; exterior colour is based on hues of green, orange and yellow, with colour intensity ranging from very pale to intense, and a grey contribution ranging from none to very dark. Variegation, including striping and bicolour, can result in as many as four colours on the surface of the same fruit. Fruit mesocarp can be relatively thin or thick, and its colour varies in the range from greenish-white to white, yellow, light orange and intense orange. Fruit rinds can be lignified or non-lignified, and smooth, warty, wrinkled or netted. _C. pepo_ not only includes commercial cultivars and edible races with diverse morphological and phenological characteristics, but also several cultivars that are used as ornamentals, e.g. “Orange Ball”, “Miniature Ball” and “Striped Pear”. Tapley, Enzie and Van Eseltine (1937) recognise 60 edible cultivars, including some with subshrub habits such as “Black Zucchini”, “Fordhook Bush” and “Boston Greek”, as well as others of trailing to climbing habits and edible fruits, e.g. “Connecticut Field” and “Table Queen”. Several authors have proposed organisational groupings to reflect the possible origin and evolution of the high level of morphological variation seen in _C. pepo_ (Castetter, 1925; Bailey, 1929; Paris, 1989). Paris (1986, 1989, 2001) grouped the cultivated types into eight morphotypes.

“Pumpkin” (_C. pepo_ L. var. _pepo_ L. Bailey) includes cultivars of creeping plants which produce spherical, ovoid or oblate fruit that is rounded or flat at the ends. The fruit of this group is grown to be eaten when ripe and is sometimes used as fodder. “Scallop” (_C. pepo_ L. var. _clypeata_ Alefield) has a semi-shrubby habit, the fruit ranges from flat to almost discoidal, with undulations or equatorial margins, and it is eaten before maturity. “Acorn” (_C. pepo_ L. var. _turbinata_ Paris) is both a shrubby and a creeping plant with fruit that is obovoid or conical, pointed at that apex and longitudinally costate-grooved. The rind is soft, hence the fruit can be eaten in the ripe state. “Crookneck” (_C. pepo_ L. var. _torticollia_ Alefield) is a shrubby type with yellow, golden or white fruit which is claviform and curved at the distal or apical end and generally has a verrucose rind. It is eaten unripe as the rind and fruit harden when ripe. “Straightneck” (_C. pepo_ L. var. _recticollis_ Paris) is a shrubby plant with yellow or golden fruit and a verrucose rind similar to var. _torticollia_. “Vegetable marrow” (_C. pepo_ L. var. _fastigata_ Paris) has creeper characteristics as semi-shrub and has short cylindrical fruit that is slightly broader at the apex, with a smooth rind which hardens and thickens on ripening and which varies in colour from cream to dark green. “Cocozelle” (_C. pepo_ L. var. _longa_ Paris) has cylindrical, long fruit that is slender and slightly bulbous at the apex, it is eaten in the unripe immature state. “Zucchini” (_C. pepo_ L. var. _cylindrica_ Paris) is the most
commonly cultivated group of cultivars at present. Like the previous group, the zucchini group has a strong affinity with the vegetable marrow and its origin is also recent (19th century). Its plants are generally semi-shrubby and its cylindrical fruit does not broaden or broadens only slightly. It is eaten as a vegetable in the unripe state (see Annex 2.A2 for information on horticultural types.) Taxonomically, the morphotypes “pumpkin”, “vegetable marrow”, “cocozele” and “zucchini” are subspecies *pepo*. Some authors have categorised the morphotypes “Scallop”, “Acorn”, “Crookneck” and “Straightneck” as subspecies *ovifera* (also known as *C. pepo* ssp. *texana*, see e.g. Paris et al., 2003); however, this chapter, which is based on the nomenclature used by Lira, Andres and Nee (1995) and Lira Saade, Eguiarte Fruns and Montes Hernández (2009) and Gong et al. (2012), would group these morphotypes in *C. pepo* ssp. *pepo*. (Both groups are shown as *C. pepo* L. in Table 2.1).

Because of their small, hard shells, ornamental gourds are typically thought of as a distinct grouping within *C. pepo*. Isozymic evidence, however, shows this not to be true, with cultivars having originated in both subspecies *pepo* and *ovifera* and possibly in subspecies *fraterna* (Decker-Walters et al., 1993). What many of these cultivars do share in common are characteristics often ascribed to free-living populations, e.g. tough pericarps and bitter flesh, which ward off predation in the wild.

Reproductive biology

*Cucurbita* is a genus of dicotyledonous flowering plants in the family *Cucurbitaceae*. The cultivated *Cucurbita* are annual plants, long running and climbing, or short and bushy. The flowers are monoecious and numerous and very showy. Flowers open very early in the morning, and the predominant pollinators of these flowers are bees. In the Americas, the most efficient pollinators are the solitary bees of the genera *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* (Hurd and Linsley, 1970, 1976, 1964; Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker, 1971), but the flowers can also be pollinated by other bees such as the honey bee, *Apis mellifera*. Fruits are of the pepo type: a berry with numerous seeds surrounded by a fleshy wall that does not open at maturity. Production of flowers, fruits and seeds varies between species (Quesada et al., 1991).

Reproductive organs

Flower

Unisexual flowers are characteristic of the *Cucurbitaceae*. The *Cucurbita* species are primarily monoecious with both male and female flowers on the same plant (Whitaker and Robinson, 1986; Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995; Rzedowski and Rzedowski, 2001), although some varieties of *C. foetidissima* are gynomonoecious (Whitaker and Robinson, 1986).

*Cucurbita* flowers are large, gamopetalous with tubular-campanulated corollas, and showy, with a cream coloured or light yellow or bright-yellow orange corolla. Flowers grow from the axil of a leaf. Male flowers have column-like stamens, with free or more or less connivent filaments, and the anthers are joined together forming a cylindrical or narrowly pyramidal structure. Female flowers have an inferior ovary with numerous horizontally positioned ovules, the styles are fused in almost their entire length or are only shortly free in the apex; stigmas are large, fleshy or more or less sunken or lobulated, and slight modifications can be seen in the structure of the perianth regarding the staminate ones, mainly corresponding to differences in size of one or some of its parts.
II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CURCUBITA SPECIES) – 101

SAFETY ASSESSMENT OF TRANSGENIC ORGANISMS: OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS, VOLUME 5 © OECD 2016

(e.g. the receptacle is always much more reduced). After pollination, fruit develops from the pre-formed ovary at the base of the female flower. The shape of the ovary prior to pollination is indicative of the mature fruit shape.

Cross-pollination is favoured by the monoecious nature of the plants, and in some cases the male flowers are slightly larger than the female ones on the same plant. *Cucurbita* can exhibit wide variation in the proportion of male to female flowers on a plant (Janick and Paull, 2007). Zomlefer (1994) reported that production of female flowers is frequently less than that of male flowers. In *C. pepo*, Nepi and Pacini (1993) found a 16.5:1 relation between the number of male and female flowers. Temperature and light influence the production of male and female flowers in several of the species (Whitaker and Davis, 1962). More male flowers are produced on long and very hot days, whereas short and cold days induce the development of more female flowers (Robinson and Decker-Walters, 1997). The first flowers on the vine are male, after which three or four female flowers appear. Although female flowers differentiate later in plant development, females develop faster than the males, resulting in near synchronization at anthesis of the flowers of both sexes (Janick and Paull, 2007). Flowers open early in the morning and close around noon of the same day, never to reopen (Nepi and Pacini, 1993). Flowering time both in male and female flowers of *C. pepo* varies depending on the time of year in which the plants develop: male flowers begin to open 15 minutes before the female flowers when the days are longer. On days further along in the year this difference is not significant (Nepi and Pacini, 1993). Scheerens et al. (1987) found similarities on the daily opening time of flowers of *C. foetidissima* of both sexes. Whitaker and Robinson (1986) observed that in some genotypes, a short photoperiod is needed for flowering to begin, and flowers develop only when the days are short.

Flower development in Cucurbitaceae, apart from being regulated by genetic and environmental mechanisms such as temperature and the duration of days, can be modulated by chemical regulators – substances such as gibberellins and ethylene (Rudich, 1990). For example, ethylene is involved in the regulation of fruit ripening and sex expression and in the plant’s response to herbivore damage.

**Pollen**

*Cucurbita* pollen grains are large and sticky, and well suited to transport by insects. Wind does not pollinate *Cucurbita* species. Ovules are fertile only during the period of flowering, or the day prior. Good fruit and set development requires 500-1 000 live pollen grains on the stigma of the female flower (Stephenson, Devlin and Horton, 1988; Vidal et al., 2010). Pollen viability in a newly opened male flower is about 92%, but by the time it closes that same morning the viability will have dropped to 75%, and by the next day will be only 10% (Nepi and Pacini, 1993). Environmental conditions at the time of anthesis are important. High or low temperature can result in a more rapid decrease in pollen viability. In addition, in windy, dry conditions, pollen can lose viability rapidly.

**Fruit**

Fruits of *Cucurbita* are of the pepo type: a berry with numerous seeds surrounded by a fleshy wall that does not open at maturity. Fruits have a thin and soft, or rigid and woody, shell that emerges from the outer layer of the ovary (exocarp), whereas the pulp around the seed is derived from the ovarian internal layers (mesocarp and endocarp). In cultivated plants, the fruits are produced in a great variety of shapes, sizes, colours and types of surface, whereas in wild plants they are all relatively small and relatively
uniform regarding shape (globous, ovoid or rarely pyriform), surface (generally smooth or without ornaments) and colour (white, yellowish or green with or without spots and/or fringes; Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995). Some of them are among the largest in the plant kingdom.

Production of fruits varies between species. While producing 20-30 male flowers and 8-12 female flowers, cultivated plants of *C. pepo* generally produce 2-6 fruits (Quesada et al., 1991). Lira, Andres and Nee (1995) report that each plant of some domesticated varieties of *C. ficifolia* can produce numerous fruits. The wild species *C. pepo* var. *texana* commonly produces approximately 50 mature fruits by the end of the growing season (Avila-Sakar, Krupnick and Stephenson, 2001).

Flower, fruit and seed production, as well as the offspring’s performance can be affected by environmental and genetic factors, and by paternal and maternal conditions. Work on the paternal effects on the offspring of cultivated plants of *Cucurbita pepo* has demonstrated that ovule fertilisation and seed production is non-random and depends on the origin of the paternal genotype (Quesada et al., 1991). Similarly, the strongest offspring are obtained from the stylar region of the fruit, where the ovules are fertilised by the most vigorous pollen grains. From research on the effects of pollen competition on the performance of the offspring using hybrids of cultivated *C. pepo* and *C. pepo* var. *texana*, Quesada, Winsor and Stephenson (1996, 1993), concluded that the offspring resulting from large amounts of pollen reaching styles are more vigorous than those produced when smaller amounts reach the styles. Apparently, competition between pollen grains leads to more successful seeds, progeny and their future flower production. The percentage of success in pollination (experimentally) is highest directly after the flowers have opened, and diminishes gradually as midday approaches (Whitaker and Robinson, 1986).

Increase in the size of the ovaries is noticeable within 24 hours of anthesis. Not all pistillate flowers develop into fruit, however, most often because many more flowers are produced than the plant can support nutritionally. Competition is strongest during the first week after anthesis. *Cucurbita* that are grown for consumption of the young fruit are harvested several days past anthesis. The time from anthesis to a fully mature fruit varies considerably among various *Cucurbita* species. Table 2.4 lists the phenology and life cycle in Mexico of 20 *Cucurbita* taxa.

Plants continue to flower and produce fruits consistently until killed by frost. In some papers, *Cucurbita ficifolia* is considered a perennial species (Dane, 1983), but Lira, Andres and Nee (1995) indicate that *C. ficifolia* is an annual species, which, depending on certain environmental conditions (i.e. not too severe frost) can live longer, giving the impression that it is a short-lived perennial. A similar phenomenon has been seen in *C. lundelliana* and *C. moschata*, which can keep on producing flowers and fruits for an extended period of time given appropriate conditions. On the other hand, because of frost, in some areas the perennial species behave as facultative annuals, dying in their first year (Whitaker and Robinson, 1986).

*Fruit dispersal*

The routes by which seeds are dispersed is determined largely by the size, shape and character of the seed coat or the persisting structures of the fruit. In the case of the *Cucurbita*, the persisting structure of the mature fruit, i.e. the gourd, can be buoyant in water. Hence, water represents a potential means of *Cucurbita* seed dispersal. In addition, the pepo type fruits may represent an adaptation for dispersal by animals, and animals
also represent a means by which *Cucurbita* seeds are dispersed. Generally, this occurs through ingestion of fruits with seeds; with the seeds then being excreted at a distance from the initial point of ingestion. In many areas of the world, *Cucurbita* fruits are used as fodder. For example, in tropical regions, domestic animals such as donkeys and horses will consume *Cucurbita* L. fruits and vines when fodder is scarce at the end of the rainy season (Mariano and Dirzo, 2002).

**Seed and germination**

The seeds are surrounded by several layers of tissue. The most external layer derives from the internal epidermis of the carpel (endocarp) and generally swells with water; the internal layer derives from the testa (seed coat) and develops from the ovule’s integument and nucellus (Zomlefer, 1994).

**Table 2.4. Phenology and life cycles of 20 *Cucurbita* taxa**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Taxa</th>
<th>Phenological notes in Mexico</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Annuals</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma argyrosperma</em></td>
<td>Flowers from June to January and begins to fructify in August, but it is more common to find mature fruits from November or December</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma</em> ssp. <em>sororia</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. ficifolia</em></td>
<td>Produces fruits in September and from February to April</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. maxima</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. maxima</em> ssp. <em>andreana</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. moschata</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. pepo</em> ssp. <em>pepo</em></td>
<td>Flowers and fruits between July and November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. pepo</em> ssp. <em>fraterna</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. pepo var. texana</em></td>
<td>It is possible to find male flowers and fruits between February and July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. ecuadorensis</em></td>
<td>It is possible to find populations with flowers of both sexes. Mature fruits are more surely found between November and February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. lundelliana</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. okeechobeensis</em> ssp. <em>okeechobeensis</em></td>
<td>Flowers and fruits between May-June and January, and the mature fruits from October onwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. okeechobeensis</em> ssp. <em>martinezii</em></td>
<td>Flowers and fruits between June and January or February, and mature fruits can be found from October onwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perennials</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. digitata</em></td>
<td>Populations with flowers and fruits occur all year round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. cordata</em></td>
<td>Populations with flowers and fruits occur all year round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. palmata</em></td>
<td>Populations with flowers and fruits occur all year round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. foelidissima</em></td>
<td>Populations with flowers and fruits occur all year round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. pedatifolia</em></td>
<td>Flowers and fruits between August and November and mature fruits from October onwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. radicans</em></td>
<td>Flowers and fruits between May-June and December, and the mature fruits from October onwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. scabridifolia</em></td>
<td>Flowers and fruits from June-July and until December, and the fruits from August or September</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Seeds are oval, oval-elliptical or oval-lanceolate, compressed or more or less tumescent or inflated, with a smooth or sometimes scarified or scarred centre which can be white, cream-colored, greenish-grayish-blue or black, with or without marked or differentiated margins, and these of the same or different colour and/or texture as the centre of the seed.

The number of seeds produced per fruit varies among the species. Lira, Andres and Nee (1995) report that some domesticated varieties of *C. ficifolia* have average-sized fruits with more than 500 seeds. *C. argyrosperma* produces more than 250 seeds per fruit (Merrick, 1990). The wild species *C. pepo* var. *texana* also can produce more than 250 seeds per fruit (Avila-Sakar, Krupnick and Stephenson, 2001).
Few studies deal with seed banks, germination and establishment of seedlings; nevertheless, in general terms, germination is high and rapid, and there is no seed bank or it is limited for most species. *Cucurbita* such as *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *sororia* can be opportunists, adapted to rapidly colonise available open spaces at the beginning of the rainy season. The colonisation strategy seems to be based more on the germination speed of the seeds produced during the last season than on the development of a seed bank in the soil. Under experimental conditions, 86-100% of the seeds of *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *sororia* germinate two to six days after they begin to hydrate. This germination is synchronic and begins with the first main rains that can keep the soil damp for more than one day (Mariano, 2001).

**Sexual reproduction**

**Pollination**

Among the *Cucurbita*, some agent – usually bees – is necessary to transfer pollen from the male to female flower; as the pollen is large (80 to 150 µm diameter) and sticky, the species of the genera are not wind pollinated. In the Americas, the solitary bees of the genera *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* (Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker, 1971; Canto-Aguilar and Parra-Tabla, 2000) have developed a close relationship with wild and cultivated *Cucurbita* plants – both adults and larvae feed almost exclusively on the nectar and pollen of the plants. Indeed, the bees are dependent on pollen and nectar produced by *Cucurbita* flowers for their survival (Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker, 1971), and appear to have co-evolved with the *Cucurbita* (Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker, 1971). These bees display some behaviours that appear to be adaptations to their interaction with the *Cucurbita*, e.g. an ability to fly at low temperatures, with low light intensity and certain modifications that allow for an adequate extraction and transportation of pollen. These bees often fly from flower to flower while still dark to see which flowers are open, apparently oriented by olfactory cues emitted by some of the species, and probably also with the help of visual and/or hearing sensors. Both the *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* are very efficient pollinators of the *Cucurbita* (Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker, 1971). The efficiency and specificity of these bees makes them responsible for moving larger amounts of pollen between wild and cultivated *Cucurbita* than any other group of pollinators.

Pollinators collect large amounts of nectar from the female flowers, and pollen and nectar from the male flowers. Nectar is secreted from a ring of tissue surrounding the style and just inside the perianth tube. When a bee forages in a masculine flower in search of nectar, the pollen adheres to the bee’s body and will then be transferred to the stigmas when it visits female flowers (Zomlefer, 1994). The most active period for the bees coincides with the beginning of the plant’s floral opening, just before daybreak, and this high level of activity is maintained for several hours (Mariano and Dirzo, 2002).

The hind legs of the bees of the genera *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* are adapted to the collection and manipulation of the pollen grains of this genus. However, the pollen grains vary in size and structure between the species and the pollen-collecting devices of the bees vary also (Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker, 1971). This variation between the bees has been shown to be species specific (Hurd and Lindsley, 1970), and apparently has profoundly influenced the ability of the different species of bees to collect and utilise pollens of the various *Cucurbita*, both wild and domestic (Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker, 1971; see Table 2.5).
In addition to *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* genera, other species of bees can pollinate plants of the genus *Cucurbita*. One of the most frequent pollinators in cultivation systems around the world is the domestic honeybee, *Apis mellifera* (Canto-Aguilar and Parra-Tabla, 2000; Mariano and Dirzo, 2002). While the bees of the genera *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* make more contact with the reproductive parts of the flower, work faster and work earlier in the morning, they are no more efficient than honey bees (*Apis mellifera*) at setting fruit (Tepedino, 1981). However, honey bees, in contrast to the solitary bees of the genera *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa*, are generalists and readily move to any competing bloom that offers richer rewards. Also, early bee activity can be important on hot days when the flowers close early, and bees of the genera *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* are adapted to working early in the morning. In general, where *Peponapis* and/or *Xenoglossa* populations are strong, the use of honey bee colonies is superfluous as most pollination is accomplished by *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* bees before the honey bees arrive (Tepedino, 1981).

In addition to the bees of the *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* genera, bees of the *Bombus* genus, e.g. *Bombus impatiens*, have been identified in the United States as pollinators of *Cucurbita pepo* (Julier and Roulston, 2009).

Table 2.5 indicates the known species of pollinators that have been identified in wild and cultivated *Cucurbita* populations in Mexico and the species they are known to pollinate. *Peponapis* species are found from Ontario, Canada through the United States through Mexico to northern Argentina in South America (Michener, 2007). *Xenoglossa* species are found through the United States through Mesoamerica. The ranges of *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* species are similar in tropical regions of the Americas. Some species of *Peponapis* are also capable of surviving in temperate regions (thus their distribution extends from Canada to Argentina). In contrast, species of *Xenoglossa* have a more restricted distribution toward lower latitudes, but are capable of establishing in more desertic environments. *Megalopta* species are found in Mexico through the mid section of South America (Discover Life, 2011). *Melitoma* species are found in the central and eastern United States through Mexico to northern Chile and Argentina (Discover Life, 2011). Although most common in the northern hemisphere, *Bombus* species can be found around the world (Discover Life, 2011).

Hurd (1966) identified several insects other than bees that might play a minor role in pollination of *Cucurbita*: cucumber, scarab and meloid beetles, as well as flies and moths.

**Asexual reproduction**

The *Cucurbita* species propagate in nature through sexual reproduction as there is essentially no asexual propagation by means of runners or stolons, or apomixes in nature.

**Genetics**

The basic chromosome number of the *Cucurbita* is $2n = 2x = 40$. Karyotypes suggest that these species are of allopolyploid origins. Results from electrophoretic analyses also helped confirm this genus’ polyploidy (Kirkpatrick, Decker and Wilson, 1985), or more specifically, allotetraploid origin (Weeden, 1984). Weeden (1984) and Singh (1990) suggested that the *Cucurbita* are ancestral tetraploid, derived from an ancestor with a haploid chromosome number of ten. Although these authors suggest an apparent homogeneity, Weiling (1959) suggested that the genome in *Cucurbita ficifolia* is AACC (each letter refers to a different ancestral plant genome), whereas in the four remaining
domesticated species it is AABB. A recent sequence analysis of an intron from the mitochondrial gene nad1 indicated that *C. ficifolia* was basal to all other taxa in this group (Sanjur et al., 2002). Wilson, Doebley and Duvall (1992) determined that the annual *Cucurbita* species evolved from the perennial species.

Table 2.5. Bee species pollinating *Cucurbita* species in Mexico

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pollinators</th>
<th>References</th>
<th>Cucurbita species</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apis mellifera Linnaeus</td>
<td>Mariano and Dirzo (2002); Canto-Aguilar and Parra-Tabla (2000)</td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma, C. pepo, C. moschata, C. ficifolia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis michelbacherorum Hurd &amp; Linsley</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma ssp. sororia, C. pepo, C. ficifolia, C. moschata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis utahensis Cockerell</td>
<td>Mariano and Dirzo (2002); Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma ssp. sororia, C. pepo, C. ficifolia, C. moschata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis melonis Friese</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis fervens Smith</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis citrullina Cockerell</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis limitaris Cockerell</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma, C. moschata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis smithi Hurd &amp; Linsley</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td><em>C. ficifolia, C. argyrosperma, C. moschata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis apiculata Cresson</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td><em>C. ficifolia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis atrata Smith</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971); Andres (1990)</td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma ssp. argyrosperma,</em> C. ficifolia, C. pepo, C. moschata, C. maxima*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis timberlakei Hurd &amp; Linsley</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis crassidentata Cockerell</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma, C. pepo, C. moschata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peponapis angelica Cockerell</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xenoglossa kansensis Cockerell</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xenoglossa strenua Cresson</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td><em>C. pepo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xenoglossa angustior Cockerell</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xenoglossa mustellina Fox</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xenoglossa patricia Cockerell</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma ssp. argyrosperma,</em> C. digitata, C. foetidissima, C. moschata, C. maxima*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xenoglossa fulva Smith</td>
<td>Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma ssp. argyrosperma,</em> C. digitata, C. foetidissima, C. moschata, C. maxima*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xenoglossa gabbii Cresson</td>
<td>Mariano and Dirzo (2002); Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker (1971)</td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma ssp. sororia, C. ficifolia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Megalopta sp.</td>
<td>Mariano and Dirzo (2002)</td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma ssp. sororia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melitoma marginella Cresson</td>
<td>Mariano and Dirzo (2002)</td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma ssp. sororia</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The morphology of the chromosomes is not well characterised as they are small and not easily differentiated (Weeden, 1984; Weeden and Robinson, 1990). Using flow cytometry, Arumuganathan and Earle (1991) determined that the haploid genome of zucchini (*C. pepo ssp. pepo*) is approximately 500 million base pairs long. A typical nucleus (2n) contains 1.04-1.08 picograms of DNA. Most morphological traits appear to be unlinked, and many markers are required to adequately map the genome. Havey et al. (1998) used restricted fragment length polymorphisms to study the transmission of the chloroplast and mitochondrial genomes in cucurbitae. They concluded that both organelle genomes were maternally transmitted in *Cucurbita*. 

SAFETY ASSESSMENT OF TRANSGENIC ORGANISMS: OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS, VOLUME 5 © OECD 2016
Some work on self-incompatibility and inbreeding depression in the genus has been performed. Some authors have seen little evidence of inbreeding depression in members of the genus (Borghi, 1976). Others, however, have observed indications of inbreeding depression. Mahzabin, Parvez and Alam (2008) indicate that 
$\textit{Cucurbita maxima}$ shows abrupt inbreeding depression after two generations of selfing. Cardoso (2004) observed inbreeding depression affecting certain traits in a 
$\textit{Cucurbita moschata}$ variety after four successive self-pollination generations. Cardoso (2004) and Hayes, Winsor and Stephenson (2005a, 2005b) have studied inbreeding depression after four successive generations of self-pollination in 
$\textit{Cucurbita pepo}$ var. texana. In general, inbreeding depression seems to be intense, which suggests a level of genetic variation at least as recessive deleterious genes. The selfing rate showed a range from 0.16 to 0.54, but this might vary among characters, years and conditions (Hayes, Winsor and Stephenson, 2005a, 2005b). Whitaker and Robinson (1986) suggest these different observations might represent the response of different species or varieties of 
$\textit{Cucurbita}$ to inbreeding.

**Molecular markers**

A number of different genetic markers have been used to analyse the phylogeny of the genus. Wilson, Doebley and Duvall (1992) studied 15 species using chloroplast restricted fragment length polymorphism analysis and analysed the relationships between different cultivars of 
$\textit{C. pepo}$. The cultivated species, with the exception of 
$\textit{C. ficifolia}$, form a cluster, and the relationships among 
$\textit{C. moschata}$, 
$\textit{C. argyrosperma}$ ssp. 
$\textit{argyrosperma}$ and 
$\textit{C. argyrosperma}$ ssp. 
$\textit{sororia}$ were not resolved. Jobst, King and Hemleben (1998) analysed the internal transcribed spacers of ribosomal DNA for 11 species of the genus, but the alleles between species are shared, possibly because they are species of very recent origin and/or because there is gene flow between species. Using ISSRs (inter-simple sequence repeats), Katzir et al. (2000) analysed 
$\textit{C. pepo}$ and discovered a clear differentiation between 
$\textit{C. pepo}$ ssp. 
$\textit{pepo}$ and 
$\textit{C. pepo}$ ssp. 
$\textit{ovifera}$ (as found in other studies) with 
$\textit{C. fraterna}$ clustering with 
$\textit{C. pepo}$ ssp. 
$\textit{ovifera}$.

King, Jobst and Hemleben (1995) studied nuclear microsatellites in nine species of the genus. They suggested that 
$\textit{Cucurbita}$ (like most of the Cucurbitaceae) contains a large amount of satellite DNA. In particular, species of the genus 
$\textit{Cucurbita}$ contain interesting specific satellite DNA with individual variations among some species. Within 
$\textit{Cucurbita}$, the genes coding for the ribosomal 18S, 5.8S and 25S rRNA are present in high copy numbers and appear highly methylated (Hemleben et al., 1988; King et al., 1993; Torres-Ruíz and Hemleben, 1994). Mitochondrial DNA is also specially structured and larger than in other angiosperms. Sanjur et al. (2002) analysed 65 individuals from 14 taxa (8 species of 
$\textit{Cucurbita}$ and 2 outgroups) with a mitochondrial 
$\textit{nad1}$ gene. They found 16 haplotypes. Four groups can be defined in the phylogenetic analysis: a basal group including 
$\textit{C. ficifolia}$; a group composed of 
$\textit{C. foetidissima}$; a group formed by 
$\textit{C. maxima}$, 
$\textit{C. andreana}$ and 
$\textit{C. ecuadorensis}$; and a large group with 
$\textit{C. okeechobeensis}$ ssp. 
$\textit{martinezii}$ at the base, including 
$\textit{C. pepo}$, 
$\textit{C. argyrosperma}$ ssp. 
$\textit{sororia}$, 
$\textit{C. argyropserma}$ ssp. 
$\textit{argyrosperma}$ and 
$\textit{C. moschata}$. Six independent origins of domestication can be inferred based on this phylogeny. Other phylogenetic studies have been carried out, both at wider levels, analysing for instance the relationships of 
$\textit{Cucurbita}$ with other plant groups (an example within the family is offered by Chung, Decker-Walters and Staub, 2003), and within a given species (as within 
$\textit{C. pepo}$ as in Paris et al., 2003).
The levels of genetic variation and the differentiation (genetic structure) of *C. argyrosperma* and *C. moschata* and their relatives have been described in various studies. A close relationship between the populations of *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *argyrosperma* (average $D$ (Nei’s genetic distance) = 0.02 [range 0.00-0.06]) and *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *sororia* ($D = 0.01$ [0.00-0.06]) was reported by Decker (1986). Populations of *C. moschata* showed a greater genetic distance ($D = 0.24$ [0.16-0.32]; Wilson, 1989; Wilson, Doebley and Duvall, 1992). On the other hand, data on the genetic diversity show a close kinship between *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *argyrosperma* and *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *sororia* (average $D = 0.03$), and a large differentiation between *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *argyrosperma* and *C. moschata* [average $D = 0.22$] (Wilson, 1989; Merrick, 1991). Another study on the degrees of genetic diversity in *Cucurbita* revealed that *C. moschata* has a greater genetic diversity (mean expected heterozygosity, $H = 0.052$) than *C. argyrosperma* (0.039), although the number of individuals studied was small in both species (Decker-Walters et al., 1990).

Montes-Hernández and Eguiarte (2002) studied cultivated populations of *Cucurbita argyrosperma* ssp. *argyrosperma* and *C. moschata*, together with adjacent wild populations of *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *Sororia*, and found similar high degrees of genetic variations in the three taxa ($P= 0.96$, mean allelic diversity of 2.08, average expected heterozygosity ($H_e$) = 0.407) and little genetic differentiation among conspecific populations ($D = 0.081$: $Fst = 0.087$; $Nm = 5.22$). These findings indicate that *Cucurbita* possesses a high pollen dispersal potential, and a UPGMA (unweighted pair group method with arithmetic mean) analysis indicated the existence of at least two distinct groups of populations: one consisting of both subspecies of *C. argyrosperma* and another consisting of *C. moschata*. In *C. moschata* in Africa, Gwanama, Labuschagne and Botha (2000) used 39 random amplified polymorphic DNA (RAPDs) markers, generating 144 fragments, 23% of which were polymorphic; 4 clusters were found to be associated to the geographical origin of the samples. Ferriol et al. (2004), using 156 amplified fragment length polymorphism (AFLP) fragments in *C. moschata*, found 86% to be polymorphic; and using 148 repetitive fragments, found 66% to be polymorphic.

Ferriol, Picó and F. Nuez (2004) analysed genetic variability and differentiation (genetic structure) of *C. maxima* with AFLP, where 55% were polymorphic, and, with sequence-related amplified polymorphism (SRAP) markers where 57% were polymorphic.

In the *C. pepo* complex, genetic diversity and its heterozygosity are moderately high ($D = 0.17$ and $H = 0.089$; Decker and Wilson, 1987) and alleles typical of the cultivated species have been found in wild populations (Kirkpatrick and Wilson, 1988). This has been interpreted as evidence of gene flow between wild and cultivated populations (Decker and Wilson, 1987; Kirkpatrick and Wilson, 1988; Wilson, 1990). Decker-Walters et al. (2002) analysed with RAPDs, 37 wild populations and 16 cultivated varieties. Twenty-six primers yielded 70 scorable and variable markers. Their data also suggested gene flow between wild and cultivated populations. The results of Ferriol et al. (2003a), in a study with 69 cultivated variants of *C. pepo*, including the 2 subspecies ssp. *pepo* and ssp. *ovifera*, using AFLP markers comprising 476 fragments, showed 53% were polymorphic, with an average genetic diversity of 0.18; and, with SRAP markers and 88 fragments, found a polymorphism of 73%, with an average gene diversity of 0.25. With the SRAP analyses, the percentage of polymorphic fragments and the gene diversity were higher in ssp. *pepo* than in ssp. *ovifera* (0.19 and 0.16 respectively), and with the AFLP analyses were 0.12 for ssp. *ovifera* and 0.10 for ssp. *pepo*. Kwon et al. (2004) analysed 16 varieties, including *C. maxima*, *C. moschata*.
and C. pepo with RAPDs markers and simple sequence repeats of microsatellites. The degrees of genetic variation were high and these markers permitted the clear identification of the varieties and the species.

In addition, in C. pepo different characteristics associated with resistance to different pathogens have been described (Lebeda and Křístová, 1996; Lebeda, Křístková and Doležal, 1999; Paris and Cohen, 2000; Provvidenti and Tricoli, 2002; Cohen, Hanan and Paris, 2003; de Oliveira et al., 2003), as well as the genetic bases of other characteristics, such as the banding patterns and color of fruits (Paris, 2003; 2002; 2000), characteristics of the seed (Teppner, 2000), their yield (Paris, 1997; Mohanty, Mohanty and Mishra, 1999) and fat content (Murkovic, Hillebrand and Winkler, 1996).

Advances in genetic mapping include a study by Brown and Myers (2002) of a cross between C. pepo with C. moschata, using 148 RAPDs markers found in 28 linkage groups, where quantitative trait loci related to the shape of the fruit and leaves were identified. Using RAPD, AFLP, simple sequence repeats and morphological traits, genetic maps for C. pepo have been constructed (Zraidi et al., 2007).

Hybridisation and introgression

A wide range of factors that control the incidence and direction of gene flow and introgression within the Cucurbita genus has been identified (Merrick, 1990), including spatial and temporal separation, behaviour of pollinators, genetic compatibility factors, physiological differences and environmental adaptation. Numerous attempts at interspecific hybridisation within Cucurbita have been conducted over the years and there has been a wide range of success (Singh, 1990; Lebeda et al., 2006).

In Cucurbita, all attempts at crossing the xerophytic species, those adapted to arid environments (C. digitata, C. foetidissima, C. pedatifolia and C. radicans), with the mesophytic species, those adapted to moist environments (C. argyrosperma, C. ecuadorensis, C. ficifolia, C. lundelliana, C. maxima, C. moschata, C. okeechobeensis and C. pepo), have failed to produce fertile hybrids (Lebeda et al., 2006).

The genetic compatibility relations between the five cultivated, and with the other mesophytic species of the genus Cucurbita, have been widely studied (Whitaker, 1951; Whitaker and Bemis, 1965; Merrick, 1990; Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995). In general, the cultivated Cucurbita species are reproductively isolated from one another. The primary gene pools of each species are represented by their landraces and commercial cultivars as well as by their intraspecific taxa (see Table 2.6). Although experimental interspecific crosses can be made among the cultivated species, these frequently result in hybrids that are only partially fertile, while others result in no fruit set (Merrick, 1995). Spontaneous crosses between the cultivated Cucurbita are uncommon, but have been reported occasionally between certain of the various species’ landraces, mostly in Mexico (Decker-Walters et al., 1990; Merrick 1991, 1990). Given the experimental results, these are also likely to be hybrids that are only partially fertile or result in no fruit set. Nevertheless, none of the genus’ species is completely reproductively isolated from the others in terms of barriers to hybridisation.

Table 2.6 displays the cross-compatibility of the cultivated Cucurbita species with regard to the primary gene pool, the secondary gene pool and the tertiary gene pool. The cultivated Cucurbita species of interest, i.e. those listed in the leftmost column, cross readily with plants within their primary gene pool. The secondary gene pool includes species that when crossed experimentally with the cultivated species in the leftmost
column can yield at least partially fertile F1 on hybridisation. Although genes can be moved in breeding between the cultivated species and plants in their secondary gene pool, the F1 are usually sterile or sparingly fertile. Species listed as being in the tertiary gene pool of the cultivated species represent the outer limit of potential genetic resources for breeding: Pre-zygotic and post-zygotic barriers can cause partial or complete hybridisation failure, inhibiting introgression between the cultivated species and plants in the tertiary gene pool (Lebeda et al., 2006). Crosses between a cultivated Cucurbita species and other cultivated species in the secondary or tertiary gene pools (Table 2.6), present a more complicated picture; the use of techniques such as embryo culture, which are used to bypass hybrid sterility barriers, may be required. Hybrids obtained from such crosses are frequently sterile or exhibit reduced fertility (Whitaker and Robinson, 1986). Among the Cucurbita, success in crossing frequently depends on the genotypes used as

parentals.

*C. ficifolia* is the least compatible species, not only with the other cultivated species, but with all the remaining species of the genus (Whitaker, 1951; Whitaker and Davis, 1962; Whitaker and Bemis, 1965; Merrick, 1990; Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995; Robinson and Decker-Walters, 1997). Some interspecific hybrids have been obtained from crosses between *C. ficifolia* and *C. pedantifolia*, *C. foetidissima*, or *C. lundelliana*, but they often lack the capacity to produce an F2 generation (Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995).

Among the cultivated species, *C. moschata* has the best crossability. Among the cultivated species, it is easiest to cross *C. moschata* with *C. argyrosperma*. Hybridisation experiments (and some field observations) have revealed that *C. moschata* has the highest degree of compatibility with *C. argyrosperma*, placing *C. argyrosperma* into the *C. moschata* secondary gene pool (Table 2.6; see Lebeda et al., 2006). The *C. moschata* tertiary gene pool is formed by *C. lundelliana* and some taxa of the groups Maxima and Pepo (Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995).

Conversely, hybridisation experiments (and some field observations) place *C. moschata* into the *C. argyrosperma* secondary gene pool. The next level of *C. argyrosperma* cross-compatibility involves the wild and cultivated species of *C. pepo*, some cultivars of *C. maxima*, and the wild perennial species *C. foetidissima*, which collectively represent the *C. argyrosperma* tertiary gene pool (Lebeda et al., 2006).

The primary gene pool of *C. maxima* includes *C. andreana*, which some authors classify as a *C. maxima* subspecies (Systax Database, 2011; see also Annex 2.A1). The secondary gene pool of *C. maxima* is represented by *C. ecuadorensis*; and its tertiary gene pool includes *C. lundelliana*, *C. argyrosperma*, *C. ficifolia* and *C. pepo* (Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995; Lebeda et al., 2006).

The primary gene pool of *C. pepo* is formed by its various edible and ornamental cultivars, as well as populations of the wild taxa, ssp. *fraterna*, and ssp. *ovifera* var. *texana* and var. *ozarkana*; until recently these wild taxa were identified as distinct species (Singh, 1990). There are a great many *C. pepo* cultivars with particular characteristics that, together with local landraces (grown mostly in Mexico), constitute an extraordinary genetic stock. Populations that could be considered as part of the *C. pepo* secondary gene pool are scarce; most attempts at hybridising *C. pepo* with other wild or cultivated Cucurbita species have required the use of special techniques such as embryo culture (Lebeda et al., 2006).

The wild mesophytic annual taxa *C. lundelliana*, *C. okeechobeensis* and *C. ecuadorensis* have shown some possibilities of introgression through breeding hybridisation with cultivated species and/or with one or more of these species’ ancestors.
Of the wild species, *C. lundelliana* is generally the most crossable with the other mesophytic species, being in the tertiary gene pool of *C. ficifolia*, *C. maxima*, *C. moschata* and *C. pepo*.

Table 2.6. Cross-compatibility of cultivated *Cucurbita* species: Gene pools

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Primary gene pool</th>
<th>Secondary gene pool</th>
<th>Tertiary gene pool</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma</em></td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma</em> ssp. <em>soraria</em></td>
<td><em>C. moschata</em></td>
<td><em>C. pepo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma</em> ssp. <em>argyrosperma</em></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. maxima</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. ficifolia</em></td>
<td><em>C. ficifolia</em></td>
<td><em>C. pedatifolia</em></td>
<td><em>C. lundelliana</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. foetidissima</em></td>
<td><em>C. maxima</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. maxima</em></td>
<td><em>C. maxima</em> ssp. <em>maxima</em></td>
<td><em>C. ecuadorensis</em></td>
<td><em>C. lundelliana</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. maxima</em> ssp. <em>andreana</em></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. moschata</em></td>
<td><em>C. moschata</em></td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma</em></td>
<td><em>C. lundelliana</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. maxima</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. pepo</em></td>
<td><em>C. pepo</em> ssp. <em>pepo</em></td>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma</em></td>
<td><em>C. lundelliana</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. pepo</em> ssp. <em>ovifera</em></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. ficifolia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. pepo</em> ssp. <em>ovifera</em> var. <em>texana</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. pepo</em> ssp. <em>ovifera</em> var. <em>ozarkana</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. pepo</em> ssp. <em>fraterna</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: Adapted from Lira, Andres and Nee (1995); and Lebeda et al. (2006).

**Examples of breeding crosses performed to obtain specific introgressions**

Interspecific crosses are an important mechanism for the introduction of valuable traits that are not available, or cannot be found, within the gene pool of a crop species. However, such crosses are often only achieved with difficulty as there are many natural barriers, both pre- and post-fertilisation, that protect the integrity of a species. Even if a cross between the parental plants produces hybrid offspring, the alien gene must introgress into the genome, including successful chromosome pairing in the target species.

Diverse studies have analysed hybridisation in *Cucurbita* (Whitaker and Bohn, 1950; Whitaker and Bemis, 1965; Merrick, 1991, 1990). In spite of hybridisation barriers, desirable traits have been successfully introgressed among species of the *Cucurbita*. In most cases, success in crossing between cultivated species depends on the genotypes used, with some attempts more successful than others (Whitaker and Davis, 1962; Robinson and Decker-Walters, 1997; Lebeda et al., 2006). For example, although *C. moschata* is in the secondary gene pool of *C. argyrosperma* and the hybridisation possibilities between the members of the subspecies of *C. argyrosperma* (i.e. *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *argyrosperma* and ssp. *sororia*) and *C. moschata* are good (Wilson, 1990; Wilson, Doebley and Duvall, 1992), there are reports of a decrease in the level of compatibility when *C. moschata* is used as the female parent (Merrick, 1991, 1990; Wessel-Beaver, 2000a).

Information related to hybridisation among *Cucurbita* species and techniques to overcome crossing barriers and hybrid sterility has been summarised by Lira, Andres and Nee (1995; see also Sisko, Ivancic and Bohanec, 2003). The breeding of *Cucurbita* has primarily focused on improving the production and quality of the fruits by attempting to increase resistance to pathogens and diseases, and by modifying plant architecture and sex expression (Lebeda et al., 2006). Interspecific hybrids have been made to identify...
diverse resistance sources, primarily to diseases caused by viruses and fungi. Resistance to zucchini yellow mosaic virus (ZYMV) and watermelon mosaic virus (WMV), which *C. moschata* was reported to display, has been incorporated into cultivars of *C. pepo* by crosses with *C. moschata* (Garzón-Tiznado, Montes-Hernández and Becerra, 1993; Gilbert-Albertini et al., 1993). Wild species of *Cucurbita* including *C. ecuadorensis* and *C. foetidissima* have been found to be resistant to a number of viruses (Provvidenti, 1990), and have been used as sources of resistance to these diseases. It is difficult to hybridise *Cucurbita foetidissima* with other members of the genus because it is phylogenetically distant from the cultivated species; nevertheless, its virus-resistant alleles can be introduced into the extended *Cucurbita* gene pool for use in genetic improvement of the cultivated species as it is a member of the tertiary gene pool of *C. argyrosperma* (see Table 2.6).

In terms of intraspecific crosses being useful in increasing resistance to pathogens and disease, Lebeda and Widrlechner (2004) published the results of screenings on cultivated *C. pepo*, represented by eight groups of morphotypes, for susceptibility or resistance to the fungi *P. cubensis* or *P. xanthii*. The *C. pepo* morphotypes expressed significant differences in resistance/susceptibility to *P. cubensis* or *P. xanthii*. Generally, there was an inverse relationship detected in resistance to the two fungi. While zucchini, cocozelle and vegetable marrow (ssp. *pepo*) were highly resistant to *P. cubensis*, they had relatively high powdery mildew sporulation. Cultivars with the fruit type acorn, straightneck and ornamental gourd (ssp. *ovifera*) were quite susceptible to *P. cubensis*; however, they were considered resistant to *P. xanthii* in laboratory and field evaluations (Lebeda and Křistová, 2000).

Interspecific hybrids have been made to incorporate the gene responsible for the “bush” phenotype of *C. pepo* into *C. moschata* and *C. argyrosperma*, species that are in the secondary gene pool of *C. pepo*, providing these species with the characteristics of a compact plant (Robinson and Decker-Walters, 1997). Bush plants have a more uniform growth and better response to high-density planting compared to vine plants (Loy and Broderick, 1990).

**Hybridisation and introgression in the field**

The amount and frequency of gene flow between a cultivated plant and its closest wild relatives are affected by several factors, e.g. the existing mating system, similarities in flowering phenology, ease in which the gametes can move and overlapping ecogeographic distribution. Several authors, including Decker (1986) and Decker-Walters et al. (1990), have presented genetic evidence for introgression in the field among various *Cucurbita*.

As noted earlier in this chapter, the *Cucurbita* with limited exception are monoecious, plants may produce flowers over much of their maturity, and the species are insect pollinated. Kirkpatrick and Wilson (1988) examined the potential for gene flow between cultivated *Cucurbita pepo* and its wild relative *C. pepo* var. *texana* by monitoring flower patterns and gene flow among experimental populations. While flowering patterns and pollinator movements tended to maximise self-pollination and local gene exchange, movement of effective pollen was detected up to a distance of 1 300 metres. Hybridisation rates of 5% have been reported (see also Montes, 2002). Spencer and Snow (2001) compared the fitness component of wild *Cucurbita pepo* from Arkansas (United States) with *C. pepo* wild-crop hybrids. Their results suggest that the F1 generation of the wild-crop cross does not present a strong barrier to introgression of crop
II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CURCURBITA SPECIES) – 113

SAFETY ASSESSMENT OF TRANSGENIC ORGANISMS: OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS, VOLUME 5 © OECD 2016

genes into free-living *C. pepo* populations. Quesada et al. (1991) and Queseda, Winsor and Stephenson (1996) showed that subsequent generations of offspring of such hybrids are viable. Decker and Wilson (1987) and Kirkpatrick and Wilson (1988) have found alleles typical of the cultivated species in wild populations and this has been interpreted as evidence of gene flow between wild and cultivated populations. Allozyme frequency distributions and distinctive patterns of variation in fruit structure, colour and bitterness within populations of free-living *C. pepo* indicate that past hybridisation events have resulted in introgression between cultivated *C. pepo* L. and free-living *C. pepo* ssp. *ovifera* (Decker and Wilson, 1987; Wilson, 1990).

Similarities in flowering phenology can affect the potential for hybridisation among other species of *Cucurbita*. For example, *C. moschata*, *C. pepo* ssp. *fraterna* and both subspecies of *C. argyrosperma* have a very similar flowering phenology in relation to the day and time of opening of male and female flowers (Wilson, Lira and Rodriguez, 1994). Wilson (1990) and Lira (1991) have reported hybrids between *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *sororia* and *C. moschata* in the state of Chiapas, Mexico. Gene flow and introgression between cultivated populations of *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *argyrosperma* and *C. moschata* with adjacent wild populations of *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *sororia* is attributed partly to the plants flowering at the same time, and partly to pollinators visiting plants in these taxa indiscriminately (Montes-Hernández and Eguiarte, 2002). In addition, Mexican farmers permit wild relatives of cultivated *Cucurbita* to grow in the edges of their plots, and inside the plots they sometimes find bitter fruits which indicate hybridisation (Nabhan, 1984; Merrick and Nabhan, 1985; Montes-Hernández, Merrick and Eguiarte, 2005). Wilson, Lira and Rodriguez (1994) noted that a mixed population of *Cucurbita* in Mexico showed an anomalous pattern of fruit bitterness. Some domesticated plants (*C. argyrosperma* and *C. moschata*) expressed bitterness whereas some sympatric free-living plants (*C. pepo* ssp. *fraterna*) produced non-bitter fruits. Wilson hypothesised that this reversal of typical bitterness expression suggested gene flow between crop and wild plants at the site. Using synthetic hybridisation Wilson, Lira and Rodriguez (1994) showed that F1 hybrids can be produced from crosses involving *C. pepo* ssp. *fraterna* as the pistillate parent and *C. argyrosperma* as the staminate parent.

RAPDs, RFLPs and microsatellites, AFLPs and studies involving nuclear DNA, chloroplast DNA (cpDNA) and mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) (Ferriol et al., 2004; Ferriol, Picó and Nuez, 2004, 2003b) have been applied to study introgression and gene flow in *Cucurbita*. Morphological and isoenzyme analyses have also been used to study introgression between various members of the *Cucurbita* (Bretting, 1990; Decker, 1988; Decker-Walters et al., 1990; Kirkpatrick and Wilson, 1988; Montes-Hernandez and Eguiarte, 2002; Nee, 1990; Wilson, 1990; and Wilson, Lira and Rodriguez, 1994).

Crop production and use

**Production statistics**

Originally domesticated in the Americas, now disseminated worldwide, the cultivated *Cucurbita* species play a major role in food-production agriculture, as well as in local home gardening throughout tropical, subtropical and temperate regions of the globe. Collectively, *Cucurbita* species rank among the ten most important vegetable crops worldwide (Ferriol and Picó, 2008).

International statistics on production and trade rarely distinguish between the *Cucurbita* species; it is thus difficult to parse out how much of each species is grown in the various regions of the globe. For example, *C. pepo* is the most important commercial
species worldwide (Paris, 2001), and in tropical Africa \(C.\) moschata and \(C.\) maxima are known to be more important than other species such as \(Cucurbita\) pepo; however, production figures simply report on “pumpkins, squash and gourds”. In addition, international production statistics do not reflect the use of the \(Cucurbita\) in home gardens or when grown on a small-scale basis for local consumption. Nonetheless, the FAO gathers production statistics worldwide for commercial production of pumpkins, squash and gourds and these numbers offer some indication of the importance of the \(Cucurbita\) in commercial agriculture. The FAO Statistical Database reports the 2013 world production of pumpkins, squashes and gourds at 24.6 million metric tonnes (mMT) from almost 1.8 million hectares. The People’s Republic of China was by far the main producer with 7.1 mMT, followed by India (4.9 mMT), the Russian Federation (1.1 mMT), Iran (897 293 MT), the United States (796 872 MT) and Ukraine (610 800 MT). For Latin America, the main producer was Mexico (544 998 MT), followed by Cuba (412 028 MT), Argentina (302 324 MT) and Peru (232 888 MT). In tropical Africa, substantial production was reported for Rwanda (239 182 MT) and Cameroon (158 801 MT). Also included in the top 25 producers were Egypt (543 334 MT), Spain (533 200 MT), Italy (530 000 MT), Turkey (388 785 MT), Bangladesh (375 000 MT), Indonesia (372 387 MT), Korea (323 364 MT), Algeria (260 913 MT), Pakistan (257 740 MT), Japan (227 303 MT), Morocco (224 314 MT), the Philippines (223 479 MT), Thailand (207 000 MT) and South Africa (181 315 MT) (FAOSTAT, 2013).

Environmental conditions

All of the cultivated \(Cucurbita\) are warm season crops adapted to monthly mean temperatures of 18-27ºC, and are killed by frost. Warm temperatures promote growth and are especially beneficial for germination and development of seedlings. \(Cucurbita\) species are widely adapted to various types of soils, but prefer good drainage and do not tolerate poorly drained soil.

\textit{Cucurbita argyrosperma}

\(Cucurbita argyrosperma\) ssp. \textit{argyrosperma}, within its native range (southwestern United States to Central America), is cultivated in a wide altitudinal range from sea level to 1 800-1 900 metres, generally in regions with warm and slightly dry climate (with irrigation), or in regions with a well-defined rainy season. \(C.\) \textit{argyrosperma} does not tolerate very low temperatures well. \(C.\) \textit{argyrosperma} can be found in cultivation in Mexico, and some cultivation can be found in Argentina and Peru and the southwestern United States. Some sporadic cultivation may be found elsewhere.

\textit{Cucurbita ficifolia}

\(Cucurbita ficifolia\) is widely distributed under cultivation from 1 000-3 000 metres, on practically all mountain ranges in Latin America. Cultivation at higher altitudes is a feature that distinguishes \(C.\) \textit{ficifolia} from other cultivated species of the genus, which, in general, can be managed in a wider interval of ecological conditions. Studies by Andres (1990) and others have shown that \(C.\) \textit{ficifolia} is an annual, which, depending on certain ecological conditions (i.e. not too severe frosts), is capable of surviving for a longer period of time than that corresponding to a species with this type of life cycle.

\(C.\) \textit{ficifolia} requires a rich, well-drained, moisture-retentive soil, and a very warm, sunny and sheltered position, but may be able to tolerate poor, wet and badly drained soils in some instances. Plants are not very frost-tolerant, but they can be grown in temperate
climate. *C. ficifolia* can only be grown from seed, and can be used as a rootstock for grafts of other *Cucurbita* due to its hardy root system and virus resistance. *C. ficifolia* may be found in cultivation in high elevations from Mexico to northern Chile and Argentina, and in other parts of the world (e.g. France, Germany, Japan and the Philippines).

**Cucurbita maxima**

Within its native distribution, there are variants or local races of *Cucurbita maxima* cultivated in places within a wide altitudinal range, from 100 metres (in some Brazilian localities) to 3 000 metres (in Bolivia). A frost tender, annual plant, *C. maxima* is primarily cultivated in regions with temperate climate, and very rarely in warm and damp regions (Robinson and Decker-Walters, 1997). *C. maxima* requires a rich, moisture-retentive well-drained soil and a warm, sheltered, sunny position. Many forms require a temperature range of 20-27°C during the growing season, although there are some forms that tolerate cooler conditions. *C. maxima* is the most tolerant of the cultivated *Cucurbita* of low temperatures. *C. maxima* is cultivated in temperate and subtropical regions worldwide.

**Cucurbita moschata**

In botanical literature, *C. moschata* is reported as being grown mainly in areas of low altitude with a hot climate and high humidity (Esquinas-Alcazar and Gulick, 1983; Whitaker, 1968). However, while it is true that this species is preferentially grown within these limits, they do not appear to be strictly adhered to, as variants have been found above 2 200 metres, e.g. in Oaxaca, Mexico. For example, Bukasov (1981) fixes 2 200-2 300 metres as the top altitudinal limit for this crop in Colombia and Mexico, and this information has recently been corroborated by means of collections of fruits and seeds of the variants growing above 2 200 metres within the region of the Mixteca Alta in the state of Oaxaca, Mexico (Lira, Andres and Nee, 1995). In general, *C. moschata* is the cultivated *Cucurbita* least tolerant of low temperatures, but is relatively drought tolerant. *C. moschata* is cultivated in subtropical and tropical regions worldwide, but can also be cultivated sporadically elsewhere.

**Cucurbita pepo**

*C. pepo* can grow in a variety of ecological conditions. *C. pepo* tolerates a fairly wide range of altitudes ranging from 8-2 300 metres. This species includes variants which are cultivated at altitudes above 2 000 metres (during the rainy season or even during the dry season on land that remains wet), and still others can grow near the sea and in even more extreme conditions (i.e. those found on the Yucatan Peninsula). For example, in Mexico there are native varieties that grow close to sea level in semi-dry climates and limestone soil (i.e. the “tsol” in the Yucatan Peninsula), while others are managed at altitudes above 2 000 metres, with colder climatic conditions and sometimes highly eroded soil (i.e. the “güiches” in the state of Oaxaca) (Lira, 1991; 1988; 1985). In Guatemala the varieties or native races commonly called “güicoy” are grown above 1 800 metres, while those called “tsol” are managed in the low and warm-humid areas of the Petén, below 500 metres (Azurdia-Pérez and González-Salán, 1986). *C. pepo* grows best when day temperatures are between 24°C and 28°C and night temperatures between 16°C and 24°C, although it can tolerate monthly average day temperatures of 18-28°C. It needs six to eight hours of sunlight a day and has some level of drought tolerance. Many of the commercial cultivars are widely spread around the world, demonstrating the ability of varieties to adapt to different environments. *Cucurbita pepo* may be grown in temperate, subtropical and tropical regions worldwide.
Agricultural practices

The cultivated Cucurbita are frost sensitive and need frost-free growing periods of four to five months. Temperatures of 20-35°C are ideal for growth. The Cucurbita can be grown on a wide range of soil types. They prefer a soil pH between 6.0 and 6.5, although they will tolerate both slightly acidic and slightly alkaline soils. As roots can penetrate up to a metre into the soil, a well-drained soil is preferred. Cucurbita also have feeder roots close to the surface. Roots can grow to about the same spread as the vines. The Cucurbita are sensitive to soil salinity. They are also susceptible to herbicide damage, and this susceptibility would suggest that care should be taken with herbicide use, or that herbicides can be used for control. The cultivated Cucurbita are usually established by direct sowing of seed, although seeds can be sprouted in containers and seedlings transplanted to the field when about 10 cm high. Seedling transplant is particularly indicated if the growing season is short. Cucurbita are insect pollinated and require bees for pollination. Inadequate pollination results in poor fruit shape and blossom drop.

Cucurbita fruit develop rapidly after the flower closes, and fruit eaten at the immature stage (e.g. zucchini) must be harvested before the rind begins to harden. For those types that are eaten after the fruit fully matures (e.g. pumpkin), three to four months are generally required to mature a crop to this stage. At this stage the fruit is hard and imperious to scratching; the fruit is removed from the vine with a portion of the stem attached. The mature fruit can be kept in long-term storage (e.g. four to six months) if the fruit is properly ripened and cured. Curing hardens the shell, heals superficial wounds, reduces the water content of the fruit and improves the quality of the flesh. Fruits can be cured by leaving them in the field in warm and dry conditions for ten days or by keeping them inside at room temperature for a month (OMAFRA, 2011). Table 2.4 offered phenological notes on the various Cucurbita species, including the cultivated species, in Mexico.

Cucurbita species can express highly oxygenated, triterpene compounds called cucurbitacins, which taste bitter to humans and can be toxic (US Environmental Protection Agency, 1999). Cultivated Cucurbita varieties intended for consumption by humans or domesticated animals have been bred to express low levels of cucurbitacins. However, plants in wild populations express high levels of these substances and if a cultivated plant is visited by bees carrying pollen from plants in a wild population, higher levels of the toxicant can be produced in the fruit. Any resulting seeds would produce plants with bitter fruit as bitterness is a dominant characteristic. Higher cucurbitacin levels can also be expressed by the plant in response to stresses such as drought, high temperatures, low soil fertility and low soil pH. Higher levels can also be expressed in the newly emergent seedling, and by improperly cared for, harvested fruit. In addition to producing inedible fruit, plants producing higher level of cucurbitacins can attract phytophagous Chrysomelidae beetles and attendant pest management problems (see below for additional information on the cucurbitacins and Chrysomelidae beetles).

Cucurbita argyrosperma

The cultivated varieties of Cucurbita argyrosperma are used in the traditional heavy rain agricultural systems and are sown at the start of the rainy period (May-June in the northern hemisphere) from 1 000-3 000 metres. Growth of these varieties lasts five to seven months; the young fruit for vegetables is harvested approximately three months after being sown, while the ripe fruit for seed is harvested between October and
December. Unlike other cultivated species of the genus, it is less frequent for varieties of the *argyrosperma* complex to be found in vegetable gardens, plots or in small agricultural holdings, or to be associated with other species (Lira-Saade and Montes-Hernández, 1992). In some areas its rapid growth is used to provide ground cover with the aim of preventing weeds from developing in the field.

*Cucurbita ficifolia*

*Cucurbita ficifolia* is a crop grown mainly in traditional heavy rain agricultural systems. It is typically sowed at the beginning of the rainy season, and harvested from the end of September (young fruit and flowers for vegetables) to December or January (ripe fruit for seeds and pulp) in the northern hemisphere. The only form of propagation is the sowing of seed, together with one of the traditional crops of this type of agriculture (maize, bean and other species of *Cucurbita*) or else cultivation in vegetable gardens along with other species or by itself. The ripe fruit is harvested and selected for seed. It can be stored for long periods (18-20 months) and it is frequently seen drying on the roofs of farmers’ houses (Lira-Saade and Montes-Hernández, 1992).

*Cucurbita maxima*

*Cucurbita maxima* prefers light (sandy), medium (loamy) or heavy soil (clay) which is well-drained. The plant prefers acidic and neutral soils. It can grow in semi-shade or no shade. Dry periods with a relatively low humidity favour the best growth. A frost-sensitive annual plant, it is widely cultivated in the tropical and temperate zones. It is one of the species used in large-scale production agriculture.

*Cucurbita moschata*

*C. moschata* variants are grown under traditional, heavy rain agricultural systems. It is possible to find varieties grown in maize fields together with maize, beans and one or two other *Cucurbita*, or in vegetable gardens and other more intensively managed farmland where they are grown alone or with other species. There are some old references to a considerable variation in Colombia, but that has yet to be properly documented and evaluated (Lira-Saade and Montes-Hernández, 1992). The greatest diversity lies in the neotropics where the vines are grown under a wide range of ecological conditions, including under hotter conditions than are tolerated by the other *Cucurbita* species (Andres, 2004). This species is used in large-scale production agriculture.

*Cucurbita pepo*

In its native area of distribution, *C. pepo* is grown both in maize fields and vegetable gardens as well as in other more intensive systems. In the former case, it is combined with maize, beans and/or with one to three of the other cultivated species of *Cucurbita*, while in the latter system it may be found growing on plots or in small groups, generally combined with other vegetables. Where it is grown commercially, it is generally found as the sole crop, occupying areas of varying size (Lira-Saade and Montes-Hernández, 1992). Although *C. pepo* is grown in several different commercial cropping systems, there may be as much grown in home gardens as grown commercially for sale in local or distant markets, and this may be true even in countries such as the United States where it is frequently grown in larger scale production systems (National Gardening Association, 2009). *C. pepo* is the most important *Cucurbita* species economically. In North America
cultivars of both ssp. *pepo* and ssp. *ovifera* are grown. Elsewhere in the world, ssp. *pepo* is the more economically important subspecies.

**Management issues**

Amongst the *Cucurbita, C. pepo* can present a weed problem in certain agricultural settings; these problems are associated with free-living members of the species in North America. *C. pepo* var. *ozarkana* is considered a weed in the states of Arkansas, Louisiana and Mississippi in the United States in soybean and cotton fields (Boyette, Templeton and Oliver, 1984; Oliver, Harrison and McClelland, 1983). While a perennial problem in Arkansas, reports from Louisiana and Mississippi are based on “outbreaks” that are evidently linked to sporadic flooding events and associated fruit dispersal into cultivated fields. Whereas in wild habitats (i.e. those not directly influenced by human activity), individual plants or small groups of plants are widely dispersed along flood plain corridors, in weedy habitats (i.e. disturbed habitats created by human activities), populations can be very dense and cover agricultural fields. Neither *Cucurbita pepo* var. *texana* nor var. *ozarkana* are found on the United States Department of Agriculture’s Federal Noxious Weeds List (USDA, 2011b).

Morphological and isozymic evidence suggests that some free-living *C. pepo* populations in Illinois (Decker and Wilson, 1987; Wilson, 1990), Kentucky (Cowan and Smith, 1993; Decker-Walters et al., 1993) and possibly elsewhere (Asch and Asch, 1992) may have evolved purely as escapes of ornamental gourds, which may or may not have experienced subsequent introgression with other nearby cultivated, weedy or wild material of *C. pepo*. Such wild-habitat populations in northeastern Mexico, Texas and many parts of the Mississippi Valley in the United States have long histories of occupation in their general areas, however, and have been accepted as indigenous (e.g. Smith, Cowan and Hoffman, 1992).

Unlike the wild *C. pepo* which wards off predation by producing small, hard-shelled, tough-pericarped, bitter-fleshed gourds, the edible cultivars under human selection have yielded characteristics that hinder the cultivars’ ability to persist in the wild, e.g. large, fleshy, non-bitter fruit. The edible cultivars consequently do not survive as long-lived escaped populations in wild or weedy habitats. *C. moschata, C. maxima* and *C. ficifolia* are known to grow outside of cultivation in the United States. The species have been collected from various habitats outside of cultivation: oak-pine woods, agricultural fields, brush and trash heaps, roadsides, ditch banks, vacant lots and disturbed sites. In addition to the US localities, *C. moschata* has been reported as naturalised in the West Indies, Central America (Belize) and South America (Galapagos, Guyana, French Guiana, Surinam). In most cases, these plants are most accurately described as “waifs” as they apparently do not maintain themselves in persistent populations (Nesom, 2011).

The edible cultivars can occur as volunteers in fields and thus present certain management considerations. Because of their rapid germination and large canopy, certain of the *Cucurbita* are used in weed control strategies, e.g. *C. argyroserperma* in traditional growth systems in smaller agricultural holdings (Anaya et al., 1987; Anaya, Ortega and Nava Rodriguez, 1992). Rapid vine growth and large leaves make the *Cucurbita* relatively weed tolerant and these characteristics can be used to reduce weed pressure as seen in traditional native agriculture (Anaya et al., 1987; Anaya, Ortega and Nava Rodriguez, 1992; Radovich, 2011).
General interactions with other organisms (ecology)

This section highlights several interesting interactions of note between the *Cucurbita* and other organisms. It does not attempt to create an exhaustive list of interactions.

*Cucurbitacin mediated interactions*

Species in the family Cucurbitaceae are characterised by their biosynthesis of a group of secondary compounds that are thought to function as chemical defense compounds (Bar-Nun and Mayer, 1990; Tallamy et al., 1998a) against insects, fungi and herbivores. These compounds are known as cucurbitacins (Rehm et al., 1957) and are responsible for the bitter taste found most obviously in the wild Cucurbitaceae. The cucurbitacins are highly oxygenated tetracyclic triterpene compounds (tetracyclid triterpenoids). These non-volatile compounds possess cytotoxic properties. For example, one form of cucurbitacin antagonises insect steroid responses (Dinan et al., 1997). There are 17 identified cucurbitacin compounds, generally named alphabetically, e.g. A, B, C, D, E, F, I, J, K and L. These compounds are based on the unusual amino acid (-)-3-amino-3-carboxypyrrolidine, and can occur both free and in glycosidic combination. The 17 different members of the cucurbitacin class of natural toxicants can be found as naturally occurring mixtures in species of the *Cucurbita*, primarily in the leaves and seeds. Although originally isolated from species in the Cucurbitaceae, cucurbitacins occur in a variety of plant families (e.g. Brassicaceae, Begoniaceae, Rosaceae) as well as in some mushrooms (e.g. *Russula* and *Hebeloma*). The ability of the *Cucurbita* to produce cucurbitacins influences several aspects of their ecology.

*Animals*

Humans find almost all the cucurbitacins contained within the fruit of the wild *Cucurbita* to be extremely bitter and the compounds have been found to be toxic to a number of animal species. The most toxic cucurbitacin has an LD$_{50}$ of 5 mg/kg body weight in the mouse. The least toxic has an LD$_{50}$ of 650 mg/kg body weight in the mouse (US Environmental Protection Agency, 1999). In spite of the bitter taste and toxicity which appears to deter most animals, some animals can tolerate at least some of the pulp of wild *Cucurbita*; e.g. coyotes (*Canis latrans*) and porcupines (*Erethizontidae* spp.) eat seeds tainted by the pulp of xerophytic *Cucurbita foetidissima* and *C. digitata* (Sowls, 1997). Javelina (*Pecari tajacu*) appears to have even greater tolerance as they have been reported to dig up and eat the bitter tuberous roots of *C. foetidissima* and *C. digitata* (Sowls, 1997).

*Phytophagous insects*

In general, the cucurbitacins produced by the *Cucurbita* are thought to defend against phytophagous insects (Tallamy et al., 1998a). However, for a group of Chrysomelidae beetles of the tribe Luperini, cucurbitacins act as arrestants and feeding stimulants (Metcalf et al., 1982). The beetles belong to the subtribes Diabroticina (about 900 species distributed in the American continent) and Aulacophorina (about 480 species found in Asia). Diabroticina beetles can detect these compounds in plant tissues and inert substances like silica gel or filter paper at quantities as low as 0.1 ng (Metcalf, Metcalf and Rhodes, 1980). When the beetles encounter bitter plant tissues they compulsively ingest them. Furthermore, they sequester cucurbitacins in hemolymph and elytra as chemical defense against natural enemies and transfer the compounds to their eggs (Ferguson and Metcalf, 1985; Brust and Barbercheck, 1992; Tallamy et al., 1998b). A paper by Nishida, Yokoyama and Fukami (1992) showed, for several members of the
Luperini tribe, that these sequestered cucurbitacins deterred feeding by a bird predator, indicating an allomonal role for these compounds. Interestingly enough, some beetle species which do not rely on cucurbits as a food source still show this behaviour, known as pharmacophagy (Fukami and Nishida, 1990; Eben, Barbercheck and Aluja, 1997). An example of such behaviour is displayed by *Diabrotica virgifera virgifera* which is a specialist on plants of the Poaceae. When it reaches maturity, this beetle leaves the nutritious and toxin-free *Zea maize* in search of cucurbitacin enriched plants (Tallamy et al., 2005). Metcalf (1986) proposed that this behaviour is a relict of a coevolutionary association with cucurbits. Gillespie et al. (2003) argued that phylogenetic analysis within the Luperini tribe supports the theory that this behaviour represents convergent evolution of cucurbitacin feeding. Whatever the origin of the behaviour, compulsive feeding is such a strong and reliable characteristic of Diabroticina beetles that cucurbitacins are used as bait in insecticidal preparations for the control of several pest species within the Diabroticina (Lance and Sutter, 1990).

**Micro-organisms**

As with many other members of the plant kingdom, *Cucurbita* are attacked by a number of microbial pathogens. The next section provides a listing of those pathogens most commonly found on *Cucurbita* species. The largest diversity of disease-producing organisms on species of *Cucurbita* is found among the fungi (Blancard et al., 1994; Zitter, Hopkins and Thomas, 1996; Davis et al., 2008). The fungi causing the largest economic losses in the *Cucurbita* are those that cause powdery mildew (*Podosphaera xanthii*, *Erysiphe cichoracearum*). Some research (Bar-Nun and Mayer, 1990) has shown that application of cucurbitacins to plant tissue can reduce the infection rate of a fungus, *Botrytis cinerea*, supporting the hypothesis that cucurbitacins can act as defense compounds against at least some fungi.

One bacterial pathogen, *Erwinia tracheiphila*, is particularly problematic in the *Cucurbita*. It is transmitted to the plant by chrysomelid beetles and, as noted above, these beetles are attracted to plants expressing cucurbitacins.

**Other interactions**

**Insect pollinators**

As discussed above, the *Cucurbita* are primarily pollinated by bees, and the most efficient pollinators of the *Cucurbita* are the solitary bees of the genera *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa*. A coevolutionary relationship exists between the bees of the genera *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* and the *Cucurbita*. To the bees, it is a relationship on which their survival depends (Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker, 1971). It also seems to be the chief parameter of the bees’ evolution (Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker, 1971). A number of coevolutionary adaptations exist between the bees of the genera *Peponapis* and *Xenoglossa* and the *Cucurbita*. For example, these bees are adapted to collect the large (80-150 µm diameter) and spiny pollen grains and to drink the nectar of *Cucurbita* from which the bees derive the majority of their food (Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker, 1971). Although other plants are occasionally visited, adult females rely solely on plants of the *Cucurbita* for the pollen food used to rear offspring (Hurd and Linsley, 1964). It has been hypothesised that the original ranges of the bees were affected by the spread by humans of *Cucurbita* species through the Americas, with the bees extending their ranges using “pollen avenues” established by these cultivated *Cucurbita* in a coevolutionary
facilitation (Hurd, Linsley and Whitaker, 1971). Other bees, e.g. the honey bee (*Apis mellifera*), also pollinate *Cucurbita*.

**Phytophagous insects**

In general, cultivated plant species are used as a food source by a large number of phytophagous insects (e.g. Hodgekinson and Hughes, 1982; Hendrix, 1988), and the *Cucurbita* are no exception, particularly in an agricultural setting. In addition to chrosomalid beetles, other insects are known as pests of the cultivated *Cucurbita* species; some of these have also been seen feeding from wild plants. These include *Epilachna* spp. (Coleoptera: Coccinellidae) and *Diaphania hyalinata* and *Diaphania nitidalis* (Lepidoptera: Pyralidae) (Mariano and Dirzo, 2002). See below for additional information on common insect pests.

Plants in the genus *Cucurbita* have been shown to respond to herbivory in a number of ways, e.g. in the production of flowers, fruits, pollen and pollen performance. Mariano (2001) has observed such effects in *C. argyrosperma* ssp. *sororia* and *C. pepo* var. *texana*. Ávila-Sakar, Krupnick and Stephenson (2001) have shown that the plants of *Cucurbita pepo* var. *texana* are capable of reassigning resources destined for the production of fruits and seeds to growth and production of staminate flowers as a response to the removal of female flowers. Further, Ávila-Sakar, Leist and Stephenson (2003) have shown that *C. pepo* var. *texana* has a high tolerance of simulated herbivory; low to moderate levels of foliar damage significantly affected very few traits. Finally, Theis, Kesler and Adler (2009) in *Cucurbita pepo* var. *texana* showed that simulated leaf damage increased fragrance production in male flowers. Female flowers which were bigger and produced more fragrance than males flowers were unaffected by leaf damage. These results suggest that changes in fragrance following herbivory may mediate interactions between plants, herbivores and pollinators.

**Plants**

Anaya et al. (1987) and Anaya, Ortega and Nava Rodriguez (1992) suggest that the effectiveness of *Cucurbita* species in weed suppression in traditional American polyculture is due to a combination of competition for light and allelopathy. Qasem and Issa (2005) reported that volatiles from *C. pepo* shoots may be phytotoxic: soil-incorporated *C. pepo* residues prevented seed germination of *P. oleracea* and arrested growth of other weed species tested (Qasem and Issa, 2005). In 2007, Fujiyoshi, Gliessman and Langenheim examined the weed-suppressive properties of *Cucurbita* interplanted with corn (*Zea maize*) by comparing different planting and weeding regimes, and measuring weed biomass, light interception by crop canopy and yield. Shading by the *Cucurbita* appeared to be the major mechanism of weed suppression, but the analysis suggested that other factors, such as allelopathy, might also contribute.

**Micro-organisms**

Several types of viruses are known to attack the *Cucurbita*. The Mosaic viruses (cucumber mosaic – CMV, watermelon mosaic – WMV, zucchini yellow mosaic virus – ZYMV, and squash mosaic virus – SqMV) are the types most commonly observed in the *Cucurbita*. These viruses are transmitted primarily by insect vectors (aphids) and the primary approach to controlling the incidence of viral disease in cultivated *Cucurbita* is control of the vector. The next section discusses the viruses known to infect the *Cucurbita* in greater detail. The following section then briefly describes newer biotechnological
approaches to addressing the economic losses associated with certain of the viruses causing disease in *Cucurbita*.

**Animals**

Cultivated *Cucurbita* are bred to express only very low levels of cucurbitacins, and are far more palatable to humans and other animals than wild *Cucurbita*. In many regions of the world, for example, fruits of the cultivated *Cucurbita* are used as fodder. In tropical regions, domesticated animals such as donkeys and horses will consume *Cucurbita* fruits and vines when fodder is scarce at the end of the rainy season (Mariano and Dirzo, 2002).

**Common pests and pathogens**

This section lists some of the common pests and pathogens of *Cucurbita*. It is not an exhaustive list.

**Viruses**

Although only a dozen problem viral variants have been identified, these variants are serious problems for the crops due to the rate of disease spread, the severity of infection, the potential for large economic losses and the difficulty in controlling the diseases. These viral diseases are particularly important due to the susceptibility of the plants to attacks by virus-transmitting insect vectors such as whiteflies, aphids and chrysomelid beetles.

*Cucumber mosaic virus (CMV)*

This Cucumovirus has worldwide distribution and the widest host range of any plant virus, including more than 1 200 species in over 100 families of dicotyledonous and monocotyledonous angiosperms. The host range includes cereals, forages, woody and herbaceous ornamental, vegetable and fruit crops such as squash, melons, peppers, beans, tomatoes, carrots, celery, lettuce, spinach and beets, various weeds and many ornamentals and bedding plants. Symptoms seen in infections of the virus include leaf mosaic or mottling, yellowing, ringspots, stunting and leaf, flower and fruit distortion.

CMV can be vectored by 60-80 different aphid species in a non-persistent manner from plant to plant in a stylet-borne fashion. The peach (*Myzus persicae*) and melon (*Aphis gossypii*) aphids are the primary CMV vectors. CMV can also be transmitted in seeds, and by the parasitic weeds, *Cuscuta sp.*, as well as mechanically by humans cultivating or touching healthy plants after touching infected plants. It can also be carried by the striped and 12-spotted cucumber beetles but the transmission success rate under field conditions makes these insects minor contributors to CMV infection. Many variants of the virus occur, and it is difficult to identify CMV from symptoms alone. CMV produces a systemic infection in most host plants. Older tissues and organs that developed prior to infection usually are not affected by the virus, but newer cells and tissues that develop after infection may be affected with varying severity. Leaves of infected plants become mottled and vines are stunted. The concentration of the virus increases for several days following inoculation, then decreases until it levels off or the plant dies (Agrios, 1997). The virus can overwinter in perennial weeds, flower and food crops by surviving in the roots.
**Papaya ringspot virus Type W (PRSV)**

This Potyvirus is distributed worldwide. PRSV is transmitted in a non-persistent manner by various aphids such as the peach aphid *Myzus persicae* (Brunt et al., 1996). It can also be transmitted mechanically by humans. It is not seed transmitted (Brunt et al., 1996). This virus was originally called watermelon mosaic virus 1 (WMV1) but today is considered to be the W strain of PRSV. PRSV-W should not be confused with what had been called watermelon mosaic virus 2 (WMV2) but is now simply WMV (Lecoq and Desblez, 2009). PSRV has a different host range, different serological properties and no sequence homology with WMV. As with other mosaic viruses, leaves of infected plants become mottled and vines are stunted (Brunt et al., 1996).

**Squash mosaic virus (SqMV)**

SqMV is a Comovirus and was first reported in California in 1956 (Brunt et al., 1996). SqMV is probably distributed worldwide. This virus can infect and produce symptoms on several commercially grown cucurbits, including *C. maxima*, *C. moschata* and *C. pepo*. It can also infect some plants in the Leguminosae and the Chenopodiaceae. The virus is insect-transmitted in a non-persistent fashion by several insects (*Acalymma vitatta*, *Acalymma thiemei*, *Diabrotica undecimpunctata*, *Diabrotica bivittula*, *Epilachna chrysomalina*, *Epilachna paenulata*) (Brunt et al., 1996). In nature it is spread principally by the spotted cucumber beetle (*Diabrotica undecipunctata*) and striped cucumber beetle (*Acalymma vitatta*). The virus can also be transmitted by seed and by mechanical inoculation.

**Watermelon mosaic virus (WMV)**

In the 1990s, this Potyvirus was referred to as WMV2 to distinguish it from WMV1. Today, WMV1 is considered to be the W strain of papaya ringspot virus (PRSV), while WMV2 is referred to as WMV (Lecoq and Desblez, 2009). WMV has worldwide distribution and is a major viral pathogen of cucurbit crops (Adlerz et al., 1983; Provvidenti, Gonsalves and Humaydan, 1984; Davis and Mizuki, 1987; Chala, Harrison and Halliwell, 1987). This virus can infect and produce symptoms on all commercially grown cucurbits. It can also infect several leguminous and malvaceous species. The virus is aphid-transmitted in a non-persistent fashion. As the host range for WMV is not limited to cucurbits, overwintering of this virus in several leguminous species such as clover can occur. Mixed infections of cucurbits with CMV and WMV are common. WMV causes mosaic and mottle diseases of cantaloupe, cucumber, pumpkin, squash and watermelon and reduces fruit production and quality in squash and other cucurbits (Thomas, 1971; Greber, 1978). Leaves of infected plants become mottled and vines are stunted.

**Zucchini yellow mosaic virus (ZYMV)**

This Potyvirus is a recently described virus disease of cucurbits, first identified in Europe in 1981. The virus is serologically related to, and has characteristics very similar to, WMV (Brunt et al., 1996). ZYMV is also serologically related to bean yellow mosaic virus (Brunt et al., 1996). Like WMV, the ZYMV host range is not limited to cucurbits. The known host range of ZYMV includes *Cucurbita pepo*, *Cucumis melo*, *Cucumis sativus* and *Citrullus lanatus* (ANU, 2005). ZYMV is transmitted in a non-persistent manner by aphid transmission (Lecoq, Pitrat and Clement, 1981; Lisa et al., 1981; Adlerz et al., 1983; Purcifull et al., 1984; Dodds et al., 1984; Adlerz, 1987). It can also be transmitted vertically through seed. Its effects are severe leaf mosaic,
yellowing and eventually shoestring symptoms in the leaves. The fruits are stunted, twisted and deformed by raised protuberances. In cultivated crops, plants cease producing marketable fruits within a week or two of infection. On a given cucurbit host, ZYMV usually causes more severe symptoms than WMV, and there is some indication that WMV may make the plant more susceptible to ZYMV (Xu et al., 2004). Leaves of infected plants become mottled and vines are stunted.

*Tobacco ringspot virus (TRSV)*

TRSV is a Nepovirus and considered a minor cucurbit virus. It is primarily nematode transmitted (*Xiphinema americanum*) but can also be transmitted nonspecifically by insects such as aphids (*Aphis gossypii*) and mites (*Tetranychus* ss). Melons and cucumbers are the cucurbits most commonly affected by this virus, but it has been found in the *Cucurbita* (Jossey and Badadoost, 2006). It has been reported to spread in North America and China, and has been reported in Australia, Germany, New Zealand and the United Kingdom (Brunt et al., 1996).

*Tomato ringspot virus (ToRSV)*

ToRSV is a Nepovirus and is considered a minor cucurbit virus. It causes severe damage to summer and winter squash, but shows only mild symptoms in the other cultivated cucurbits. Like TRSV, ToRSV is nematode transmitted (*Xiphinema americanum*) and can overwinter on many weed species without expressing symptoms (Brunt et al., 1996). It has been reported in Australia, Bulgaria, Chile, China, Germany, Italy, Japan, Korea, New Zealand, North America, Peru, Puerto Rico, Turkey and the former Soviet Union (Brunt et al., 1996).

*Clover yellow vein virus (CYVV)*

CYVV is a Potyvirus and considered a minor cucurbit virus. It is aphid-transmitted in a non-persistent manner and can infect summer squash. Infected plants mostly show chlorotic or necrotic local lesions. It is probably distributed worldwide (wherever white clover occurs). It was previously considered to be the severe strain of bean yellow mosaic virus (Brunt et al, 1996).

*Fungi*

The most economically important fungal diseases of the *Cucurbita* are the powdery mildews (OMAFRA, 2011).

*Cladosporium cucumerinum*

*C. cucumerinum* causes a disease known as scab or gummosis. The fungus can attack any aboveground portion of the plant, including the leaves, petioles, stems and fruits. Scab produces its greatest damage when infection occurs on the fruit. Infected fruit appears to have small spots or sunken areas similar to insect stings. A sticky substance may ooze from the infected area, especially on fleshy fruit. Soft-rotting bacteria may invade these lesions resulting in foul-smelling decay (Strider and Konsler, 1965; Agrios, 1997; American Phytopathological Society, 2011; OMAFRA, 2011).
Choanephora cucurbitarum

This fungus causes a whisker-like fungal growth that causes blossoms and fruits to rot. The disease is commonly referred to as blossom blight or wet rot (Agrios, 1997; American Phytopathological Society, 2011; OMAFRA, 2011).

Erysiphe cichoracearum

*E. cichoracearum* causes a disease known as powdery mildew. Whitish, talcum-like, powdery fungal growth develops on both upper and lower leaf surfaces and on petioles and stems. Symptoms usually develop first on older leaves, on shaded lower leaves and on upper leaf surface. Infected leaves usually die, and plants senesce prematurely reducing photosynthesis, thereby reducing yield (Agrios, 1997; Jahn, Munger and McCreight, 2002; American Phytopathological Society, 2011; OMAFRA, 2011).

Fusarium oxysporum

*F. oxysporum* is soil borne and causes a damping-off disease; i.e. it causes young seedlings to wilt and die or not emerge at all. It is occasionally found in cucurbits (Agrios, 1997; American Phytopathological Society, 2011; OMAFRA, 2011).

Phytophthora capsici

*P. capsici* causes a blight resulting in leaf spots and fruit rot, seedling damping-off and possible total crop loss. Stem and leaf petiole lesions appear as light to dark brown, water-soaked and irregular in shape, eventually becoming dry, brittle and papery. Older plants with root infections may suddenly wilt. In fruit, the symptoms begin as small water-soaked lesions in the rind, which enlarge quickly and become a soft sunken area covered with white fungal growth (Agrios, 1997; Lopez, Brune and Henz, 1999; American Phytopathological Society, 2011; OMAFRA 2011).

Plectosporium tabacinum

*P. tabacinum*, also known as *Microdochium tabinum*, causes a blight characterised by the production of light tan to “bleached” sunken, spindle-shaped lesions, primarily on the main stems, petioles main leaf veins and peduncles and sometimes on leaf blades. On fruit, the fungus causes white, tan or silver russeting on the upper surface. Lesions often coalesce to form a continuous dry, scabby surface (Agrios, 1997; American Phytopathological Society, 2011; OMAFRA, 2011).

Podosphaera xanthii

*P. xanthii*, also known as *Podosphaera fusca*, is the main causal agent of cucurbit powdery mildew and one of the most important limiting factors for cucurbit production worldwide. Although great efforts have been invested in disease control, many basic aspects of the biology of this pathogen remain unknown. Powdery mildews are characterised by spots or patches of white to grayish, talcum powder-like growth. The disease is most commonly observed on the upper sides of the leaves. It also affects the bottom sides of the leaves, buds, stems, flowers and young fruit. Infected leaves may become distorted, turn yellow with small patches of green, and fall prematurely. Infected buds may fail to open (Agrios, 1997; Jahn, Munger and McCreight, 2002; American Phytopathological Society, 2011; OMAFRA, 2011).
**Pseudoperonospora cubensis**

The symptoms caused by *P. cubensis* are almost exclusively confined to the leaves, although there are rare reports of sporulation on fruits and floral parts. The first evidence of infection is small, slightly chlorotic to bright yellow areas on the upper leaf surface; the colour is less vivid on the lower leaf surface. As lesions expand, they often coalesce, resulting in necrosis of the infected leaves so that in a few days the entire leaf is dead. This disease is commonly referred to as downy mildew (Agrios, 1997; Lebeda and Wedrlechner, 2004; American Phytopathological Society, 2011; OMAFRA, 2011).

**Pythium spp.**

These soil-borne micro-organisms can cause damping-off, with young seedlings wilting or not emerging at all (Agrios, 1997; American Phytopathological Society, 2011; OMAFRA, 2011).

**Sphaerotheca fuliginea**

*S. fuliginea* causes a powdery mildew wherein whitish, talcum-like, powdery fungal growth develops on both upper and lower leaf surfaces and on petioles and stems. Symptoms usually develop first on older leaves, on shaded lower leaves and on the upper leaf surface. Infected leaves usually die, and plants senesce prematurely reducing photosynthesis, thereby reducing yield (Agrios, 1997; American Phytopathological Society, 2011; OMAFRA, 2011).

**Bacteria**

*Erwinia tracheiphila* causes bacterial wilt. It is spread by the stripped cucumber beetle, *Diabrotica undecipunctata*, and the spotted cucumber beetle, *Acalymma vittata*, and controlled by eliminating cucumber beetles. The bacteria live in the digestive tract of the striped and spotted cucumber beetles. The beetles defecate frass as they feed and *E. tracheiphila* invades the plant through the wounds caused by the feeding beetles (Sasu et al., 2010).

**Insects**

A number of insects can attack *Cucurbita* species. Some of the insects listed below are cosmopolitan and have a worldwide distribution, e.g. *Myzus persicae* and *Aphis gossypii*, while others are more limited in their distribution, e.g. *Anasa tristis*.

**Aphididae**

Aphid species most commonly found on *Cucurbita* include: *Aphis gossypii*, the melon aphid; *Myzus persicae*, the peach aphid; *Aphis fabae*, the bean aphid; and *Aphis craccivora*, the cowpea aphid.

Aphids extract sap from the terminal leaves and stems of plants. They may also feed on developing pods causing them to shrink or become malformed. Their feeding can result in deformation, wilting or death of the plant depending on populations and size of the plant. Saliva injected during feeding can also cause deformation of plant tissue. While aphids can cause significant damage on their own, they frequently present another concern: the transmission of several plant viruses.
Coleoptera

Beetle species most commonly found on *Cucurbita* species include: the striped cucumber beetle, *Diabrotica undecipunctata*, and the spotted cucumber beetle, *Acalyyma vittata*. Beetles such as the palestriped flea beetle, *Systena blanda*, can also attack plants of the *Cucurbita*.

Cucumber beetles (the striped cucumber beetle, *Diabrotica undecipunctata*, and the spotted cucumber beetle, *Acalyyma vittata*) are common pests on various members of the Cucurbitaceae. The name stems from the tendency of these beetles to be found on cucurbits. These coleopterans are among the first insects to attack cucurbits as the plants emerge. The spotted cucumber beetle is about 0.25 inches long, yellow to greenish-yellow with 12 black spots on its back and a black head. They overwinter in the adult stage near plants and in debris. Some migrate south and have been known to travel 500 miles in 3-4 days. The larvae are yellowish-white with a brown head and a brownish patch on top of the last body segment. The larvae feed on plant roots. When there is ample moisture, they will feed on the flesh of the fruit, especially fruits lying on the soil surface. Whereas larvae are root feeders, adults are primarily pollen feeders and do not damage the leaves of cucurbits to a significant extent (Krysan and Smith, 1987; Eben and Barbercheck, 1996; Gámez-Virués and Eben, 2005). The striped cucumber beetle is pale white-yellow to orange with a black head. Its wings have three black stripes running their entire length. Other than immediate stand loss, and damage to leaves, stems, blossoms and fruit, damage is incurred from the beetles’ ability to carry the pathogen *Erwinia tracheiphila*, which is carried in the insects’ body and transmitted to the plant as the beetles feed (OMAFRA, 2011).

The palestriped flea beetle (*Systena blanda*) is a general feeder attacking a multitude of plants. Larvae can be found feeding on roots. Adults attack the foliage of plants leaving small round holes.

The squash-ladybird (*Epilachna borealis*) is a black-spotted, yellow hemispherical species of wide geographical distribution. The adult beetles hibernate and lay their eggs on leaves in the spring. The yellow, spiny larvae chew circular holes in the leaves. A closely related species is *Epilachna varvestis*, the Mexican bean beetle. The Mexican bean beetle resembles the ladybird; it is coppery coloured with 16 black dots in 3 rows down its back. Its larvae are orange or yellow, humped-backed and fuzzy. Both feed on the lower surface of leaves, skeletonise the leaf.

Lepidoptera

The term “cutworm” applies to the larvae of various moth species in the Noctuidae family. Cutworms are general feeders and attack a wide range of plants, including the cucurbits. These cucurbit pests include the black cutworm (*Agrotis ipsilon*), the granulate cutworm (*Feltia subterranea*) and the spotted cutworm (*Amathes c-nigrum*). These lepidopterans may injure many types of vegetables and sometimes cereals. Larvae hide under clods or in tracks of the soil by day and feed at night, cutting young plants near the ground or feeding on the foliage. They cause greatest damage to seedlings and newly set plants, resulting in stand loss. Cutworms overwinter as larvae or pupae, depending on the species.

“Melonworm” and “pickleworm” are the common names of the larvae of two moth species in the family Pyralidae, with the name melonworm applying to the species *Diaphania hyalinata* and the name pickleworm applying to the species
Diaphania nitidalis. The larvae of these lepidopterans are restricted to feeding on the cucurbits, with both summer and winter squash being particularly favoured hosts. Melonworms feed mainly on the foliage, being primarily a leaf feeder which seldom feeds on the fruits. The pickleworm, in contrast, does feed on the fruits of squash, and can cause serious damage. Early in the season, pickleworms bore into the stems and terminal buds. Later in the season, pickleworms bore into the fruit from the side next to the ground. After feeding for about two weeks, the larva moves out of the fruit to the leaves, where it will spend seven to ten days as a pupa inside a cocoon. Pickleworm is highly dispersive, e.g. in the United States it overwinters in south Florida, spreading northward each spring. The pickleworm has been reported from Canada southward to South America.

“Squash vine borer” (Melitta satyriniformis) is a diurnal species of sesiid moth that attacks wild and cultivated varieties of Cucurbita. The moth of this lepidopteran resembles a large wasp without the stinging apparatus. Females deposit eggs near the base of the plant about the time the first planting begins to emerge until bloom. A small larva emerges and enters the stem of the plant. The larva then feeds inside the stem and eventually causes it to die. As the worm feeds, it pushes its excrement out of the entrance hole. The worm will eventually exit the stem and enter the soil to pupate (OMAFRA, 2011).

Hemiptera

“Squash bugs” (Anasa tristis) are Hemiptera and colloquially called “squash bugs” in North America because some of the species are pests of squash plants and other cucurbits. Squash bugs are quite mobile and can move easily among plants within a field and later move to late planted fields. The insects spend most of their time within the plant canopy, mainly around the stems and on the underside of the leaves. Both nymphs and adults feed by sucking sap from the plant. The adults often congregate near the base of the plant and young nymphs concentrate on the leaf where they hatch and then migrate to other plant parts. Squash bugs can increase in numbers very rapidly and, in high numbers, can cause plant wilting. This insect injects a toxin into the plant while feeding and this toxin results in wilting (OMAFRA, 2011).

Whitefly (Bemisia tabaci) is reported on all continents except Antarctica. Over 900 plant hosts are recorded and it reportedly transmits 111 virus species. Most of these whitefly transmitted diseases are begomoviruses, although whiteflies are also vectors of criniviruses, ipomoviruses (Adkins et al., 2006), potyvirus,orradoviruses and carlaviruses (Markham et al., 1994; Navas-Castillo, Fiallo-Olive and Sanchez-Campos, 2011). Its small size belies its ability to move large distances (Ellsworth and Martinez-Carillo, 2001; ISSG Global Invasive Species Database, 2011). B. tabaci is phytophagous and has been reported to produce silvering of leaves in Cucurbita (Schuster, Kring and Price, 1991).

Diptera

Vegetable leafminer (Liriomyza spp): Adult leafminers are small flies with a small wing length. Adult females puncture the upper surfaces of leaves with the ovipositor for feeding and egg laying. Adults feed on fluids that exude from the wounds. Eggs are laid singly in separate leaf punctures and hatch within two to seven days. Larvae feed on the leaf mesophyll for 6-12 days. Full-grown larvae slit the leaf epidermis, exit the leaf, fall to the ground and pupate in the soil. Losses in cucurbits due to these dipterans are
II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CURCURBITA SPECIES) – 129

difficult to quantify. The mining activity of these insects may cause photosynthetic reduction. High populations of leafminers can cause leaf distortion and premature leaf abscission. Infestation may also predispose the plant to other foliar diseases. Adult leafminers may be able to transmit viruses, because of their feeding habits.

**Spider mite**

Spider mites (*Tetranychus urticae*) are arachnids. Spider mites feed by sucking the contents from individual leaf cells. The feeding of one mite is not damaging but mites are usually present in huge numbers. Mite populations explode during hot, dry weather as they reproduce very rapidly. A female lays an average of 100 eggs and most eggs hatch within 3 days. Mites can complete a life cycle in 5 days when the temperature is 75°F or above.

**Biotechnological developments**

**Genetic modification**

As noted earlier in this chapter, the cultivated *Cucurbita* species are important food sources worldwide. Although some of the wild *Cucurbita* species have been reported to display resistance to viral disease, the cultivated *Cucurbita* display far lower levels of resistance. This is particularly true of the most economically important of the *Cucurbita*, *C. pepo*, and diseases caused by viruses can result in large economic losses (Provvidenti, 1990). The presence of these viruses has been reported in nearly all countries and territories where commercial crops of *C. pepo* are produced: Algeria, Australia, Brazil, Bulgaria, Canada, China, Costa Rica, the Czech Republic, the Dominican Republic, Egypt, England, France, Germany, Greece, Guadeloupe, Guam, Japan, Bailiwick of Jersey, Jordan, Honduras, Islamic Republic of Iran, Israel, Italy, Lebanon, Madagascar, Malaysia, Martinique, Mauritius, Mayotte, Mexico, Morocco, Nepal, the Netherlands, New Caledonia, New Zealand, Nigeria, Pakistan, Portugal, Puerto Rico, Saudi Arabia, Singapore, Spain, Sudan, Swaziland, Syrian Arab Republic, Chinese Taipei, Tunisia, Turkey, the United States, Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela and Yemen (Desbiez and Lecoq, 1997).

The primary means of controlling these diseases is control of the insect vectors, a methodology presenting a less than perfect solution. Due to the importance of the cultivated species affected by these viruses, and the difficulty in controlling spread of the viruses, the use of biotechnological techniques to develop resistant varieties has offered an alternative, successful approach. *Cucurbita pepo* cultivars containing the transgenes ZW20 (OECD Unique Identifier SEM-0ZW20-7) and CZW3 (OECD Unique Identifier SEM-0CZW3-2), have been commercially available since the mid-1990s in the United States. The ZW20 transgene confers resistance to the zucchini yellow mosaic virus (ZYMV) and the watermelon mosaic virus (WMV), both members of the potyvirus group. The CZW3 transgene confers resistance to ZYMV and WMV and to the cucumber mosaic virus (CMV), the type member of the cucumovirus group. Protection against these viruses is provided by insertion of DNA sequences encoding the coat protein gene of the various viruses into the *C. pepo* genome. Analysis shows that for both ZW20 and CZW3, a single copy of the transgene has inserted at a single site in the *C. pepo* genome (USDA, 1994). Although it is now known that protection occurs through interfering RNA mechanism (RNAi), expression of the transgenes was specifically engineered into the *C. pepo* cultivars and is controlled by the 35S promoter of the cauliflower mosaic virus (CaMV) to allow constitutive expression of the various coat proteins.
Other studies involving Cucurbita

Several species of Cucurbita have been used in classic studies of plant biochemistry (Frisse, Pimenta and Lange, 2003). *Cucurbita pepo* has long been used in studies of purine synthesis (Lovatt, 1983), amino acid transport and beta oxidation of fatty acids (Bush and Langston-Unkefer, 1988). This type of research has continued and, with use of molecular tools, the expression of the ascorbic acid oxidase has been studied (Lin and Varner, 1991), and cDNA from an anionic peroxidase has been obtained and its expression analysed in different kinds of tissues (Carpin et al., 1999). A chromosomal homologue to the aminocyclopropane-carboxylate synthase has also been cloned and sequenced (Huang et al., 1991).

Modern biotechnology has supported an in-depth study of infection resistance mechanisms by CMV (Havelda and Maule, 2000), and identified the genes that are systemically induced by attacks of the white flies *Bemisia argentifolii* and *B. tabaci* (van de Ven et al., 2000).

In addition, recent research has shown promising results for the use of the certain cucurbitacins or cucurbitacin analogues to arrest the cell cycle in tumor cells and induce apoptosis (Sun et al., 2005; Zhang et al., 2010; Boykin et al., 2011).

References


II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CUCURBITA SPECIES) – 131


Azurdia-Pérez, C.A. and M. González-Salán (1986), Informe Final del Proyecto de Recolección de Algunos Cultivos Nativos de Guatemala, Facultad de Agronomía, Universidad de San Carlos de Guatemala (USAC), Instituto de Ciencia y Tecnología Agrícolas (ICTA) and Consejo Internacional de Recursos Fitogenéticos (CIRF), IBPGR, Guatemala City, pp. 256.


II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CURCURBITA SPECIES) – 133


II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CURCUBITA SPECIES) – 139


National Gardening Association (2009), The Impact of Home and Community Gardening in America. Harris Interactive, Inc.


II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CURCURBITA SPECIES) – 141


II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CURCURBITA SPECIES) – 143


Sowls, L.K. (1997), Javelinas and Other Peccaries: Their Biology, Management, and Use, Texas A&M University Press, College Station, Texas.


Systax Database at the University of Ulm, www.biologie.uni-ulm.de/systax (accessed October 2011).


II.2. SQUASHES, PUMPKINS, ZUCCHINIS, GOURDS (CUCURBITA SPECIES) – 145


Annex 2.A1
List of taxonomic names of various Cucurbita

The primary source of the information in Table 2.A1.1 is “The Plant List” at: www.theplantlist.org.

The Plant List is the result of collaboration between the Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew and Missouri Botanical Garden. The collaboration between these groups enabled the creation of the list by combining multiple checklist data sets held by these institutions and other collaborators. Based on information from these sources, The Plant List provides the name agreed by the collaborators to be an “accepted” name, as well as synonyms by which that species has been known. It also contains “unresolved” names for which the contributing data sources did not contain sufficient information to decide whether they were “accepted” names or synonyms.

Other sources are also available, and information from these sources has also been incorporated: e.g. USDA-ARS Germplasm Resources Information Network at: www.ars-grin.gov.

The rightmost column of Table 2.A1.1 enumerates the names of cultivars offered as examples in the chapter in relation to the cultivated Cucurbita species.

The reader should be aware that botanists over time have applied some 400 names at various taxonomic ranks to the huge range of diversity observed in the Cucurbita (Nee, 1990).

Table 2.A1.1. List of taxonomic names of various Cucurbita

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Names used preferentially in text</th>
<th>Synonyms</th>
<th>Associated names found in literature</th>
<th>Varietal names in text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C. argyrosperma Huber</td>
<td>C. argyrosperma var. callicarpa</td>
<td>C. palmeri</td>
<td>Green striped cushaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. argyrosperma ssp. argyrosperma</td>
<td>C. argyrosperma var. palmeri</td>
<td>C. sororia</td>
<td>White cushaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. argyrosperma ssp. sororia</td>
<td>C. kellyana</td>
<td>Magdalena striped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. argyrosperma var. stenosperma</td>
<td></td>
<td>Papago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. palmeri</td>
<td></td>
<td>Japanese pie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. sororia</td>
<td></td>
<td>Silver seed gourd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. kellyana</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. digitata</td>
<td>None recorded</td>
<td>C. cordata</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C. palmata</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C. californica</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C. cylindrata</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. ecuardorensis</td>
<td>None recorded</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. ficifolia Bouche</td>
<td>C. ficifolia f. leucosperma</td>
<td>C. melanosperma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. ficifolia f. melanosperma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. ficifolia var. mexicana</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. foetidissima Kunth</td>
<td>C. foetidissima var. foetidissima</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. foetidissima var. scabridifolia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. galeottii</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. lundelliana</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. maxima Duchesne</td>
<td>C. maxima ssp. maxima</td>
<td>C. andreana</td>
<td>Delicious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. maxima var. triloba</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hubbard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. maxima var. turgida</td>
<td></td>
<td>Buttercup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. maxima var. zapallito</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mammoth whale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. maxima var. zipinka</td>
<td></td>
<td>French turban</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2.A1.1. List of taxonomic names of various *Cucurbita* (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Names used preferentially in text</th>
<th>Synonyms</th>
<th>Associated names found in literature</th>
<th>Varietal names in text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>C. moschata</em> Duchesne</td>
<td><em>C. moschata</em> var. <em>argyrosperma</em></td>
<td><em>C. moschata</em> var. <em>columbiana</em></td>
<td>Butternut squash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>C. moschata</em> var. <em>meloniformis</em></td>
<td><em>C. moschata</em> f. <em>yokohamana</em></td>
<td>Golden cushaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. okeechobeensis</em> (Small) L.H. Bailey</td>
<td><em>C. okeechobeensis</em> ssp. <em>martinezi</em></td>
<td><em>C. martinezi</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. okeechobeensis ssp. martinezi (L.H. Bailey) T.C. Andres &amp; G.P. Nabhan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. pedatifolia</em> L.H. Bailey</td>
<td><em>C. moorei</em></td>
<td><em>C. moorei</em></td>
<td>Black zucchini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo L.</td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>akoda</em></td>
<td>C. fraterna</td>
<td>Fordhook bush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo ssp. ovifera (L.) D.S. Decker</td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>americana</em></td>
<td>C. texana</td>
<td>Connecticutt field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo ssp. pepo</td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>condensia</em></td>
<td>C. pepo L. var. <em>cylindrica</em></td>
<td>Table queen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo ssp. ovifera var. texana (Scheele) D.S. Decker</td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>fitropulposa</em></td>
<td>C. pepo L. var. <em>clypeata</em></td>
<td>Cherokee roaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>fibropulposa</em></td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>flogra</em></td>
<td>C. pepo L. var. <em>fastigata</em></td>
<td>Orange ball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>georgica</em></td>
<td>C. pepo ssp. <em>gumala</em></td>
<td>C. pepo L. var. <em>recticollis</em></td>
<td>Striped pear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo ssp. <em>gumala</em></td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>kintogwa</em></td>
<td>C. pepo L. var. <em>turbinata</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>maxima</em></td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>medullosa</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>melopepo</em></td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>melopepo</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>moschata</em></td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>moschata</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>ovifera</em></td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>ovifera</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>ozarkana</em></td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>ozarkana</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>toonas</em></td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>toonas</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>torticollis</em></td>
<td>C. pepo var. <em>torticollis</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. radicans</td>
<td>C. gracilior</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source:* Adapted from “The Plant List” (2011).

### References


## Annex 2.A2

### Horticultural types in *Cucurbita* species

#### Table 2.A2.1. Horticultural types in *Cucurbita* species

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Typical cultivars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>C. argyrosperma</em></td>
<td>Cushaw</td>
<td>Striped, green or white hard rind. Pear shaped or with a straight or curved neck.</td>
<td>Green striped cushaw; Japanese pie; Tennessee sweet potato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. maxima</em></td>
<td>Banana</td>
<td>Elongated fruit pointed at the ends. Orange or pink moderately hard rind.</td>
<td>Banana; Pink banana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delicious</td>
<td>Top shaped. Orange or green hard rind.</td>
<td>Delicious; Golden delicious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hubbard</td>
<td>Round at the middle tapering at each end. Blue, orange or green, hard warty rind.</td>
<td>Hubbard; Blue hubbard; Golden hubbard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Marrow</td>
<td>Lemon-shaped with orange hard rind.</td>
<td>Boston marrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Show</td>
<td>Very large globular, sutured, light orange fruit. Moderately hard rind.</td>
<td>Atlantic giant; Big Max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turban</td>
<td>Turban shaped with a large button. Hard rind.</td>
<td>Turks turban; Warren; Turks cap</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. moschata</em></td>
<td>Tropical pumpkin</td>
<td>Round, oblate or irregular shape. Green, buff, yellow or piebald hard rind.</td>
<td>La Primera; Seminole; Solar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cheese</td>
<td>Variable shape, smooth, hard, buff-coloured hard rind.</td>
<td>Dickinson; Kentucky field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crookneck</td>
<td>Long, curved or straight neck. Smooth, hard rind, usually buff.</td>
<td>Golden crookneck; Walthan butternut; Zenith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bell</td>
<td>Bell-shaped. Orange flesh. Tan hard rind.</td>
<td>Seminole; Upper ground sweet potato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>C. pepo</em></td>
<td>Acorn</td>
<td>Acorn-shaped grooved fruit. Dark green, orange or white hard rind.</td>
<td>Heart of gold; Table ace; Tay belle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cocozelle</td>
<td>Long, cylindrical, bulbous blossom end. Striped or variegated green soft rind.</td>
<td>Cocozelle; Long cocozelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crookneck</td>
<td>Elongated with narrow, curved neck. Yellow soft rind.</td>
<td>Dixie; Yellow summer crookneck; Supersett</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ornamental gourd</td>
<td>Variously shaped and coloured. Smooth or warty hard rind.</td>
<td>Orange ball; Crown of thorns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pumpkin</td>
<td>Large, round, oval oblate shape. Mostly orange, sometimes white relatively soft rind.</td>
<td>Connecticutt field; Howden Jack-be-little; Small sugar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scallop</td>
<td>Flattened with scalloped margins. White, yellow, green or bicoloured soft rind.</td>
<td>Peter pan; Sunburst; White bush scallop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straightneck</td>
<td>Long, cylindrical, yellow soft rind.</td>
<td>Enterprise; Goldbar; Multiplic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetable marrow</td>
<td>Short, tapered, cylindrical. Light green.</td>
<td>Clarita; Goya; Zahra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zucchini</td>
<td>Uniformly cylindrical. Green or yellow to gray soft rind.</td>
<td>Dividend; Revenue; Spineless beauty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some of the types listed in Table 2.A2.1 are not grown in production agriculture. For example, “Show” pumpkins are grown for competition in the heaviest fruit contests held in various parts of the United States. The 2000 winner weighed in at 517 kilograms. Other types that are regionally important and of historical interest are certain cushaw and vegetable marrow squash. These cultivars can be bought commercially at concerns dedicated to the preservation of heirloom varieties (e.g. [www.sandhillpreservation.com](http://www.sandhillpreservation.com)).
Also, it should be noted that this annex offers examples only as a means of illustrating the types and varieties that can be associated with the various *Cucurbita* species. Paris (1989), for example, notes that for *C. pepo* alone, hundreds or perhaps thousands of named cultivars exist.

**Reference**

Chapter 3.

Brassica crops (Brassica spp.)

This chapter deals with the biology of Brassica species which comprise oilseed rape, turnip rape, mustards, cabbages and other oilseed crops. The chapter contains information for use during the risk/safety regulatory assessment of genetically engineered varieties intended to be grown in the environment (biosafety). It includes elements of taxonomy for a range of Brassica species, their centres of origin and distribution, reproductive biology, genetics, hybridisation and introgression, crop production, interactions with other organisms, pests and pathogens, breeding methods and biotechnological developments, and an annex on common pathogens and pests.

The OECD gratefully acknowledges the contribution of Dr. R.K. Downey (Canada), the primary author, without whom this chapter could not have been written.

The chapter was prepared by the OECD Working Group on the Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology, with Canada as the lead country. It updates and completes the original publication on the biology of Brassica napus issued in 1997, and was initially issued in December 2012. Data from USDA Foreign Agricultural Service and FAOSTAT have been updated.
Introduction

The plants within the family Brassicaceae constitute one of the world’s most economically important plant groups. They range from noxious weeds to leaf and root vegetables to oilseed and condiment crops. The cole vegetables are perhaps the best known group. Indeed, the *Brassica* vegetables are a dietary staple in every part of the world with the possible exception of the tropics. The Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations estimates that world commercial production of cabbages, cauliflowers, broccolis and other *Brassica* vegetables in 2013 was over 93 million tonnes from about 3.7 million hectares, with a 2013 farm gate value of some USD 31 billion (FAOSTAT, 2013). These figures do not include the root vegetables or the production from kitchen gardens.

Less well known are the *Brassica* oilseed crops that annually occupy over 34 million hectares of the world’s agricultural lands (FAOSTAT, 2013). Because of their ability to survive and grow at relatively low temperatures, they are one of the few edible oil sources that can be successfully produced in cool temperate regions. This characteristic makes them well adapted to cultivation at high elevations and as winter crops in the subtropics. In temperate regions, oilseed rape (*Brassica napus*) and turnip rape (*Brassica rapa*) predominate, while in the subtropics of Asia, Indian mustard or rai (*Brassica juncea*) is the major oil source. Among all the commodities moving in world trade, only petroleum has a greater value than vegetable oils (United States Census Bureau, n.d.; United Nations, n.d.). In total, *Brassica* oilseeds provide 15% of the world’s edible vegetable oil and are the third most important source of edible oil after soybean and palm (Table 3.1).

Table 3.1. *World production of edible vegetable oils, averages 1996-2000 to 2011-15*  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crop</th>
<th>1996-2000 (MMt)</th>
<th>2001-05 (MMt)</th>
<th>2006-10 (MMt)</th>
<th>2011-152 (MMt)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Soybean</td>
<td>22.4</td>
<td>29.8</td>
<td>36.8</td>
<td>46.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palm</td>
<td>18.3</td>
<td>28.2</td>
<td>40.8</td>
<td>58.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Rape</em>/<em>mustard</em></td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>13.7</td>
<td>19.1</td>
<td>25.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunflower</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>14.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groundnut</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cottonseed</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others1</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>77.3</strong></td>
<td><strong>98.6</strong></td>
<td><strong>128.6</strong></td>
<td><strong>168.7</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes: 1. Others include olive, coconut and palm kernel. 2. This column was added in January 2016.

Source: After USDA Foreign Agricultural Service (2015).

Species or taxonomic group

*Classification and nomenclature*

The family Brassicaceae (= Cruciferae) contains over 338 genera and 3709 species (Al-Shehbaz, Beilstein and Kellogg, 2006; Warwick, Francis and Al-Shehbaz, 2006). The species of greatest interest to those concerned with genetically modified crops are given in Table 3.2 with their chromosome number, genome identification and common English name(s).
II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – SAFETY ASSESSMENT OF TRANSGENIC ORGANISMS: OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS, VOLUME 5 © OECD 2016

Table 3.2. Nomenclature and genome relationships of cultivated Brassica species and related genera

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species name</th>
<th>Common synonym</th>
<th>Haploid chromosome number and genome</th>
<th>Common name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brassica rapa L.</td>
<td>B. campestris L.</td>
<td>10 AA</td>
<td>Summer turnip rape, canola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsp. campestris (L.) A.R. Clapham</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsp. oleifera (DC.) Metzg.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Winter turnip rape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsp. campestris (L.) A.R. Clapham</td>
<td>subsp. eu-campestris (L.) Olsson</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bird or wild turnip rape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsp. trilocularis (Roxb.) Hanelt</td>
<td>subsp. sarson (Prain) Denford</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yellow and brown Sarson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsp. dichotoma (Roxb.) Hanelt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Toria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsp. chinensis (L.) Hanelt</td>
<td>B. chinensis L.</td>
<td>Pak-choi or bok choy, Chinese mustard, Chinese broccoli, Gai Lan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsp. pekinensis (Lour.) Hanelt</td>
<td>B. pekinensis var. parachinsis (L.H. Bailey)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Pe-tsai, Chinese cabbage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsp. nipposinica (L.H. Bailey) Hanelt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Curled mustard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsp. Rapa</td>
<td>B. rapa L.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Turnip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brassica tournefortii Gouan</td>
<td>10 TT</td>
<td>Wild turnip</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brassica nigra (L.) W.D.J. Koch</td>
<td>8 BB</td>
<td>Black mustard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brassica oleracea L.</td>
<td>9 CC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var. vinidia L.</td>
<td>var. acephala DC.</td>
<td>Kale, collard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var. botrytis L.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cauliflower and broccoli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var. capitata L.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cabbage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var. gongylodes L.</td>
<td>var. caulorapa Pasq.</td>
<td>Kohirabi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var. gemmifera (DC.) Zenker</td>
<td></td>
<td>Brussels sprouts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var. italicana Plenck.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Broccoli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var. oleracea</td>
<td>subsp. sylvestris (L.) Miller</td>
<td>Wild cabbage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsp. alboglabra L.H. Bailey</td>
<td>B. alboglabra L.H. Bailey</td>
<td>Chinese kale, kailan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brassica juncea (L.) Czern.</td>
<td>18 AABB</td>
<td>Brown and oriental mustard, rai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brassica napus L.</td>
<td>19 AACC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var. napus</td>
<td>subsp. oleifera (Delile) Sinskaya</td>
<td>Summer oilseed rape, canola</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var. napus</td>
<td>B. napus f. biennis (Schübl. &amp; G. Martens) Thell.</td>
<td>Winter oilseed rape, winter canola</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var. pabularia (DC.) Rchb.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rape-kale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var. napobrassica (L.) Rchb.</td>
<td>subsp. rapifera (Metzg.) Sinskaya</td>
<td>Rutabaga, swede</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brassica carinata A. Braun.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hirschfeldia incana (L.) Lagr.-Foss.</td>
<td>Brassica adpressa Boiss.</td>
<td>17 BBCC</td>
<td>Abyssinian mustard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinapis arvensis L.</td>
<td>B. kaber (DC.) L.C. Wheeler</td>
<td>7 HH</td>
<td>Hoary mustard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinapis alba L.</td>
<td>B. hirta Moench</td>
<td>9 SarSar</td>
<td>Wild mustard, charlock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raphanus sativus L.</td>
<td>12 SalSal</td>
<td>Yellow or white mustard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raphanus raphanistrum L.</td>
<td>9 RR</td>
<td>Radish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diploctis muralis (L.) DC.</td>
<td>9 RR</td>
<td>Wild radish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erucastrum gallicum (Willd.) O.E. Schulz</td>
<td>21 DD</td>
<td>Annual wall-rocket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eruca vesicaria (L.) Cav. subsp. sativa (Mill.) Thell.</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Dog mustard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eruca vesicaria (L.) Cav.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rocket salad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Modified from Yarnell (1956).

Early humans recognised the edible value of many of these species and through selection modified nearly every plant part to suit their needs. Such modifications include the compacting of the leaves to form a head, the root or stem to form a bulb, the inflorescence to form a curd or bunch and the seed to provide both oil and condiment. Species grown as oilseeds include B. napus, B. juncea, B. rapa and B. carinata. The vegetable Brassicaceae includes B. napus (rutabaga, Siberian kale), B. rapa (Chinese
cabbage, bok choy, pai-tsai, mizuna, Chinese mustard, broccoli raab and turnip),
*B. oleracea* (cabbage, broccoli, cauliflower, Brussels sprouts, kohlrabi, collards and kale),
*Raphanus sativus* (radish), *Lepidium sativum* (garden cress) and *Nasturtium officinale*
(watercress). The condiment crops include *B. juncea* (brown and oriental mustard),
*Sinapis alba* (yellow mustard), *B. nigra* (black mustard, but now little used), *Armoracia rusticana*
(horseradish) and *Eutrema japonica* (wasabi). There are a number of other
minor potherbs and salad vegetables. There are numerous weedy species, but those of
greatest interest with regard to cross-pollination with *B. napus* are *Sinapis arvensis* (wild
mustard or charlock), *Raphanus raphanistrum* (wild radish), *B. rapa* (wild or bird rape)
and *Hirschfeldia incana* (hoary mustard).

The genus *Brassica* is classified as follows:

Order Brassicales (= Cruciales)
Family Brassicaceae (= Cruciferae)
Tribe Brassiceae
Subtribe Brassicinae

*Genus Brassica* L.

The Brassicaceae family is comprised of 25 tribes with about an additional 5 under
study (Al-Shehbaz, Beilstein and Kellogg, 2006). The tribe Brassiceae, which contains
the genus *Brassica* and its wild relatives, is made up of 48 genera and approximately
240 species (Warwick and Hall, 2009). Warwick, Francis and Al-Shehbaz (2006) have
prepared a checklist and a current taxonomic database for the family on CD-ROM.
Also on CD-ROM are chromosome numbers from the literature for 68.6% of the genera
and 42.0% of the Brassicaceae species (Warwick and Al-Shebbaz, 2006; Warwick,
Francis and Gugel, 2009). The morphological traits that characterise the tribe are
conduplicate cotyledons (the radical enclosed by longitudinally folded cotyledons) and/or
transversely segmented fruits, that have seeds or rudimentary ovules in both segments
and, if present, only simple trichomes or hairs (Warwick and Hall, 2009). Modern
molecular studies have reinforced the monophyletic origin of the tribe.

Taxonomic research on the tribe conducted by Schulz (1936; 1919) established the
basic classification that is followed today, although it has been modified and criticised
(Al-Shehbaz, 1984). Within the tribe, Schulz (1936; 1919) recognised ten subtribes, with
Gómez-Campo (1980) later recommending a reduction to nine. Of the nine subtribes,
three are of greatest relevance to those concerned with *Brassica* crops, namely:
Brassicinae, Moricandiinae and Raphaninae. Within these subtribes *Brassica*, *Sinapis*,
*Diplotaxis*, *Erucastrum*, *Hirschfeldia*, *Eruca* and *Raphanus* are of primary interest.

The association and relationships among species within these subtribes have been
studied cytogenetically, chemically and morphologically (reviewed by Prakash and
Hinata, 1980; Takahata and Hinata, 1986, 1983) without providing a clear separation of
the subtribes and their genera. Recent molecular, morphological and hybridisation data
give strong support for a rearrangement of the three subtribes into two clades, namely, the
Rapa/Oleracea and the Nigra lineages (see the section on “Centres of origin and
ancestors”, as well as Warwick and Hall [2009] and references therein). Such a division is
also referred to in some publications as the *Brassica* and *Sinapis* lineages. It is expected
that the realignment of the species from the three subtribes into the two clades will
eventually require renaming of many of the species involved.
The difficulty in clearly separating the genera and species among the *Brassica* and their close relatives has arisen because similar plant forms and morphological traits occur in more than one genus or species. The difficulties encountered by early taxonomists in separating and classifying the various species and forms within the Brassicaceae family are well documented by Hedge (1976) and Prakash and Hinata (1980). As a result, there have been numerous changes and modifications to Schulz’s (1919; 1936) original species names and arrangement. The cytological studies by Morinaga (1928; 1929; 1931; 1933; 1934a; 1934b) and his student, U (1935) clarified the broad relationships among the economically important *Brassica* species in which chromosome pairing clearly showed the three species with the higher chromosome number, *B. napus*, *B. juncea* and *B. carinata* are amphidiploids derived from the monogenomic or basic species, *B. nigra*, *B. rapa* and *B. oleracea* (Figure 3.1).

Figure 3.1. Genome relationships of *Brassica* species and allied genera

Notes: A, B, C… are the genome symbols. The number in brackets following the haploid chromosome number (n) indicates the maximum possible number of autosyndetic chromosome pairs. The numbers within lines connecting two genomes give the maximum allosyndesis, i.e. the number of bivalents possible between the respective interspecific hybrids (Downey and Röbbelen, 1989).

Source: Modified from Mizushima (1980).

The genome relationships among the amphidiploids were confirmed by resynthesis of the three species from their diploid parents (Frandsen, 1947, 1943; Ramanujam and Srinivasachar, 1943). Further verification of these species’ relationships were obtained from studies on phenolic compounds (Dass and Nybom, 1967), protein patterns (Vaughan, 1977), isozymes (Coulthart and Denford, 1982; Chen, Heneen and Simonsen, 1989) and nuclear DNA, restriction fragment length polymorphisms (RFLP; Song, Osborn and Williams, 1988a; 1988b). Additional verification has been achieved through
molecular analysis of nuclear and chloroplast DNA and fluorescence in situ hybridisation (Snowdon et al., 2003; Snowdon, 2007; Warwick and Sauder, 2005; Lysak et al., 2005).

To further establish the true relationships among the genus and species of the subtribe, Harberd (1976; 1972) proposed grouping them into “cytodemes” based on the crossability of related subspecies with the same chromosome number. Harberd (1976) defined cytodemes as follows: “If two populations have a common chromosome number and are easily crossed to form a hybrid, which is neither obviously weak in vigour nor of low fertility, then they belong in the same cytodeme. By contrast, different cytodemes (which sometimes have the same chromosome number) are (a) difficult to cross, or (b) give a weak hybrid, or (c) have a sterile hybrid, and frequently exhibit all three criteria.” Harberd (1976; 1972) also defined the *Brassica* coenospecies as “the group of wild species sufficiently related to the six cultivated species of *Brassica* to be potentially capable of experimental hybridisation with them”. On this basis and their chromosome number the coenospecies have been classified into 43 diploid and 13 tetraploid cytodemes (Warwick and Black, 1993: Table 3). This grouping, with the inclusion of *Raphanus* and *Enarthrocarpus* in the subtribe, is supported by both chloroplast and nuclear DNA analysis (Warwick and Black, 1993; Warwick and Hall, 2009).

Cytological analyses of chromosome pairing in interspecific crosses among some of the more important *Brassica* cytodemes by Mizushima (1980) provided information on the maximum possible number of autosyndetic^2^ chromosome pairs (Figure 3.1). Harberd and McArthur (1980) extended the study of meiotic chromosome pairing to more than 50 species hybrids. These distant crosses were facilitated using embryo culture.

A chromosome analysis of the monogenomic *Brassica* species by Röbbelen (1960), established that only six chromosomes were distinctly different, the remaining being homologous with one or the other of the basic six. This evidence pointed to the presence, in the evolutionary pathway of the *Brassica* species, of a now-extinct, ancient progenitor with a basic chromosome number of × = 6. The long-standing hypothesis, that the cultivated diploid *Brassica* species are ancient polyploids, has been strongly supported by modern genomic investigations.

The genomes of *Brassica* species are extensively triploid (Lysak et al., 2007, 2005; Rana et al., 2004). In *B. nigra* Lagercrantz and Lydiate (1996) reported that every chromosome region appeared to be present in triplicate and the genomes of *B. oleracea* and *B. rapa* also exhibit tripling (Rana et al., 2004; Mun et al., 2009; Wang, 2010). High density comparative mapping of *Arabidopsis* and *B. napus* also supported the hypothesis of a hexaploid ancestor (Parkin et al., 2005). Indeed, chromosome tripling has been documented for the entire Brassiceae tribe (Lysak et al., 2005). Linkage maps and genome size data (Lysak et al., 2009) indicate that the *B. oleracea* genome, and probably the other monogenomic species which exhibit a range in chromosome number from 7 to 12, increased or reduced their chromosome number through duplication, translocations (Quiros, Ochoa and Douches, 1988; Hosaka et al., 1990; McGrath et al., 1990; Truco and Quiros, 1994), transposition of elements (Zhang and Wessler, 2004) as well as deletions (Hu and Quiros, 1991) and fusions (Lysak et al., 2006).
### Table 3.3. List of 43 diploid cytodesmes and 6 amphidiploid taxa in the *Brassica* coenospecies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
<th>CYTODEME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Brassica barrelieri (L.) Janka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Brassica dflexa Boiss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Brassica elongata Ehrl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td><em>Brassica graminea</em> Ten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Brassica nigra (L.) W.D.J. Koch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Brassica rapa L. (= <em>B. campestris</em> L.) (includes wild and cultivated varieties)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Brassica repanda (Willd.) DC. (includes <em>B. desnottesii</em> Emb. &amp; Maire, <em>B. rudiscula</em> (Lag.) O.E. Schulz, <em>B. saxatilis</em> DC.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Brassica soulei (Batt.) Batt. (= <em>B. amplexicaulis</em> (Desf.) Pome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Brassica tournefortii Gouan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td><em>Circaea</em> spp. (=<em>Hetera</em> =<em>Rhyonosinapis</em>) (includes all species in the genus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Diplotaxis acris (Forsk.) Boiss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Diplotaxis assurgens (Delile) Gren.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Diplotaxis berthaultii Braun-Blanq. &amp; Maire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Diplotaxis catholica (L.) DC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Diplotaxis cossonianiana (Reut.) O.E. Schulz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Diplotaxis erucoides (L.) DC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Diplotaxis harra (Forsk.) Boiss. (includes <em>D. crassifolia</em> (Raf.) DC., <em>D. lagascana</em> DC.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Diplotaxis ietelliana Maire (includes <em>D. bidens</em> (Font Quer) Gómez-Campo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Diplotaxis silifolia Kunze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Diplotaxis tenuifolia (L.) DC. (includes <em>D. cretica</em> Kotov., <em>D. simplex</em> (Viv.) Spreng., the latter species was incorrectly listed as <em>D. pitardiana</em> Maire)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Diplotaxis tenuiliqua Delile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Diplotaxis virgina (Cav.) DC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Enarthrococcus Webb &amp; Berthel. (includes <em>E. cardamoides</em> (Webb) O.E. Schulz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Enarthrococcus cvamaniensis Webb &amp; Berthel. (includes <em>E. leucaenthanum</em> Coss. &amp; Dur.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Enarthrococcus strigosum (Thunb.) O.E. Schulz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Enarthrococcus varium (Durieu) Durieu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><em>Enarthrococcus virgatum</em> C. Presl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Hirschfeldia incana (L.) Lagr.-Foss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Sinapis alba L. (includes <em>S. dissecta</em> Lag.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Sinapis arvensis L. (includes <em>S. allioni</em> Jacq., <em>S. turgida</em> (Pers.) Delile)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Sinapis acheri (Boiss.) O.E. Schulz (=<em>Brassica acheri</em> Boiss.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Sinapis flexuosa Poir.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><em>Sinapis pubescens</em> L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Trachystoma spp. (includes <em>T. aphanoeurneum</em> Maire &amp; Weiller, <em>T. balli</em> O.E. Schulz and provisionally <em>T. labasii</em> Maire)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Amphidiploids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
<th>CYTODEME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Brassica carinata A. Braun (B. nigra × <em>B. oleracea</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Brassica juncea (L.) Czern. (B. rapa × <em>B. nigra</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Brassica napus L. (B. rapa × <em>B. oleracea</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Diplotaxis murtali (L.) DC. (D. tenuifolia × <em>D. virgina</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td><em>Erucastrum</em> gallicum (Willd.) O.E. Schulz (<em>E. leucaenthanum</em> × ? unknown n = 7 taxon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td><em>Erucastrum</em> elatum (Balt.) O.E. Schulz (<em>E. litteum</em> × ? unknown n = 7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** N = haploid chromosome number. Information was obtained from the following sources: Gómez-Campo (1983), Harberd (1976, 1972), Harberd and McArthur (1980, 1972), Leadlay and Heywood (1990), Snogerup, Gustafsson and Von Bothmer (1990), Sobrino-Vesperinas (1988), Takahata and Hinata (1983) and Warwick, Black and Aguinaugalde (1992). Nomenclature is based on that in USDA-ARS (The Germplasm Resources Information Network) (2011). a) Allotetraploids (4x) were also indicated for these cytodesmes.

**Source:** Warwick and Black (1993) © Canadian Science Publishing or its licensors.
Based on cotyledonary studies of various taxa in the tribe Brassiceae, Gómez- Campo and Tortosa (1974) proposed that *Brassica* evolved from the Macaronesian plant taxon *Sinapidendron*. This Miocene relic survived several paleo-climatic changes that destroyed most of the Mediterranean Tertiary flora and is put forward as the archetype from which *Brassica* evolved through the *Diploptaxis* and *Erucastrum* complexes. However, the use of such morphometric data to establish evolutionary relationships within Brassiceae has not always provided results that agreed with those from cytological and molecular studies.

**Description**

Prakash and Hinata (1980) have summarised the early taxonomic difficulties when only morphological characteristics were used to categorise the numerous and varied forms of the commercially important *Brassica* species. The early proliferation of species’ names and misclassifications resulted from the wide array of plant forms that occur among plants within the same genome, plus the mimicking of the same morphological features in plants with a different genetic makeup. Although the application of advanced genetic techniques and chemical investigations has clarified relationships, there is still some disagreement among authorities as to whether a particular form should be considered a species, or a subspecies or variety within a species.

**Brassica nigra**

![Illustration of a Brassica nigra plant and its parts](image)

*Source:* Koehler’s Medical-Plants (1887) provided by Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia.

Sinskaia (1928) identified two major geographic forms of *B. nigra*, a western form grown in Europe, Africa, Asia Minor and Afghanistan and an eastern form grown in India and as far west as Palestine and the Syrian Arab Republic. The early forms were of short season, spreading, with semi-erect growth up to a metre tall but taller, more erect material was selected for commercial production (Hemingway, 1995). The prevalent annual weedy form of today varies in height from 0.6-2.4 metres, depending on the competing vegetation and growing conditions. The plant is lightly covered with soft hairs; the lower
leaves are large with upper leaves reduced in size. *B. nigra* can be easily distinguished from the commercial *Brassica* crops in that *B. nigra* does not produce a rosette of basal leaves. A typical plant image, including the tap root, is shown in Figure 3.2. The siliques are short (2-5 cm), hirsute and appressed to the stem of the flowering raceme, with a beak about 0.6 cm long. The small, brown to black seeds exhibit primary dormancy and tend to germinate throughout the growing season.

**Brassica rapa**

Plants of *B. rapa* species are widely cultivated as leaf and root vegetables, fodder and oilseed crops. In addition, they can be a weed of cultivated land and disturbed sites. The widest array of vegetable forms evolved in the People’s Republic of China (hereafter “China”) with many of the selected forms corresponding to or mimicking those found in the *B. oleracea* complex. Because the selected forms exhibited significantly different morphological traits, early botanists classified them as separate species. Today they are more correctly classified as subspecies or varieties of *B. rapa*.

**Brassica rapa** vegetables

The plants in the *B. rapa* subsp. *pekinensis* group of vegetables are biennials that have been classified into three variant forms. The var. *cylindrica* has broad but thin, crinkled and conspicuously veined green leaves with white petioles (Figure 3.3). The leaves are usually tightly wrapped in a cylindrical formation to form a head with a length of 30-60 cm and a diameter about 10-17 cm. The var. *cephalata* forms a flat head similar to a drum-head cabbage (Figure 3.3) while the var. *laxa* forms a loose heart. In the second year of growth bolting occurs and the flowering stem is quickly thrust upwards reaching a height of 1.5 metres and bearing the characteristic raceme with typical *Brassica* yellow flowers. Common names for this group include pe-tsai, celery cabbage or Chinese cabbage.

![Figure 3.3. B. rapa subsp. pekinensis](image)

A. var. *cylindrica*  B. var. *cephalata*

*Source: Courtesy Evergreen Seeds.*

The *B. rapa* subsp. *chinensis* group includes both annual and biennial forms. Bailey (1930) described the subspecies as “a very smooth biennial with large ladle-shaped upstanding radial leaves with thick ivory-white but not wing-margined or toothed petioles.” The clasping, entire leaves have prominent veins and resemble leaves of Swiss chard (Figure 3.4). The common name for this plant group is pak choi or bok choy. If the plants are harvested in the early stages of growth they may be called “baby bok choy” or “Shanghai bok choy” (Figure 3.5). The subsp. *parachinensis* is usually included within
this group (Figure 3.6). It is grown for its thick stemmed flowering shoots that are cut for market as the first flowers open, allowing for several harvests. The common names for this variant include Gai Lan and Chinese broccoli. Tsen and Lee (1942) include the subsp. *rosularis* and subsp. *narinosa* in this *chinensis* group. The USDA Germplasm Resources Information Network (GRIN) database includes *rosularis* in the *chinensis* group, but keeps *narinosa* as a separate subspecies (USDA-ARS, 2011). The plants of the subsp. *narinosa* are stout, low growing, glabrous biennials. The lower leaves are small, puckered and orbicular-ovate with broad white petioles, arranged in short clusters. The upper stem leaves are very broad, entire and clasping. Siliques are about 2 cm long or less with a very short, stout beak about one-half or one-third as long as the pod. Tsen and Lee (1942) also place subsp. *japonica* and subsp. *nipposinica* within the *chinensis* group; however, the USDA keeps both of these subspecies separate (USDA-ARS, 2011). These two subspecies are considered synonyms for this form, exhibiting pencil-thin leaf stems supporting deeply indented feathery leaves (Figure 3.7). The flowering stalks produce siliques about 6 cm long.

*B. rapa* subsp. *rapa*, the common turnip, develops a bulbous storage organ in the first year of growth. The top 1-6 cm above ground is an expansion of the hypocotyl that is fused with the expanded root below ground. A narrow tap root extends below the storage
organ (Figure 3.8). Most cultivars are white fleshted except for the exposed above-ground portion which, when exposed to sunlight, may turn purple, red or green. Yellow, orange and red fleshted cultivars are also grown. Leaves grow directly from the above-ground shoulder of the expanded hypocotyl and not from a visible crown or neck as occurs in rutabagas (*Brassica napus* var. *napobrassica*). The leaves may be harvested and eaten as “turnip greens”. Turnip roots for edible purposes will each weigh about 1 kg but weight will vary with the variety and growing conditions. Cultivars grown for cattle and sheep feed produce much larger roots. The flowering stalk bolts from the overwintered root the following spring, producing a terminal raceme with siliques about 6 cm long.

![B. rapa subsp. rapa the common turnip](image)

*Source: Courtesy Wikipedia, the Free Encyclopedia.*

**Brassica rapa** oilseed and weedy forms

The oilseed form of *B. rapa* subsp. *oleifera* includes both annual and biennial varieties. Both the spring and winter forms of *B. rapa* mature earlier and withstand cold temperatures better than their *B. napus* counterparts. However, the seed and oil yield is normally lower than *B. napus* so production of the winter form is limited to the more rigorous climates of central Sweden, Finland, north-west China and the foothills of the Himalayan mountains. The plant and growth stages of spring *B. rapa* are illustrated in Figure 3.9. Following the emergence of the cotyledons, the plant quickly produces a tap root and a rosette of leaves that shades the surrounding area reducing weed competition. The lower leaves are stalked, lyrate-pinnatifid with a large end lobe exhibiting sparse hairs on the under side. The upper leaves are much smaller and slightly stalked.

In the winter form, the plant remains in the rosette stage until exposed to a long vernalization period (40 days) at near freezing temperatures. Day length, and where required vernalization, determine when bolting of the flower stem will occur. Figure 3.9 shows only a single raceme but under field conditions the plant produces many flowering branches and with *B. rapa*, as opposed to *B. napus*, it can be difficult to identify the primary raceme. The plant grows to a height of a meter or less. The position of the flower buds on a raceme, relative to the just opened, self-incompatible flowers, can be used to distinguish plants of *B. rapa* from *B. napus*. In *B. rapa* the flowers over top the buds while the reverse is true for *B. napus*. Siliques, some 6 cm long, contain up to 30 brown to yellow seeds in 2 locules (Figure 3.10).

*B. rapa* subsp. *campestris* (formerly subsp. *sylvestris*), the weedy form of subsp. *oleifera*, is morphologically indistinguishable from the cultivated spring oilseed *B. rapa*, except that the seed of subsp. *campestris* exhibits primary dormancy, a recessively inherited characteristic.
B. rapa subsp. dichotoma, commonly referred to as toria, is an oilseed form grown on the Indian sub-continent. Morphologically it is indistinguishable from the spring form of B. rapa subsp. oleifera. Other forms grown on the sub-continent are termed yellow and brown sarson (B. rapa subsp. trilocularis). These forms have broad siliques containing larger seeds than toria. However, yellow sarson is distinguished by its introse anthers, self-compatibility and pure yellow seeds.

Figure 3.9. Growth stages in turnip rape (B. rapa)

Stages: 0: pre-emergence; 1: seedling; 2: rosette; 3: bud; 4: flower; 5: ripening


Figure 3.10. Typical intact and opened siliques of B. napus and B. rapa

Notes: a) B. napus showing intact and opened siliques with seeds of the upper locule exposed, while those of the lower locule are partially obscured by the lamella. b) Intact and open silique of B. rapa.

Autotetraploid *B. rapa* varieties have been developed for use as leafy vegetables, fodder (turnips) and green manure. Tetraploid plants have larger leaves, thicker stems, greater height and larger seeds than their corresponding diploids (Abel and Becker, 2007). However, tetraploids are not used as oilseed crops as their seed and oil yields are significantly lower than their diploid progenitors (Downey and Armstrong, 1962). The much larger tetraploid pollen also takes significantly longer to germinate than *B. rapa* diploid pollen. Thus, pollen from *B. rapa* diploid plants has a selective advantage resulting in triploid embryos, which abort (Downey and Armstrong, 1962; Håkansson, 1956), providing strong selection pressure against *B. rapa* tetraploid plants growing in *B. rapa* diploid populations. The slower pollen germination of tetraploid plants could predispose them to out-crossing with related species. On the other hand, since tetraploid *B. rapa* crops are normally consumed or ploughed down before flowering they are unlikely to be a significant factor in gene flow.

**Brassica oleracea**

The *B. oleracea* vegetables are often referred to as the “cole crops” and comprise cabbage, cauliflowers (including broccoli), kales and kohlrabi, but not the *B. rapa* vegetables.

**Wild *B. oleracea***

Wild *B. oleracea* var. *oleracea* or wild cabbage is native to the western and southern seaboard of Europe where its tolerance of salt and lime, but its intolerance to competing vegetation, tends to restrict its presence to limestone sea cliffs (Heywood, 1964; Rich, 1991). The plants of this subspecies are biennial or perennial and in the first year produce a rosette of thick, fleshy leaves (Figure 3.11). Following vernalization a flowering stalk 1-2 metres tall arises from the centre of the rosette bearing a raceme of self-compatible, yellow flowers.

**Figure 3.11. Wild *B. oleracea* plants in their first year of growth**


**B. oleracea** var. *capitata*, cabbage

The cabbage is a biennial plant that in the first year of growth produces a dense, terminal head of tightly wrapped leaves on a short stout stem. The head is surrounded by a rosette of large fleshy leaves (Figure 3.12A). Three main types of heads – smooth green, red and Savoy – are commercially produced (Figure 3.12B). In the second year,
the head splits open and the flowering stalk bolts to 1.5-2.0 metres tall with branches bearing flowering racemes of self-incompatible flowers.

**Figure 3.12. Heads of *B. oleracea* var. *capitata* and Savoy cabbages**

A. Head of cabbage, *B. oleracea* var. *capitata* with its rosette leaves intact

B. Heads of red, smooth green and Savoy cabbage with lower leaves removed

*Source:* Courtesy Floridata.

*B. oleracea* var. *botrytis*, broccoli and cauliflower

Cauliflower is derived from broccoli, being selected for short stout stems with a dense, terminal head or curd, made up of arrested inflorescence meristems, over topped by leaves (Figure 3.13). About 10% of the meristem mass will eventually develop into normal flowers and set seed (Sadik, 1962). Specific alleles of the *BoCAL-a* gene have been shown to be associated with discrete inflorescence morphologies (Smith and King, 2000; Purugganan, Boyles and Suddith, 2000). Smith and King (2000) present evidence suggesting that the cauliflower curd arose in southern Italy from a heading Calabrese broccoli via an intermediate Sicilian crop type.

**Figure 3.13. Head of cauliflower (left) and broccoli (right) *B. oleracea* var. *botrytis***

*Source:* Courtesy Cavaganaro, David/Sunset/Invision.

Broccoli differs from cauliflower in that broccoli flower heads tend to be smaller with more slender floret-stalks and are made up of arrested green (or purple) flower buds whereas the heads of cauliflower are formed by a condensed and thickened, malformed white (also purple or lime green) flower cluster. Both crops are biennial and, provided the plants have been vernalized, produce viable flowers and pods in the second year from the stump or parts of the head that remain. Vernalization requires a prolonged cold period of at least ten days with temperatures between 2°C and 10°C. The larger the plant when exposed to the cold treatment the greater the incidence of bolting. Plants of both crops are
more susceptible to frost and less tolerant of heat and drought than cabbage. The cultural requirements of broccoli and cauliflower are similar but broccoli generally grows more rapidly. Most varieties are now F1 hybrids.

The broccoli referred to above is more correctly known as “calabrese” broccoli. It produces a single head and is the form that is of greatest commercial importance. The “sprouting” broccoli, var. *italica*, produces a succession of small flowering heads over an extended period (Figure 3.14) while the “Romanesco” broccoli produces a head characterised by multiple cone shaped spirals consisting of masses of small flower buds (Figure 3.15).

Figure 3.14. *Sprouting purple broccoli*  
Figure 3.15. *Romanesco broccoli*

*Source:* Courtesy Mr. Fothergill’s Seeds Ltd. UK.

*B. oleracea* var. *viridis*, collards and kale

The kales and collards are biennials but are usually harvested in the first year for their edible leaves. They closely resemble their wild cabbage progenitors. Collards have large, smooth fleshy leaves with smooth margins (Figure 3.16). The leaves of kale are smaller and thinner than those of collards and many cultivars produce fringed, wavy-edged or feathery leaves (Figure 3.16). A thick flowering stem up to 1.5 metres tall emerges in the second year. One form called “Walking Stick” kale produces a tall straight stem which, when dried and polished, makes a fine walking stick.

Figure 3.16. *B. oleracea* var. *viridis*, *collard plant* (left) and *row of kale* (right)

*Source:* Courtesy Floridata.
B. oleracea var. gemmifera, Brussels sprouts

B. oleracea var. gemmifera plants are cool season biennials with simple erect stems up to 1 metre tall, bearing round to heart-shaped simple leaves with lengthy petioles. The leaves are glabrous with the colour varying from light to deep greyish-green. In the first year, auxiliary buds or sprouts are borne beneath the leaves on an elongated stem (Figure 3.17). The buds are modified leaves that form small heads up to 30 mm in diameter. Following vernalization, a seed head is produced from which a flower stalk emerges bearing perfect, self-incompatible flowers on terminal racemes. The seeds, weighing about 2.8 g/1 000, are borne in typical, two locule siliques.

Figure 3.17. B. oleracea var. gemmifera, Brussels sprouts

Source: Courtesy Limagrain.

B. oleracea var. alboglabra, Chinese kale

The var. alboglabra is widely grown throughout south-east Asia as a leaf and stem vegetable. The perennial plants are grown as annuals, producing dull or glossy thick green, glaucous, elliptic leaves about 25 cm long. The plants commonly called Chinese kale and kailan attain a height of up to 40 cm in the vegetative stage and 1-2 metres at the end of flowering. Upper stem leaves are oblong, petioled or non-clasping. The white flowered inflorescences develop siliques 5-8 cm long (Herklots, 1972).

Brassica napus

B. napus var. napobrassica, rutabaga or Swede

B. napus var. napobrassica, the common rutabaga or Swede, is a biennial with similar characteristics to the turnip. The bulbous root develops from the hypocotyl in the first year of growth (Figure 3.18). The surface of the root may be purple, white or yellow with the inner content solid yellow or white fleshed. The thick, smooth, dark green leaves emerge from the crown or neck of the root to form a ground covering rosette that shades out competing weeds. The presence of a root crown or neck distinguishes rutabagas from turnips. Early in the second year the flower stalk bolts from the root crown and the self-compatible flowers produce short beaked siliques on short pedicels containing two rows of round black seeds. Rutabagas are used for human consumption and for late fall cattle grazing.
II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – 167

Figure 3.18. *B. napus* var. napobrassica, rutabaga or Swede

Source: Courtesy Floridata.

*B. napus* var. *pabularia*, Siberian or rape kale

This sub-species has both annual and biennial forms with much branched erect stems up to 1.5 metres tall. Lower leaves are glaucous and lobed. Upper stem leaves are lanceolate, sessile and clasping (Figure 3.19). The much branched inflorescence is an elongated raceme producing siliques 5-11 cm long and 2.5-4 mm wide with a slender 0.5-3 mm long beak. The tap root produces many side branches. The crop is grown as a leafy vegetable and for fodder.

Figure 3.19. *B. napus* var. *pabularia*, Siberian or rape kale

Source: Courtesy Floridata.

Oilseed rape, *B. napus* var. *napus* f. *annua* and f. *biennis*

Oilseed *B. napus* has both an annual (spring) and a biennial (winter) form. The biennial form is less winter hardy than winter wheat which restricts its production to areas with mild winter conditions such as northern Europe and central China. The annual form is grown as a spring crop in western Canada and northern China but also as a winter crop in Australia and other countries with very mild winters.
Growth stages of annual *B. napus* plant development are illustrated in Figure 3.20. The glaucous lower leaves form a rosette from which the flowering stalk emerges bearing a dominant, indeterminate main raceme. The upper stem leaves are small, lanceolate, sessile and clasping. Plants of the species *B. napus*, *B. rapa* and *B. juncea* can be distinguished by their upper leaf attachment to the stem as illustrated in Figure 3.21. Flowering begins with the lowest bud on the main raceme and continues upward with three to five or more flowers opening per day. The buds, unlike those of *B. rapa*, are held above the uppermost open flowers. Flowers on the secondary branches begin to open about three days after the opening of the first flowers on the main raceme. The siliques are ascending on slender pedicles and about 7-10 cm long with a beak about 1.3 cm long. Seeds are dark brown to black, and weigh 2.5-5.5 g per 1 000 seeds.

**Figure 3.20. Growth stages of *B. napus var. napus f. annua***

**Figure 3.21. Upper leaves of *B. rapa, B. napus* and *B. juncea***

*Notes:*  
a) Seedling cotyledons; b) cotyledons and first true leaf; c) rosette; d) flowering;  
e) pod set; f) mature plant.

*Notes:*  
a) *B. rapa*, fully clasping stem;  
b) *B. napus* partially clasping;  
c) *B. juncea*, non-clasping.


**Brassica juncea**

*B. juncea* vegetables

In China and south-east Asia many vegetable forms of *B. juncea* have been developed and classified as species or subspecies under numerous names, depending on the morphological features given the greatest importance. Kumazawa and Able (1955) examined some 200 East Asian cultivars of *B. juncea* vegetables grown in China, Japan, Nepal and Chinese Taipei on the basis of their plant size, root form, tillering and leaf characteristics. All accessions of *B. juncea* and its subspecies were described as annuals and placed in 25 different groups within 8 classes. These classes were further condensed into four subspecies. The authors state that the subspecies evolved from the leafy and oilseed forms of brown mustard, *B. juncea* (L.) Cross. From the collection, the authors
II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – SAFETY ASSESSMENT OF TRANSGENIC ORGANISMS: OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS, VOLUME 5 © OECD 2016

illustrated a normal or “ordinal” root form, a turnip-like rooted form (also described by Dixon, 2007) and a little known form with a tuberous basal stem (Figure 3.22). The four subspecies were grouped and characterised as follows.

1. subsp. napiformis (Pailleux & Bois) Gladis, grown for its tuberous turnip-like root. This subspecies bolts late and has a high tolerance to cold.

2. var. japonica (Thunb.) L.H. Bailey, characterised by curled, narrow or dissected leaves.

3. subsp. integrifolia (H. West) Thell., characterised by entire or little lobed basal leaves. Herkots (1972) notes that some cultivars may form a tight head (Figure 3.23).

4. var. rugosa (Roxb.) N. Tsen & S.H. Lee, includes cabbage leafed forms with large entire or serrated radical leaves. The tuberous basal stem form (Figure 3.22) is included in this subspecies.

Herklots (1972) places var. rugosa within subsp. integrifolia but also puts forward the var. sareptana as characterised by lyrately-lobed basal leaves and var. crispifolia as having dissected, crisped lower leaves. More recently, a B. juncea Biology Document (Canadian Food Inspection Agency, 2007) quoted the grouping by Spect and Diederichsen (2001) into the following four sub-species:

1. subsp. integrifolia, used as a leaf vegetable in Asia.

2. subsp. juncea, cultivated mainly for its seeds, occasionally as fodder.

3. subsp. napiformis, used as a root-tuber vegetable. Dixon (2007) describes this subspecies as having a high tolerance to cold and an enlarged conical root.

4. subsp. tsatsai from which stalks and leaves are used as vegetables in China.

Figure 3.22. Three forms of B. juncea

Bulbous root (a), normal or “ordinal” root (b) and tuberous basal stem (c)

Figure 3.23. B. juncea subsp. integrifolia, heading mustard, BauSin

Source: Kumazawa and Able (1955).

Source: Courtesy AgroHaitai Ltd.
B. juncea, oilseed and condiment mustards

Plants of this species, grown for their seed oil or condiment production, are normally referred to simply as B. juncea without the attachment of a subspecies name. However, Speet and Diederichsen (2001) classify this plant group as B. juncea subsp. juncea. Plant for both oil and condiment are similar in their morphology but differ in seed oil percentage and the type and amount of glucosinolates present in the seed. These forms are annuals that grow to about 1.2 metres as spring-sown crops in western Canada and Europe. On the Indian sub-continent they are grown as a winter crop where, under short days, plants grow up to 2.1 metres tall. The plants are green and sometimes slightly glaucous. The lower leaves of the rosette are rather thin, elliptic to obovate and lyrately-lobed or divided. The upper stem leaves are small, narrow and not clasping (Figure 3.21). Depending on the day length and temperature the flowering stalk bolts and produces a raceme with no terminal flower. As with B. napus, the buds are borne above the open flowers. Apical dominance is present with the secondary racemes initiated about three days after flowers open on the main raceme. The silique is about 7 cm long containing seed weighing 2.5-3.0 g/1 000 seeds.

Geographic distribution, ecosystems and habitats, cultivation and management practices, centres of origin and diversity

Introduction

From an ecological and agronomic point of view, both the spring and winter forms of oilseed rape exhibit two undesirable characteristics. First, mature pods tend to shatter, leaving large but variable amounts of seed on the ground at harvest (see below on the contribution of B. napus harvest losses to persistence). Pod shatter not only results in lost yield but also sets the stage for large numbers of volunteer plants in subsequent crops. Fortunately B. napus seeds have no primary dormancy so if moisture and temperature are adequate, the vast majority of these seeds germinate and are killed by frost, herbicides, cultivation or predators (see below). The opportunity for B. napus to acquire primary dormancy is limited due to the vast majority of fields being sown each year with high germination certified seed.

The second undesirable characteristic is the tendency for a proportion of the shattered seed to acquire secondary dormancy. Such dormancy is induced by abiotic stresses (see section on persistence below). Although most of the shattered seed will quickly be reduced by fatal germination, predation, disease and abiotic stress, a small percentage can remain dormant and viable for ten years or more (Schlink, 1998; Lutman, Freeman and Pekrun, 2003). Thus, B. napus is able to establish seed banks within cultivated fields (see Lutman et al., 2005 and below). As a result, traits or genes that have been genetically silenced or augmented within improved varieties may be reintroduced. Examples would be the genetic blocking of the biosynthesis of erucic acid in rapeseed oil, the reduction in linolenic acid content and the augmentation of oleic fatty acids in the oil, or reduction of glucosinolates in the oilseed meal.

It should be noted, however, that there is considerable genetic variability within the species and its close relatives in both the degree of pod shatter and the percentage of induced dormancy. Until recently these characteristics have not been a priority for oilseed rape breeders but progress is possible. Wang, Ripley and Rakow (2007) have clearly demonstrated that selection for reduced pod shatter in B. napus can be achieved. In addition, Østergaard et al. (2006) have shown that expressing the Arabidopsis
FRUITFULL gene in *B. juncea*, using a CaMV 35S promoter, produces shatter-resistant plants. Although the shatter-resistant pods held their seed too tightly for combine harvesting, a weakened form of the FRUITFULL gene could result in an economically and environmentally valuable advance. It is unlikely that conventional breeding will lead to complete elimination of the shattering characteristic, but there appears to be considerable room for improvement. Further, Pekrun, Potter and Lutman (1997); Gruber, Pekrun and Claupein (2004); Gruber, Emrich and Claupein (2009); and Gulden, Thomas and Shirtliffe (2004) have all shown that among *B. napus* varieties, of both spring and winter forms, there is a wide range in the percentage of seed susceptible to induced dormancy. Thus, the application of conventional breeding techniques to select varieties producing seed resistant to secondary dormancy should greatly reduce the presence of volunteers in subsequent crops.

Ecologically, *B. napus* is described as a cultivated crop where escaped plants become colonisers of waste places. However, they are not invasive of natural habitats. Colonisers are defined as species that occupy disturbed sites or habitats but with populations that keep moving, founding new populations while losing old ones (Williamson, 1996). Feral populations of *B. napus* are most frequently found along road and rail verges, field margins and in disturbed soils. The reports on the abundance and persistence of such feral populations vary considerably from country to country and between the spring and winter forms. Williamson (1996) noted that colonising species are not the same as invaders, even if they have high intrinsic rates of increase, as exhibited by *B. napus*. He classifies *B. napus* in Britain as intermediate between naturalised and casual. On the other hand, recent intensive surveys of feral sites in mainland Europe have identified feral populations in higher frequencies than anticipated, with some sites able to sustain themselves in a semi-permanent state (Pivard et al., 2008). Such reports have given rise to concerns by some that a proportion of feral populations could become permanent and in time result in the invasion of natural habitats.

Although the species does have the weedy characteristics noted above, producing many propagules (seeds), plus the ability to cross with some weedy relatives, it is not competitive with perennial grasses that dominate the natural habitat. It should also be noted that oilseed rape has been part of the European landscape for a very long time as have the truly weedy, related species, *Sinapis arvensis* and *B. rapa*. However, none have become invasive of natural habitats. In recent years, the area of oilseed rape cultivation and intensity of production has increased worldwide. For example, since 1970 oilseed rape production in France and Germany has increased 4.5- and 8-fold, respectively. In the same period, the Canadian oilseed rape acreage has quadrupled, thus a wider and more frequent occurrence of feral populations is to be expected. The spring form of oilseed rape is much less likely to form feral populations or to be self-sustaining since fall germination is normally fatal while frosts will kill many seedlings that germinate in the spring. Although Knispel et al. (2008) has reported some transient feral population in the province of Manitoba, Canada, such roadside populations are rare over most of the Prairie Provinces, except near collection points and to a limited extent along railroad verges. This is because in western Canada most road verges are mowed in late August before feral populations set viable seed. Such roadside mowing is essential to prevent snowdrifts across roads that tall vegetation can cause. In contrast, in Europe, the winter form can avoid being killed by the fall road maintenance since mowing does not usually affect the established first year rosettes, leaving some plants to flower and set seed before the next fall mowing.
Different agronomic practices also influence the size and persistence of volunteer populations. In Europe, the large amount of straw remaining after harvest plus the short time between the July harvest and August sowing dates encourages ploughing down of residue, resulting in seed burial. In Canada on the other hand, ploughing is not practiced and most fields are spring-sown into undisturbed stubble (minimum or zero tillage) from the previous year’s September harvest (Hall et al., 2005). Thus, seed burial is minimised and harvest seed losses are exposed to environmental hazards. The result is that in Europe, old or discontinued cultivars or genotypes will persist in the seed bank for a much longer time than in Canada. This is clearly illustrated in the changeover from high to low erucic acid *B. napus* varieties. In the German oilseed rape growing province of Schleswig-Holstein, it required ten years to reduce the commercial crop from the traditional high erucic varieties (50% erucic) to the desired level of 2% (Sauermann, 1987). In Canada, the same results were obtained in three years (Daun, 1983).

**Geographic distribution**

The genus *Brassica* and its wild relatives are part of the tribe Brassiceae that has its origin in the Mediterranean basin and in south-western Asia. However, the geographic centre is thought to be in the south-western Mediterranean region (Algeria, Morocco and Spain) where some 40 genera have been shown to be endemic or exhibit maximum diversity (Hedge, 1976; Gómez-Campo, 1999, 1980; Al-Shehbaz, 1984; Al-Shehbaz, Beilstein and Kellogg, 2006; Warwick and Hall, 2009). For the subtribe Brassicinae, Hedge (1976) leaves little doubt that it originated in the Mediterranean basin. The species distribution of the Brassicaceae family is concentrated in the northern temperate zone and south-western and central Asia (Holm et al., 1997). Few species are found in hot, humid tropics.

*B. nigra*

*B. nigra* or black mustard was widely grown for the sharp pungency of its seeds and as a leaf vegetable. Prakash and Hinata (1980) placed the species origin in central and south Europe. It is one of the oldest recorded spice crops, which undoubtedly resulted in its early and widespread distribution across Europe, Africa, Asia and the Indian sub-continent, and its dehiscing siliques with primary dormancy of the seed ensured its persistence. The GRIN describes the species distribution as widely naturalised in the following regions and countries. In Africa: countries along the south shore of the Mediterranean as well as Eritrea and Ethiopia. In temperate Asia: Afghanistan, Armenia, Islamic Republic of Iran, Iraq, Israel, Kazakhstan, Lebanon, Syrian Arab Republic, Turkey and northwest China. For the Indian sub-continent: India, Nepal, Pakistan. In Europe: all countries in western and eastern Europe as well as the Balkans and Greece. The crop was introduced to the Americas and Australia as a spice. However, in the 1950s it was displaced by the higher yielding, pungent *B. juncea* that was better suited to mechanical harvesting. Although in many regions black mustard is now a weed of waste places, it has never become established on the Canadian prairies, although it is present throughout much of the United States.

*B. rapa*

*B. rapa* is thought to have originated in the mountainous areas near the Mediterranean sea (Tsunoda, 1980). The time of domestication is unknown. Sinskaia (1928) proposed two main centres of origin, one being the Mediterranean and the other the Afghanistan-Pakistan region. The species appears to have attained a wide distribution
II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.)

throughout Europe, parts of Africa, Asia and the Indian sub-continent before recorded history. Excavations in China reported the presence of *B. rapa* seed at a 6 000-7 000-year-old archaeological site (Liu, 1985). Indian Sanskrit literature mentions the plant about 1599 B.C. (Prakash, 1961), and Renfrew (1973) indicated that *B. rapa* seed was consumed in Scandinavia as early as 350 B.C. *B. rapa* is grown as an oilseed crop in northern Europe, north-west China, the foothills of the Himalayas and northern India, while the vegetable forms were selected and modified in Asia, primarily in China. The oilseed form was introduced to Canada by a Polish immigrant about 1936 (Boulter, 1983) and Australia began its first investigations on the *B. rapa* crop in the early 1960s (Salisbury, 2002) but it has now been superseded by *B. napus* varieties. *B. rapa* also has a weedy form that differs from the cultivated plant in exhibiting primary dormancy and has a worldwide distribution (Figure 3.24).

![Figure 3.24. World distribution of *B. rapa* as a reported weed](image)

*Source: Modified from Holm et al. (1997).*

**B. oleracea**

The centre of origin for the *B. oleracea* species is along the European Atlantic coast while the wild related forms still grow on the islands and along the northern coast of the Mediterranean. The various forms of this species were developed in Europe and did not reach Asia until about the 16th century (Liu, 1985). The many cultivated forms of this species have been introduced and grown worldwide, with the exception of some tropical areas.

**B. napus**

*B. napus* is of relatively recent origin (<10 000 years; see the section on genetics at the end of this chapter and Figure 3.39) resulting from the interspecific cross between plants of *B. oleracea* and *B. rapa*. The cross must have occurred where the two species were growing in close proximity along the European Atlantic or Mediterranean coasts. Dispersal of the species is thought to have occurred throughout Europe in the 16th century with the introduction to the Americas in the 17th and 18th centuries and the Far East in the 19th century (Liu, 1985).
B. juncea

*B. juncea* is believed to have arisen about 10,000 years ago as the result of an interspecific cross or crosses between plants of *B. rapa* by *B. nigra*. Evidence suggests that one primary centre of origin is China, where the greatest divergence of forms evolved (Prain, 1898; Sinskaia, 1928; Vavilov, 1949). A second centre of origin is thought to be Afghanistan and adjoining regions (Olsson, 1960; Mizushima and Tsunoda, 1967; Tsunoda and Nishi, 1968) from where it spread to a secondary centre on the Indian subcontinent and became a major oilseed crop (Hemingway, 1995; Prakash and Hinata, 1980). GRIN (USDA-ARS, 2011) lists *B. juncea* as native to temperate Asia including China, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Mongolia, eastern and western Siberia, Tajikistan and Turkmenistan. It has been introduced as a condiment crop to Europe, the Americas, Australia and New Zealand. It has been designated a weed of southern European Russian Federation, the Caucasus, central Asia and southern Siberia, and a casual or feral plant in southern and southeast Asia, Africa and America (Canadian Food Inspection Agency, 2007).

B. carinata

*B. carinata*, like *B. juncea*, is believed to have arisen about 10,000 years ago as a result of an interspecific cross between plants of *B. nigra* and *B. oleracea*. The cross is thought to have occurred in the Mediterranean region where both species were present. As the climate in North Africa became dryer, *B. carinata*, along with the flora of the moist Mediterranean region, moved south to the highlands (1,300-1,500 metres) of Ethiopia. The species distribution from its Ethiopian centre of origin has been limited to neighbouring east African countries. Recently it has been introduced as an oil crop to India and as a species of commercial interest in Canada and Spain.

**Ecosystems and habitats where the species occurs natively and has naturalised**

There are few areas of the world where members of the family Brassicaceae are totally absent. The exceptions are the Antarctic and some parts of the tropics. However, even in the tropics, the family is thinly represented by some introduced cosmopolitan weeds that have become established. The genera and species of the family occur in greatest number and diversity in the temperate zone of the northern hemisphere and in particular, the areas surrounding the Mediterranean basin and throughout the southwest and central regions of Asia (Figure 3.25) (Hedge, 1976). Although the generic and specific endemism in the family is highest in the Irano-Turanian region, the centre of the present-day subtribe, Brassicinae, lies in the Mediterranean basin (Hedge, 1976).

**Feral populations in disturbed soils**

Due to the large seed losses in commercial *B. napus* fields and the potential loss during transport and handling, the surviving seeds give rise to volunteers in subsequent crops and feral populations in non-cultivated areas (CETIOM, 2000; MacDonald and Kuntz, 2000; Orson, 2002; Pessel et al., 2001; Price et al., 1996). Volunteers are controlled by cultivation and herbicide application. In both Canadian and UK trials, the numbers of genetically modified (GM), herbicide resistant (HR) *B. napus* volunteers in the year following GM trials were comparable to, or less than, conventional *B. napus* (Crawley et al., 1993; Booth et al., 1996; Hails et al., 1997; Rasche and Gadsby, 1997; Sweet et al., 1999a, 1999b, 1997; Sweet and Shepperson, 1998; Norris et al., 1999). In their survey of Canadian commercial fields, MacDonald and Kuntz (2000) found the same trend, with similar numbers of volunteers in the year following cultivation of
GM HR canola compared to conventional varieties. Furthermore, prior to any field operations, they found an average over all fields of 200 volunteers/m². Initial soil disturbance was effective in controlling these emerged *B. napus* volunteers, but shallow cultivation resulted in the emergence of an even greater number of volunteers. A post-emergent weed control programme employed by the producer for the non-GM volunteers was also effective in controlling the GM volunteers (MacDonald and Kuntz, 2000). Downey and Buth (2003) reported that GM HR volunteers with single or stacked traits were readily controlled in western Canada by the same agronomic practices that are standard for controlling conventional canola volunteers. In Australia, post-harvest monitoring of GM HR (glufosinate or glyphosate) trial locations for six years indicated volunteer populations were adequately controlled by herbicide application or broadacre cultivation (either in-crop or by conservation tillage) (Salisbury, 2002).

Figure 3.25 *Approximate areas of the phytogeographic regions containing the world’s greatest representation of Brassicaceae genera*

*Note:* They encompass the Mediterranean (black); the Irano-Turanian (striped) and the Saharo-Sindian (dotted) regions.

*Source:* After Hedge (1976).

Feral populations of *B. napus* can be found at various densities on road verges, along field margins and railway lines in all countries where it is grown (e.g. Crawley and Brown, 1995; Wilkinson et al., 1995; Squire et al., 1999; MacDonald and Kuntz, 2000; Agrisearch, 2001; Pessel et al., 2001; Orson, 2002; Salisbury, 2002). Populations may also become established in port areas where *B. napus* cargos are handled (Ramsay, Thompson and Squire, 2003; Saji et al., 2005; Aono et al., 2006). Annual recruitment to such sites is likely to be more from passing transport vehicles than from an established seed bank. *B. napus*, as with other *Brassica* species, is a coloniser of disturbed soils where it competes with other primary colonisers. However, *B. napus* is a poor competitor and is not regarded as an environmentally hazardous colonising species (European Commission, 2000, 1999, 1998a, 1998b; Beckie, Hall and Warwick, 2001; Dignam, 2001). Unless the habitats are disturbed on a regular basis, *B. napus* will be displaced (OECD, 1997).

In western Canada, roadside verges, field margins and railway lines were surveyed for canola plants (MacDonald and Kuntz, 2000). Only 13 and 27 volunteer *B. napus* plants were found in the mowed roadside over the respective 7 and 27 kilometres surveyed, and no plants were found in tall, unmowed grass. Surveys of rail beds leading
from local grain elevators, approximately 3 and 5 kilometres long, identified 287 and 29 plants, respectively, growing at the interface of the rail bed gravel and the tall grass of the right of way. No plants were located on the rail tracks or in the tall grass of the right of way. Similarly in Australia, a survey, making 400 observations in 5 × 20 m areas along 4 000 kilometres of roads in oilseed rape growing areas, found B. napus plants in only 31%, 20%, 13% and 9% of the observation points in southern New South Wales, Western Australia, Victoria and South Australia, respectively. Nearly all the plants were growing within five metres of the roadside, with the vast majority close to or alongside the road edge, suggesting they originated from seed dropped from passing vehicles (Agrisearch, 2001).

In the United Kingdom, Crawley and Brown (1995) found that along undisturbed roadways, the persistence of B. napus is about three to four years and that the density of such feral populations is correlated with human activities, such as vehicle transport. In a three-year assessment of feral populations in Scotland, Wilkinson et al. (1995) found that the turnover of populations was high, with only 19% of the 1993 population persisting into 1994 and 12% of the 1994 population persisting into 1995. Crawley and Brown (1995) obtained similar results in southern England. In a study conducted in Germany from 2001 to 2004, Dietz-Pfeilstetter, Metge and Schönfeld (2006) found persistence rates for feral populations of 29% between 2001 and 2002, of 12% between 2002 and 2003 and 80% between 2002 and 2004. However, molecular profiling using ISSR-PCR (inter-simple sequence repeats-polymerase chain reaction) revealed that plants appearing in successive years largely belonged to different genotypes, suggesting new seed input and an even higher turnover of populations.

Reuter et al. (2008) investigated a 500 km² area in the region of Bremen, Germany and reported average densities of 1.19/km² and 1.68/km² of feral and volunteer oilseed rape populations in rural and urban areas, respectively. The investigation showed that population density varies between years and feral plants tend to be smaller in stature (by at least 40%) than plants growing on cultivated land.

Surveys by Agrisearch (2001) and MacDonald and Kuntz (2000) suggest that to survive spring, B. napus roadside populations need to be regularly replenished. However, in France, Pessel et al. (2001) found roadside feral populations contained plants of old varieties that had not been grown for eight to nine years, indicating that the seed source was not entirely from recent vehicle spillage. These results are in keeping with previous reports that seed of old rapeseed varieties can persist for at least five to ten years after they were last reported grown (Squire et al., 1999; Orson, 2002). Pessel et al. (2001) suggested that the analysed roadside feral populations arose from multiple spillages from different fields or germination of seed from a mixed seed bank or most likely, both.

In Austria, Pascher et al. (2006) genetically analysed plants from 9 selected feral populations consisting of 50-150 individuals. They found the feral populations were genetically more diverse than could be explained by the dominant varieties grown in the area in the previous five years. They concluded that even though the feral populations largely reflected the genetic makeup of the dominate varieties being grown, a significant portion of plants had originated from seed banks older than five years. They also found that feral populations disappeared more quickly under dense grass cover than at sites with little vegetation, but genetic diversity remained unchanged. Their results indicated that genetic migration from commercial varieties to feral populations was five times greater than the inverse.
Feral populations in natural habitats

In natural (undisturbed) ecosystems, *B. napus* is not considered to be invasive or even a significant component of any natural plant community (AAFC, 1994; Warwick, Beckie and Small, 1999; Beckie, Hall and Warwick, 2001; Dignam, 2001).

Production and agronomy of Brassica oilseed crops

The world demand for edible oils and more recently for biodiesel has led to a rapid growth in the production of most oilseeds, with total seed oil produced increasing by about 4% each year. The percentage growth in the world Brassica seed oil production increased some 60% between 1996-09 and 2006-10 (Table 3.1). The locations of the major rapeseed/mustard producing regions over the two decades 1995-2014 are shown in Table 3.4. The expanded Brassica oilseed production has resulted from both an increase in the area sown globally, as well as the yield per unit area that has increased in most regions (Table 3.4).

Table 3.4. Area harvested, production and yield by major Brassica oilseed producing countries, averages 1995-99 to 2010-14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Producing country</th>
<th>Area harvested ('000 ha)</th>
<th>Production ('000 tonnes)</th>
<th>Seed yield (kg/ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E.U.¹</td>
<td>3 944</td>
<td>4 255</td>
<td>5 407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11 038</td>
<td>12 221</td>
<td>18 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 786</td>
<td>2 862</td>
<td>3 082</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>4 917</td>
<td>4 366</td>
<td>5 322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 866</td>
<td>6 237</td>
<td>10 510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 398</td>
<td>1 415</td>
<td>1 790</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China (People’s Republic of)</td>
<td>6 708</td>
<td>7 244</td>
<td>6 740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9 391</td>
<td>11 573</td>
<td>12 070</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 399</td>
<td>1 597</td>
<td>1 842</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>6 541</td>
<td>5 110</td>
<td>7 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 756</td>
<td>5 045</td>
<td>7 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>884</td>
<td>982</td>
<td>1 079</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia²</td>
<td>929</td>
<td>1 335</td>
<td>913</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 230</td>
<td>1 529</td>
<td>1 396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 370</td>
<td>1 146</td>
<td>1 084</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>292</td>
<td>497</td>
<td>452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>443</td>
<td>762</td>
<td>665</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 505</td>
<td>1 555</td>
<td>1 635</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Source: FAOSTAT.

Cultivation and management of oilseed crops

The small seeds of the Brassica oilseed crops require that the seed be sown at shallow depths, 2-3 cm below the soil surface, into a firm, moist seedbed. Under favourable growing conditions the seedlings emerge within four to five days of sowing. Cotyledon expansion is quickly followed by the formation of a rosette of seven to eight true leaves from which the flowering stalk bolts. The length of time the crop remains in the rosette stage can vary from less than 30 days to more than 210 days depending on climatic conditions and the species and form grown. The complete growth cycle may be as short as 70 days (*B. rapa*) or as long as 380 days for winter *B. napus* varieties in China (Sun et al., 1991).

Although the Brassica oilseed crops prefer a deep loam soil, it does well when sown in a wide range of soil types and conditions and can tolerate a pH range from 5.5 to 8. Compared to most other grain crops, Brassica oilseed crops require greater nutrient inputs to achieve high yields. Generally speaking, they need about 25% more nitrogen, phosphorus and potassium and up to 5 times more sulphur than a wheat crop. Harvested seed should be stored at no more than 9% moisture when cooled to 10°C to prevent deterioration due to fungal and/or insect activity. The usual rotation is as a break crop.
with cereals. Wheat yields following a *B. napus* crop invariably improve in Europe and Australia due the reduced level of cereal pathogens present and the control of grassy weeds (Almond, Dawkins and Askew, 1986).

**North and South America**

The oilseed rape/canola grown in North America is concentrated in the northern part of the Western Great Plains (Figure 3.26). The species and form grown is almost exclusively the spring or annual *B. napus*. In western Canada, less than 1% of the 5 million ha is sown to spring *B. rapa*. Production of the winter or biennial form of *B. napus* in North America is confined to a few thousand hectares in the Province of Ontario, Canada and a few west and central states in the United States. In South America, both spring and winter *B. napus* is produced on some 17 000 ha in central Chile.

Figure 3.26. *Areas of oilseed rape/canola production in North America*

Notes: Light grey indicates heavier production concentration.

Source: Courtesy Canola Council of Canada.

Cultural practices in the main oilseed rape production regions of western Canada and the United States have changed in recent years. Traditionally the crop was sown into summer fallow, land laid fallow the previous year. With the shift to continuous cropping and minimum tillage, *B. napus* is now sown into the undisturbed stubble of the previous year’s cereal crop. Weed control, which would normally be a problem with this direct seeding system, can now be easily achieved with the new broad spectrum, post-emergence herbicides such as glyphosate, glufosinate and the imidazolinones. The adoption of these herbicides and their associated herbicide resistant varieties has been extremely rapid (Figure 3.27).
II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – 179

Figure 3.27. Percentage of the total Canadian *B. napus* production area sown to herbicide resistant varieties, 1995-2008

Note: HR = herbicide resistant.

Source: Adapted from Beckie (2011).

The double disc grain drill has now been largely replaced by large air seeders that place the seed and fertilizer some 2-3 cm below the soil surface, at a seeding rate of 5-8 kg per hectare. Seed is treated with an insecticide-fungicide coating. The herbicide glyphosate is usually spring applied prior to seeding to control early germinated or biennial weeds. In North America, seeding generally occurs in early May. The herbicide of choice is applied at the recommended rate when the weeds are small and the leaves of the *B. napus* plants have not fully covered the ground. *B. rapa* fields begin flowering in mid-June while *B. napus* fields begin to flower about two weeks later in late June or early July. Recommended fungicides and/or insecticides may be applied as a spray if the pest incidence warrants. At harvest, in late August through September, the crop is normally swathed into windrows to allow more uniform ripening and to protect against seed losses due to pod shatter. Combining the swaths is done when the seed is mature and dry. However, some straight combining of the standing crop is also practiced. Usually the seed is farm stored at less than 9% moisture until marketed.

Chile is the only country in South America that produces a significant quantity of oilseed rape with planting of winter and spring *B. napus* on some 17 000 hectares in the southern provinces of the central part of the country. The crop is predominantly winter *B. napus*. The winter crop is sown in March and April, flowers in October and November and is harvested by straight combining in January. Winter kill may occur in May or June due to the wet soil freezing and heaving, causing broken roots. The spring crop is sown in August-September, flowers in October and is harvested in late December or early January. The crop is normally sown on land broken out of grass pasture using a disk or mould board plough, disked twice with a double disk cultivator and packed. Seed is sown with a double disk seeder or the less satisfactory one-way disk at 7-8 kg per hectare. Fertilizer requirements vary widely due to the sharply different soil types encountered in rapeseed growing areas. Levels of macronutrients nitrogen, phosphorous and, in some soils, sulphur are very low. Also lacking in some soils are the micronutrients manganese, copper and boron. At harvest, a desiccant is applied and after the appropriate interval, the crop is straight combined. The seed is normally artificially dried to less than 9% moisture prior to storage or marketing.
European crop cultivation and management

Winter oilseed rape (B. napus) is the dominant species grown in both Western and Eastern Europe (Poland, western Russian Federation and Ukraine); however, the area sown to spring B. napus is rapidly expanding (Figure 3.28). Some spring and winter B. rapa is grown in Finland and Sweden. In Germany over the past 13 years, the area sown to spring oilseed rape decreased from 10% to 1% of the oilseed rape growing area. Spring B. napus is used primarily as a replacement crop on winter oilseed rape fields that have been winter-killed. The optimum date for sowing the winter form varies with the latitude and the onset of winter. In northern European countries, the optimum sowing date is the last half of August while more southerly regions in France and Germany can delay seeding until early September. The objective is to produce plants that are large enough and have stored sufficient food reserves to withstand the rigours of winter. It is recommended that plants entering the winter show a vigorous growth, a well-developed root system (taproot about 8-10 mm in diameter) and have at least 6-8 true leaves. Seed is sown into well-worked soil at 5.0-5.5 kg per hectare when drilled and 8-9 kg per hectare if broadcast, to obtain fall stands of 50-85 plants/m² to allow for some winter kill.

Figure 3.28. Oilseed rape (B. napus) production regions in Europe showing millions of hectares of winter rape per country

Notes: The dotted line encircles the primary growing region for winter oilseed rape. Spring rape production is concentrated in Eastern Europe, primarily the Russian Federation (>0.5 M ha) and Ukraine (0.1-0.5 M ha).

Source: Adapted from information supplied by Norddeutsche Pflanzenzucht.
The seeding rates recommended for precision drilled hybrid varieties with a high branching density and a 1 000 seed weight of 4 g/1 000 is 1.2-1.6 kg per hectare and for seed of 7 g/1 000, 2.1-2.8 kg per hectare. The seeding rates for drilled hybrids are lower than for open pollinated varieties since the hybrid seed is likely to produce a more vigorous plant that better withstands the winter. The optimum spring plant population is reported to be 80-100 plants/m². Winter varieties are heavy users of nitrogen so frequently some nitrogen is incorporated prior to planting, with the balance top-dressed in the spring. Excessive nitrogen promotes vigorous fall growth but tends to make the crop more susceptible to winter kill. Phosphorus and potassium are applied before planting at the recommended levels. Sulfur is used in early spring in combination with N-fertilization. Boron is often applied in late spring in combination with fungicides. Nearly all seed is treated with a fungicide-insecticide combination (often with more than two active ingredients) to control seedling pests.

Disease, insect and weed control in the emerged crop is achieved by spraying the recommended products when needed. Flowering in northern Europe begins the last days in April, and harvest starts with some swathing at the end of July with the vast majority of the crop straight combined a week or so later. Harvest can continue through to the end of August. In southern regions, harvest commences about one to four weeks earlier.

Australian crop cultivation and management

Oilseed rape production in Australia is relatively recent with the first commercial production undertaken in 1969. In the early years, both *B. rapa* and *B. napus* spring varieties from Canada were imported and grown in the winter season. Today production is almost exclusively from Australian-bred *B. napus* varieties. Canola is grown in most cropping areas of Southern Australia, including Western Australia (Figure 3.29). Most of the *B. napus* crop is sown in late autumn or early winter (April to June) during the rainy period. The seed is primarily sown with air seeders at seeding rates of 4-6 kg per hectare with hybrid varieties being sown at about 3 kg per hectare. All seed is treated to control blackleg disease (*Leptosphaeria maculans* [Desm.] Ces. et de Not.) and some seed is treated for control of the red-legged earth mite (*Halotydeus destructor* Tucker). Flowering occurs in August and September with harvest in late spring or early summer (November and December). The growing season ranges from about 150-210 days, depending on latitude, rainfall, temperature and sowing date. Growth and yield of the crop is almost always limited by the amount of water available to the crop, particularly during maturation.

Due to the age of Australian soils, macronutrients (particularly nitrogen, phosphorous and sulphur) and micronutrients are deficient. Deficiencies in boron, manganese, molybdenum and zinc have been reported for *B. napus* crops, as has toxicity on the more acid soils due to high levels of aluminium and manganese. Most soils are strongly acidic and liming is necessary to achieve high yields. Initially oilseed rape was sown into well-worked soil, but with the availability of glyphosate as a pre-planting herbicide and varieties resistant to triazine and imidazolinone herbicides, direct seeding has become standard practice.

Oilseed rape is most frequently preceded by a pulse crop or pasture while fallow and wheat are other alternatives. When the canola crop precedes wheat in the rotation, substantial wheat yield benefits occur.
Indian sub-continent cultivation and management

The dominant Brassica oilseed crop on the Indian sub-continent is B. juncea, although a limited hectarage is sown to the B. rapa form, toria, which is grown from September through December in northern areas. B. napus and B. carinata are grown to a limited extent in some irrigated and dry land areas of northern and central Indian states, respectively. The major crop of B. juncea as well as small pockets of yellow and brown sarson (forms of B. rapa) are sown in October or early November and harvested in late March or early April. Flowering occurs in early January. Production is centred in the northern half of the sub-continent, in what is called the mustard belt (Figure 3.30). The untreated seed is normally broadcast on the ploughed and levelled fields and the seed buried by drawing a heavy plank over the field. The traditional practice of sowing the Brassica species mixed with a cereal grain is no longer employed to any degree and the sowing of pure stands of each crop is now normal practice.

However, mixed cropping is still practiced in several areas by few farmers. Double cropping in the mustard belt is the standard practice with mustard sown on the same land each year following the summer crop, which may be pulses (mung and urd bean) or green manure. Other alternatives are rice, cotton or millets (such as sorghum or pearl millet).

The recommended seeding rate for B. juncea is 4-5 kg per hectare. Fertilization with nitrogen-phosphorous-potassium, in the ratio of 80-40-40 kg per hectare, together with 40 kg of zinc and 25 kg of sulphur, is recommended.
Chinese cultivation and management

China is the world’s largest producer of Brassica oilseed crops, annually producing some 11.5 million tonnes. Species contributing to this output include winter and spring B. napus, B. juncea and both winter and spring forms of B. rapa. Production is primarily from B. napus (representing 95% of the total), but both B. juncea (4%) and B. rapa (1%) oilseed crops are also grown at various concentration in the different provinces.

B. napus is grown throughout the country with the winter form dominating in the southern provinces and the spring form in the north.

The provinces along the Yangtze River provide the bulk of China’s production. The level of winter hardiness required is not great. Indeed, Canadian and European varieties of the spring form have successfully survived the winters in the Chinese winter-growing region.

The spring-sown crops (B. napus, B. juncea and B. rapa) are sown in May, flower in June or early July and are harvested in September. The growing cycle for B. napus takes about 120 days. In the southern portion of the spring-growing area, half a season may be used to grow a forage or vegetable in conjunction with B. rapa. Because of the small field sizes, most are sown by hand or walking plough, although some large fields are mechanically sown. In the winter rape areas, the seed is sown into small seedling beds in September and the seedlings later transplanted into the production fields in mid- to late September. Flowering takes place in late March and harvest is in May. The total production cycle is about 220 days. The rotation in the triple cropping winter rape area is either rape-rice-rice or rape-maize-potato and in the double cropping regions rape-cotton or rape-rice.

Soil fertility is a limiting factor in production, with the area devoted to winter rape being particularly deficient in phosphorous. While all soils require nitorgen, phosphorous
and potassium, significant areas are deficient in the micronutrients zinc and boron, while shortages of manganese, copper and iron also occur.

Herbicide resistant *B. napus*

*B. napus* is not considered a significant weed in managed ecosystems (AAFC, 1994). However, due to the high level of seed lost during harvest it can be an abundant weed in subsequent crops. Légère et al. (2001) ranked *B. napus* as 18th in relative abundance among Canadian weed species in western Canada, and Leeson et al. (2005) found *B. napus* plants in 10.5% of the fields surveyed. Studies in both Canada and Europe have shown that the incorporation of genes for resistance to specific herbicides imparts no altered weediness or invasive potential for glyphosate, including different events (AAFC, 1995b, 1996a; Norris et al., 1999; Crawley et al., 2001); glufosinate-ammonium, including its combination with the hybrid system (AFFC, 1995a, 1995d, 1996b; Rasche and Gadsby, 1997; Norris et al., 1999; MacDonald and Kuntz, 2000); bromoxynil (PBO, 1998) and non-GM imidazolinone (AAFC, 1995c). Experience in western Canada from 1995 through 2011, with all HR systems, have confirmed the validity of these earlier assessments (Beckie, 2011; Warwick, Beckie and Hall, 2009; Beckie et al., 2006).

However, GM-HR volunteers can occur in subsequent *B. napus* crops. The level will depend on the interval between oilseed rape crops in the rotation and how well the producer has controlled volunteer *B. napus* in the intervening years. The shorter the rotation and the less volunteer control, the greater the contamination level in the second planting. The presence of one GM-HR canola plant per square metre throughout a field of conventional oilseed rape calculates to a GM content of 2.5% in the harvested conventional crop (planted at 40 plants/m$^2$). This calculation assumes that the number of seeds produced by a volunteer plant is the same as that produced by the conventional plants (CETIOM, 2000). However, Gruber and Claupein (2007) report that volunteer winter *B. napus* plants, growing in a sown rapeseed crop only yield 45% of the seed produced by corresponding sown plants.

Off-type volunteer plants can come from multiple sources, including the seed bank from previous crops, movement of farm equipment and animals, pollen flow and contaminated seed stocks. In Australia, Stanton, Pratley and Hudson (2002) found sheep can excrete viable or germinable *B. napus* seed up to five days after ingestion. Similarly, Martens (2001) claimed that manure from oilseed rape-fed chickens resulted in volunteer plants when the manure was spread on a field 12 months later. In Canada, Downey and Beckie (2002) and Friesen, Nelson and Van Acker (2003) found certified pedigreed seed lots of conventional varieties contained unacceptable levels of GM seeds, apparently resulting from pollen flow in breeding nurseries. The seed industry quickly purified their breeding stocks but absolute exclusion cannot be guaranteed. Feral populations may disseminate genes to nearby oilseed rape crops but the incidence would be very small and far less than several of the sources noted above (CETIOM, 2000; Wilkinson et al., 1995).

In all oilseed rape growing regions, leaving the soil untilled for a period after harvest and using non-inversion tillage is an effective strategy for minimising the size of the seed bank (Gruber and Claupein, 2007; Gulden, Shirtliffe and Thomas, 2003a). Ploughing, as done in Europe, will bury the seeds below germination depth but when the field is again ploughed the dormant seeds will be brought to the surface. Pre-emergence and in-crop post-emergence herbicide applications are effective in controlling volunteers even if they contain one, two or three different herbicide-resistance genes (Table 3.5; Downey and Buth, 2003). In western Canada, where herbicide tolerant oilseed rape has been grown
extensively for 15 years, there is no evidence that volunteer *B. napus* has increased or is more prevalent because of the herbicide resistance traits (Hall et al., 2000; Beckie et al., 2006, 2004).

**Oilseed certified seed production**

The production of oilseed *Brassica* sowing seed is normally undertaken within the areas where the *Brassica* crop is commercially grown. The rules under which pedigreed seed is produced and identified in the market place are stringent and extensive. Regulations vary from country to country but the minimum requirements for certified seed moving in international trade are governed by two international certification organisations. Both the OECD Seed Schemes and the Association of Official Seed Certifying Agencies (AOSCA) were developed to facilitate seed trade through mutual recognition of the official certification labels of member agencies. Member countries must meet OECD and AOSCA standards, but countries can – and most of them do – have domestic certification standards that exceed those minimums.

**Table 3.5. Number of herbicide products available for control of volunteer *B. napus* with nil, single or multiple herbicide tolerances in western Canada**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herbicide system</th>
<th>Number of products</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Susceptible</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liberty Link (LL)°</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roundup Ready (RR)°</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearfield (CF)°</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR × LL</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR × CF</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LL × CF</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR × LL × CF</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:** 1. LL Glufosinate; 2. RR Glyphosate; 3. CF Imidazolinone.

**Source:** Downey and Buth (2003). Courtesy AAFC Research Station, Saskatoon.

AOSCA has a focus on the United States but its members include also Argentina, Australia, Canada, Chile, New Zealand and South Africa. AOSCA standards cover not only varietal certification of seed but also germination, physical purity, disease and other quality traits. Their varietal certification requirements include a maximum variety impurity “seed” standard that is used for post-control verification testing.

The OECD Seed Schemes, which largely reflect the requirements of the European Union seed certification system, are increasingly implemented at the global level. They comprise 58 member countries including most of the countries discussed above. China and Pakistan are currently not members of the OECD Seed Schemes (situation November 2012). However, China is developing standards for *Brassica* crops and Pakistan has regulations that are similar to those of India. OECD seed standards do not deal with germination or physical purity but focus on varietal certification, based mainly on morphological characteristics during inspections of seed-production crops. In addition, minimum requirements and standards for verification, using post-control field testing, are mandatory.

Seed classes allowed are normally designated by the breeder or maintainer of the variety. For *Brassica* oilseed, the seed multiplication factor for each generation is typically large (>1 000:1). Thus, the seed classes designated for its species are normally
limited to three and identified under the OECD Seed Schemes as “basic”, “certified 1st” and “certified 2nd” generations, with the equivalent generations designated under AOSCA as “breeder”, “foundation” and “certified seed”. Normally only one generation is allowed for the foundation and certified classes. The OECD seed regulations for Brassicaceae oilseeds require a five-year interval between crops of the same species. AOSCA standards for production of foundation seed of *B. napus*, *B. juncea* and *B. rapa* require four years between crops of these species and a two-year interval when producing certified seed. Under OECD regulations, basic and certified seed-production fields of *B. napus* must be isolated from any possible source of cross-pollinating pollen by a minimum of 200 m and 100 m, respectively. AOSCA regulations require foundation producing fields of *B. napus*, *B. juncea* and *B. rapa* to be isolated from any other crop of the same kind by 201 m, 402 m and 402 m respectively. For certified producing fields of these three species, the respective isolation distance required is 100 m, 402 m and 100 m. Both sets of regulations require all seed-production fields to be inspected by the designated authority at least three times for basic seed production and three times on each parental line for the production of certified seed of hybrid varieties, i.e. before the flowering stage, in the early flowering stage and before the end of the flowering stage. Fields must also meet stringent standards for varietal purity (visual characteristics) as well as freedom from cross-pollinating species and other crop kinds.

It must be emphasised that the above are minimum standards, with most countries having higher requirements as well as many seed companies exceeding the more stringent domestic regulations. Open-pollinated varieties of *B. napus* are rapidly being replaced by F1 hybrid varieties, and a similar situation is likely to occur in *B. juncea* within the next few years. The requirement for nearly absolute purity of the female parent is mandatory if the hybrid is to produce the desired level of heterosis. The male restorer parent must also breed true for restoration of hybrid fertility. Thus, the hybrid regulations for isolation distances under AOSCA are much greater at 804 m while most seed companies use 1 000 m or more. Also, foundation and certified producing crops for hybrid seed production cannot be grown on land which has grown *B. napus*, *B. rapa*, *B. juncea* or oilseed *R. sativa* in the past five and three years, respectfully.

The studies by Downey and Beckie (2002) and Friesen, Nelson and Van Acker (2003) that identified some Canadian certified *B. napus* seed lots as containing undesirable levels of foreign herbicide resistance traits are often cited as sources of contamination. Regulators and the seed industry moved quickly to correct this situation. Today the Canadian Food Inspection Agency (CFIA) carries out seed testing of *Brassica* oilseed varieties for: 1) adventitious presence (AP) of approved events; and 2) herbicide trait purity of glyphosate and glufosinate ammonium resistant varieties. All official reference control samples for oilseed rape varieties submitted to the CFIA’s Variety Registration Office at the time of registration of a new variety are subject to AP testing and if the variety is herbicide resistant, to herbicide purity trait testing. Furthermore, the CFIA also monitors AP and trait purity of foundation and certified seed. In instances where AP and/or trait purity issues are identified, the breeder of the variety is notified and appropriate action is taken (Canadian Food Inspection Agency, 2009).

The Canadian Seed Growers Association (CSGA) (2009) have also revised its “Regulations and Procedures for Breeder Seed Crop Production” so that seed certificates are only issued for breeder seed crops that are produced within a third-party audited quality management system (QMS) and verified to preserve varietal identity. Further, non-compliance with QMS requirements can lead to suspension or cancellation of the
professional recognition of a plant breeder, which is required in both CFIA variety registration and CSGA seed crop certification.

Brassica vegetable seed-production locations and management

The market for Brassica vegetables has, in recent years, experienced a steady increase in demand. This expansion has been aided by widespread refrigerated transportation systems that can provide a year-round supply of such vegetables to most markets. The Brassica vegetable crop with the greatest demand for seed is cabbage, followed by the B. rapa Asian vegetables and broccoli. The world requirement for cauliflower seed is less while the demand for turnip, rutabagas and kohlrabi is relatively small. Accompanying the increased commercialisation of Brassica vegetable production has been the need to provide large quantities of seed of high quality and varietal purity. This requirement has resulted in the majority of the seed being produced in specific locations where climate and isolation from other Brassica crops are favourable for consistent high yield and quality. To aid the growing international trade in vegetable seed, the OECD has established a Scheme for the Certification or Control of Vegetable Seed which requires field and seed inspection by an accredited authority, within the country of origin, to ensure the seed meets varietal purity standards, including freedom from cross-pollinating species. The OECD Vegetable Seed Scheme provides for the production of “certified seed”, and the designation of “standard seed”, corresponding to two different control requirements. Other organisations that facilitate the seed trade include the International Seed Federation (ISF), which has defined trading terms and rules dealing with sales, can arbitrate settlements and assists with import and export licenses: ISF regional seed industry organisations, such as the Asia and Pacific Seed Association (APSA), which seeks to improve vegetable seed production and trade in the region (George, 2009). Many companies also use a QSM as described above for oilseed seed production.

Locations of concentrated vegetable seed production

In developing countries, vegetable seed is primarily supplied from farm-saved seed, and more rarely from the formally organised seed sector. In countries with strong agricultural and horticultural industries, nearly all the seed is from commercial pedigreed sources. For large-scale seed production of the biennial Brassica vegetables, seed companies have concentrated production in areas with relatively mild winters and moderate summer temperatures. In Europe, such areas are found in Belgium, Brittany (France), northern Italy and the Netherlands.

In North America, among the Brassica vegetables, broccoli has the greatest seed demand followed by cabbage and cauliflower. The market for the seeds of collard, Brussels sprouts and the Asian vegetables is much smaller. Seed production of these crops is concentrated in valleys of Oregon and Washington states (e.g. Oregon’s Willamette Valley). Selected areas in California and Arizona are also important producers of broccoli and cauliflower seed. Essentially all broccoli and cabbage varieties produced in the United States are F1 hybrids. In contrast, most cauliflower varieties are highly inbred and uniform, self-pollinating populations, but in recent years more and more F1 hybrids have entered the market (Farnham, 2007). F1 and inbred varieties of collards, Brussels sprouts and kale provide seed to the commercial market. In South America, Chile is a significant supplier of vegetable Brassica seed.

In Australia, seed production of Brassica vegetable crops is centred in Tasmania in the regions of the Coal River Valley, Derwent Valley, central East Coast,
Hagley/Westbury and Devonport. Tasmania is climatically suited for “counter-season” seed production for the northern hemisphere markets of Asia and Europe. Major seed crops produced in 2001 were hybrid cabbage (150 ha) and cauliflower (97 ha) (Government of Tasmania, 2003). Cabbage and cauliflower are high-value autumn planted crops while the lower value mustard and Chinese vegetable types are spring sown. Locations for hybrid seed production of cabbage and cauliflower are determined by the need for an isolation zone of 1.5-3 km from other crops of the same botanical family. Grower awareness and consultation between companies ensures adequate isolation distances.

In New Zealand, the Canterbury Plains and other smaller areas of the South Island (43° south) have become a major vegetable seed-production location, particularly for the Asian Brassica vegetables. In this region, the seed merchants and growers have put in place an isolation mapping system to avoid cross-pollination among different species and varieties. The system is operated by a government-owned company called AgriQuality that displays an Internet map of every farm field involved in seed production. When a seed contract is arranged and a field is selected, the seed merchant logs the details into the system and can see if there are any conflicts within the isolation distance required. Normal minimum isolation distance for the Brassica crops is 1,000 m, but that can be extended, particularly with hybrid seed production.

Not all seed-production regions are maritime based. In China, cauliflower and broccoli seed production is concentrated in semi-desert regions around the cities of Jiuquan and Jiayuguan in Gansu and in Yunnan provinces. In these high-elevation areas precipitation is minimal, but irrigation is available and the temperatures remain within the required range. Cabbage and Chinese cabbage seed production is located further south in Hebei, Henan, Shandong and Shanxi provinces (X.-W. Wang, personal communication). In these regions the normal isolation distances between production fields is 1,000 m.

On the Indian sub-continent, no concentrated areas for seed production were identified. However, small individual fields occur scattered in the foothill valleys of the Himalayas. For the production of certified cauliflower seed, the minimum isolation distance is 1,000 m (Indian Minimum Certification Standards).

In Japan, no concentrated area exists for large-scale seed production. However, various Brassica vegetables (B. rapa and B. juncea) are cultivated locally (Inomata, 2007) and seed production is practiced on a small scale. The minimum isolation distance required for seed production is 600 m.

George (2009) notes that most authorities recommend having a greater distance (up to 1,500 m) between different types of B. oleracea (cabbage vs. kohlrabi) than between varieties of the same type (two cabbage varieties, up to 1,000 m).

Vegetable seed cultivation and management

The optimum pH for cole crops is reported to be 6.0 to 6.5 with the generally recommended ratio of N-P-K nutrients being 1:2:2 at soil preparation, but it varies depending on the production region (George, 2009). The lower ratio of nitrogen is to avoid “soft plants” that are less winter hardy. Extra nitrogen is normally topdressed in the spring. It is important to ensure that adequate levels of sulphur as well as the micronutrients boron, manganese and molybdenum are available. The development of hybrids in Brussels sprouts has become very important (George, 2009) with self-incompatible and cytoplasmic male sterility (CMS) hybrids becoming more frequent.
in cabbage, cauliflower, kale and kohlrabi. The ratio of male to female in hybrid production fields is normally 1:1 or 1:2 (Takahashi, 1987).

Most cabbage and cole crops and some Asian vegetables are biennials and will not bolt until they have been exposed to temperatures of 4-7°C for 6-8 weeks. Day length has no affect on bolting or flower initiation (Nieuwhof, 1969). At the end of the first year, cabbage plants can withstand temperatures of -12°C to -14°C for extended periods, but lower temperatures can cause much damage, as can alternating periods of frost and thaw (Nieuwhof, 1969). The usual practice in producing cabbage seed is to sow in the summer with the plants over-wintering, bolting in the spring and to harvest the seed in summer. Cultivars differ in their winter hardiness with red cabbages the least hardy and savoy the hardiest. Summer temperatures are also important in determining seed yield. Temperatures above 25°C arrest growth and cause seed abortion. Because of these environmental constraints, commercial production tends to be concentrated in areas with mild winters, sufficiently cold to ensure vernalization without winter kill, combined with moderate summer temperatures. The availability of irrigation is also important to obtaining uniform high yields.

Seeding of the biennial crops in the northern hemisphere is normally done in mid-June to mid-August. If the seed is to be sown in beds for transplanting, rather than direct seeding into the field, seeding should be done about ten days earlier than the field sowing to allow for the plant setback brought on by transplanting (Nieuwhof, 1969). The recommended rate for field sowing is 3-5 kg per hectare, unless precision sowing is practiced, where only 1-2 kg per hectare is needed. Plants are thinned to 35-40 cm between plants within the row. To increase the over-wintering survival rate, plants may be earthed up covering the most sensitive plant portion just below the head. Weed control is critical, as in mild winters weeds may over grow the crop. Most of the cole crops are self-incompatible and depend on insects, primarily honey bees, to effect fertilisation. Harvesting is done once the pods have turned yellow and the seeds brown. Depending on field size and seed value, harvesting may be done by various methods from hand cutting and threshing to straight combining. Kohlrabi, although a true biennial, can be vernalized by initiating germination through pre-soaking the seed for 8-9 hours at 20ºC followed by a cold treatment of -1ºC for 35-50 days. The treated seed can then be sown directly into the field in the spring and the seed crop harvested in the fall. Brussels sprouts and kale are grown for seed in the same manner as cabbages.

For cauliflower and broccoli crops, only a mild vernalization period is required so environmental limitations are less stringent. However, as a seed crop, these forms normally require an extended growing season. Selection of cauliflower varieties for a tighter curd has resulted in slow and incomplete bolting, thus further extending the required growing season. In Western Europe, cauliflower is sown in September and over-wintered under glass with transplanting to the field in early spring. Transplants are spaced on a 50 × 50 cm or smaller grid. Flowering occurs in July or August and the crop is harvested in September or early October. Seed production of tropical and subtropical cauliflower is discussed by Lal (1993).

Drying the harvested \textit{Brassica} vegetable seed is frequently required. To maintain germination capacity, the maximum air drying temperature should not exceed 60°C. If seed is to be stored for a year, maximum moisture content should not exceed 9% with a storage temperature of 5-10°C.

The biennial turnips and Swedes (rutabaga) regenerate from growing points at or near ground level. This means they can benefit from a large underground source of nutrients
for seed production. Thus, these crops are more winter hardy than cole crops and can be grown for seed over a much wider environmental range. However, the market for their seed is relatively small, so seed companies tend to contract their production with growers in areas already producing seed of other *Brassica* vegetable crops.

The *B. rapa* vegetables prefer a soil pH between 6.0 and 7.5 with an N-P-K fertilisation ratio at planting of 2:1:1. Additional nitrogen fertiliser is normally applied at anthesis (George, 2009). The seed is produced by either the head-to-seed or the seed-to-seed method described by Opeña, Kuo and Yoon (1988). As with the cole crops, the ratio of male to female in hybrid production fields is 1:1 or 1:2 (Takahashi, 1987).

Centres of origin and ancestors

Introduction

There are few areas of the world where members of the family Brassicaceae are totally absent. The exceptions are parts of the tropics, were the family is thinly represented, but where some introduced cosmopolitan weeds have become established. The genera and species of the family occur in greatest number and diversity in the temperate zone of the northern hemisphere and in particular, the areas surrounding the Mediterranean basin and throughout the southwest and central regions of Asia (Figure 3.31; Hedge, 1976). Although the generic and specific endemism in the family is highest in the Irano-Turanian region, the centre of origin of the current subtribe Brassicinae, lies in the Mediterranean basin (Hedge, 1976).

Using chloroplast DNA restriction sites together with cpDNA probes, Warwick and Black (1991) surveyed 33 diploid taxa of the Brassicinae. The phylogenetic results indicated there were clearly two ancient and distinct evolutionary lineages within the subtribe. They found the “Nigra” lineage to include *B. nigra*, *B. fruticulosa*, *B. tournefortii*, *Sinapis pubescens*, *S. alba*, *S. flexuosa*, *S. arvensis*, *Coincya cheiranthos*, *Erucastrum canariense* and *Hirschfeldia incana*. The other lineage, termed “Rapa/Oleracea”, was made up of *Brassica rapa*, *B. oleracea* and subsp. *alboglabra*, the *B. rupestris-villosa* complex (*B. rupestris*, *B. drepanensis*, *B. macrocarpa*, *B. villosa*), *B. barrelieri*, *B. deflexa*, *B. oxyrrhina*, *B. gravinae*, *Diplotaxis erucoides*, *D. tenuifolia*, *Eruca sativa*, *Raphanus raphanistrum*, *R. sativus* and *Sinapis aucheri*. In the “Nigra” lineage, *B. nigra* was most closely related to the annual *Sinapis* species *S. arvensis* and *S. alba* (Figure 3.31). Only a single mutation difference was found between the crop and weedy accessions of *B. rapa* and between crop accessions of *B. oleracea* and wild accessions of *B. oleracea* subsp. *oleracea* and subsp. *alboglabra* (Warwick and Black, 1991). The weedy species *R. raphanistrum* and the crop species *R. sativus* differed by only four mutations.

Although the economically important *Brassica* species arose from ancestors in the Mediterranean region, wars and trade ensured their wide dispersal, resulting in islands of isolated environmental and selection pressure. The earliest widely distributed species were those that exhibited seed dormancy combined with useful traits. Seed dormancy allowed the introduced seed to survive long after its introduction. The fast-growing, weedy type of *B. rapa*, providing lamp oil and animal feed, and *B. nigra* as an oil and spice source, would be prime candidates. The Mission Trail in Southern California is a case in point: priests scattered *B. nigra* seed to mark the trail between the early Missions. Parts of those trails can still be seen each year as the black mustard blooms on the California hillsides.
Figure 3.31. Phylogenetic tree for the subtribe Brassicinae, based on PAUP analyses of the chloroplast DNA restriction site/length mutations shared by two or more taxa/accessions

Notes: PAUP is a computational phylogenetics programme for Phylogenetic Analysis Using Parsimony that infers evolutionary trees (phylogenies). Tree length in this tree is 489 steps, consistency index is 0.491. Tree topology indicates how accessions are related, and branch length (numbers above the branches) indicates the minimal number of mutational steps occurring during the evolution of a particular taxa. Mutations unique to a given species and to the genus Raphanus (number indicated in brackets at the end of a branch) should be added to determine terminal branch length. ANC indicates a common hypothetical common ancestor.


B. nigra

B. nigra is amongst the oldest recorded spices, being noted in the Sanskrit writings of about 3000 B.C. as “Sarshap” (Prakash, 1961). However, little is known about B. nigra’s true centre of origin. Hemingway (1995) placed it in Irano-Turanian, Saharo-Sindian region (Figure 3.32). However, Prakash and Hinata (1980) favoured an origin in Central and south Europe. Its use as a commercial spice ensured its very early, widespread distribution across Europe, Africa, Asia and India, and its dehiscing siliques ensured its persistence. The crop was grown for the sharply pungent chemical (allyl isothiocyanate) released when the crushed seed was mixed with a small amount of water, in the same way that B. juncea powdered mustard is used today. Until the 1950s B. nigra was the world’s major source of pungent mustard, but because it shatters as soon as the pods are ripe it required hand harvesting. Thus, it was replaced in a single decade by highly pungent...
B. juncea varieties well suited to mechanical harvesting. Today there is essentially no commercial production of B. nigra and it has become a weed of waste places in many regions. It is an introduced species to the Americas and Australia. It has never become established on the Canadian prairies although it is present throughout much of the United States.

B. rapa

B. rapa is generally believed to have originated in the mountainous areas near the Mediterranean sea rather than the coastal areas (Tsunoda, 1980). As with B. nigra, B. rapa had a wide distribution before recorded history. Indian Sanskrit literature first mentions the plant about 1599 B.C. as “Siddharth” (Prakash, 1961). Burkill (1930) proposed that the leafy vegetable forms were developed in China from the oilseed form about 2 000 years ago. Seeds of both B. rapa and B. juncea were found in excavations of the ancient village of Banpo, Xian, Shanxi Province, China that existed in Neolithic times 6 000-7 000 years ago (Liu, 1985). Turnip seeds were also found in pottery jars from the 5th century B.C. at the Yang-shao agrological site in Shensi Province (Chang, 1970). Cultivation of B. rapa is also mentioned in the oldest collection of Chinese poetry, Shi Jing (the book of Odes), written during the Chunqui period about 535 A.D. (Liu, 1985; Chapman and Wang, 2002). In Scandinavia, B. rapa seeds were being consumed as early as 350 B.C. as indicated by their presence in the stomach of the Tollund man (Renfrew, 1973).

Figure 3.32. Evolutionary geography of B. juncea, B. carinata and Sinapis alba

Sinskaia (1928) proposed two main centres of origin, with the Mediterranean area as the primary centre for the European form, and Afghanistan with the adjoining portion of Pakistan as the other primary centre. Asia Minor, the Transcaucasus and Iran were considered secondary centres. Alam (1945) concluded that the Sarson and Toria types of B. rapa, now grown as oil crops in India and Pakistan, evolved in the Afghan-Persian area and migrated south to India and further east. McNaughton (1995a) concluded that multiple domestication of the wild forms for oilseed occurred from the Mediterranean to India about 2000 B.C. with later selection for short stature and leafiness in the Far East (China) resulting in the numerous B. rapa vegetable forms. Tsunoda and Nishi (1968) proposed that, with selection for increased leaf number, subsp. chinensis, and japonica
evolved and with increased leaf size and head forming, *pekinensis*, *narinosa* and *nipposinica* were selected. Cultivation of the oilseed form in Europe as a source of lamp oil is thought to have been under way by the 13th century, first as an annual form from which the biennial form was selected (Appelqvist and Ohlson, 1972). In northern Europe, turnip evolved from the biennial oilseed form through selection for bulbous roots (McNaughton, 1995a). Cartier in 1540 is credited with the first introduction of turnips into North America and more specifically to eastern Canada. They were also being grown in the Virginia colony by 1609 (Sauer, 1993). Canadian commercial production of the oilseed form began in 1943.

**B. oleracea**

*B. oleracea* has its centre of origin in the Mediterranean region (Snogerup, 1980). The wild forms of the *B. oleracea* complex still grow along the coast of the Mediterranean sea and Atlantic ocean from Greece to England (Figure 3.33). Snogerup, Gustafsson and Von Bothmer (1990) concluded from morphological and crossing studies among the wild *B. oleracea* forms, including *B. oleracea*, *B. cretica* Lam., *B. bilariolons* Post., *B. insularis* Moris., *B. vilora* Biv., *B. incana* Ten., *B. macrocarpa* Guss. and *B. montana* Pourr., that these species should be considered subspecies of *B. oleracea* along with the cultivated forms. These conclusions were confirmed by Von Bothmer, Gustafsson and Snogerup (1995) through a crossing programme involving ten wild taxa and six major cultivated forms. Snogerup, Gustafsson and Von Bothmer (1990) reported that all wild forms of the *B. oleracea* complex were suffrutescent perennials, exhibiting no primary dormancy. They are also self-compatible and readily intercross within the group and with cultivated forms. They also identified some wild *B. oleracea* tetraploid plants and reported a higher fertility rate in F1 hybrids between the wild *B. oleracea* and the cultivated forms than with the other wild subspecies.

Mutation, adaptation and selection within these populations yielded the present-day forms of cabbage, savoy, kales, collard, broccoli, Brussels sprouts, cauliflower and kohlrabi. The kales, several thousand years ago, were probably the first cultivated forms. They were grown as early as 600 B.C. by the Greeks while ancient Roman writers described heading cabbage and possibly kohlrabi (Thompson, 1976). De Candolle (1885) suggested cabbage was first domesticated somewhere in Western Europe by the Celts during the first millennium B.C. Support for this conclusion comes from the respective English, German and French common names “cabbage”, “kopf or kohl” and “cabus”, which are all probably derived from the Celtic word “cap” or “kap”, meaning head (Prakash and Hinata, 1980). A number of authors have theorised, but lacked the research to support their views, as to which species in the *B. oleracea* complex gave rise to the various cultivated forms (Helm, 1963; Neutrofal, 1927; Schiemann, 1932; Schulz, 1936; Lizzunova, 1959). After considerable investigation, Snogerup (1980) concluded that: 1) headed cabbages originated from west European *B. oleracea* and savoy cabbage may have resulted from introgression with other cole crops; 2) branched bush kales originated from *B. cretica* in Greece; 3) stem kales probably arose from the *rupestris-incana* complex; 4) the origin of the inflorescence kales such as cauliflower and broccoli is uncertain although Schulz (1936) provided some evidence that *B. cretica* could be the ancestor; and 5) *B. alboglabra* originated from *B. cretica* in Greece and was carried east by traders. Today, *B. oleracea* var. *alboglabra*, or Chinese kale, is among the ten most important market vegetables in Southeast Asia, including Thailand and China (Rakow, 2004). Little is known as to when forms of *B. oleracea* arrived in Asia but Schafer (1977) noted that kohlrabi was being cultivated in Tang’ times (600-900 A.D.).
Figure 3.33. Distribution of wild “species” of *B. oleracea* in 1990

Note: Introductions of *B. oleracea* outside its spontaneous area are not mapped.

Source: Modified from Snogerup, Gustafsson and Von Bothmer (1990).

*B. napus*

*B. napus* with its oilseed, forage and root forms is a relatively recent species. The Greeks and Romans knew of the Swede or rutabaga root crop, but reference to these forms does not appear in the ancient literature. Although Prakash and Hinata (1980) state that no wild *B. napus* populations have been found, Linné reported wild forms growing on the beaches of Gothland (Sweden), the Netherlands and Britain (cited by De Candole, 1885). Since the species is the result of an interspecific cross between a plant or plants of *B. rapa* and the *B. oleracea* complex, it could only have arisen in the Mediterranean or the European west coastal regions, where the two species were growing in close proximity (Figure 3.33). Olsson (1960) suggested that *B. napus* could have arisen several times by spontaneous hybridisation between different forms of *B. rapa* and *B. oleracea*. Evidence from chloroplast and mitochondrial DNA suggests that *B. montana* might be closely related to the maternal prototype that gave rise to *B. napus* (Song and Osborn, 1992). That *B. oleracea* was the maternal parent is supported by both Erickson, Straus and Beversdorf (1983) and Ohkawa (1986). However, Flannery et al. (2006), using SSR (simple sequence repeat) *Brassica* plastid markers, noted that *B. rapa* always grouped with *B. napus* and concluded that *B. rapa* is the more likely plastid genome donor. Further, Allender and King (2010), using chloroplast and nuclear markers, concluded that it is highly unlikely that *B. oleracea* or any of the C genome species are closely related to the maternal progenitor of most *B. napus* accessions. They suggest that a *B. rapa* strain from northern Italy called “spring broccoli raab” may be the closest extant relative of the *B. napus* maternal ancestor. However, the data also suggest that the interspecific cross may have occurred more than once, with *B. napus* having multiple origins. Thus, the
Swede or rutabaga could have originated in medieval gardens where turnips and kale grew side by side (McNaughton, 1995b). There is general agreement that the winter or biennial form of *B. napus* originated in northern Europe. On the other hand, forage rape almost certainly evolved from the oilseed form.

Cultivation of oilseed rape in Europe was under way by at least the Middle Ages (Appelqvist and Ohlson, 1972). It is only in relatively recent times that *B. napus* oilseed forms have been introduced to other parts of the world (Figure 3.34). *B. napus* did not arrive in China or Japan until about 1860-70, with the coming of European traders (Liu, 1985; Shiga, 1970). European immigrants introduced the forage and root crop forms into North and South America in the 17th and 18th centuries. In China, Japan and Korea *B. napus* proved to be more productive than the indigenous oilseed forms of *B. rapa*. Today most of the oilseed rape produced in China, Japan and Korea is harvested from *B. napus* cultivars that have been bred from interspecific crosses between introduced *B. napus* and the older indigenous *B. rapa* cultivars (Shiga, 1970). *B. napus* is less adapted to the Indian sub-continent due to the short days and warm growing conditions. Commercial production of the oilseed form did not occur until 1942 in Canada and 1969 in Australia.

Figure 3.34. *Dispersal of the B. napus species from a proposed centre of origin*

Notes: Distribution occurred throughout Europe in the 16th century, the Americas in the 17th and 18th centuries, and China and the Far East in the 19th century.

Source: Modified from Liu (1985).

**B. juncea**

*B. juncea* appears to have a much longer history than *B. napus*, even though it is also the result of an interspecific cross (*B. rapa × B. nigra*). Fraction 1 protein data (Uchimiya and Wildman, 1978) and chloroplast DNA analysis established that *B. rapa* functioned as the female parent in the formation of this species (Erickson, Straus and Beversdorf, 1983; Palmer, 1988; Palmer et al., 1983; Song, Osborn and Williams, 1988a, 1988b; Warwick and Black, 1991; Yang et al., 2002). However, Qi, Zhang and Yang (2007) reported that some Chinese phenotypes may have evolved with *B. nigra* as the maternal parent. They investigated the nuclear internal transcribed spacer (ITS) regions of ribosomal DNA from 15 different Chinese vegetable phenotypes and one oilseed form (pictures of the 16 phenotypes, including 2 root forms, are provided in the publication). They found that four of the accessions, including the oilseed form, apparently had *B. nigra* as the maternal...
parent, a finding at odds with the RFLP and chloroplast DNA investigations noted above. However, the difference may be related to the limited Chinese genotypes that were available to other researchers.

There has been much speculation in the literature as to the centre(s) of origin for *B. juncea*. However, Prain (1898), Sinskaia (1928) and Vavilov (1949) all agree that China, where the greatest divergence of forms occurs, is one centre of origin. In addition, Vavilov (1949) also identified Afghanistan and adjoining regions as a second primary centre. This observation was supported by Olsson (1960) and Mizushima and Tsunoda (1967) as well as Tsunoda and Nishi (1968), who found wild forms growing on the plateaus in Asia Minor and southern Iran. India and the Caucasus have also been put forward as secondary centres (Hemingway, 1995; Figure 3.32). There is strong evidence for China as a primary site. As noted in the *B. rapa* section above, *B. juncea* has a long history in China. Leafy, vegetable forms of *B. juncea* mustard are also consumed in great quantities in China and other Asian countries (Herklots, 1972; Nishi, 1980). The greatest range in leaf types occur in Sichuan Province within the varieties of *rugosa*, *japonica*, *integrifolia* and *cernua*. A root-forming type has also been selected and cultivated in northern China with the variety names of *napiformis* and *tumida* (Nishi, 1980; Chen et al., 2005).

The *B. juncea* from Afghanistan and Asia Minor is believed to have migrated south to Pakistan and India where a secondary centre of origin was established (Figure 3.32). The earliest direct reference to *B. juncea* is in the Indian Sanskrit literature about 1500 B.C., where it is mentioned as “Rajika” (Prakash and Hinata, 1980). The existence of two primary centres in China and the Middle East-India is supported by the fact that the Indian sub-continent and Chinese oilseed forms not only differ in morphological traits (Sinskaia, 1928), but also chemically and in day-length requirements. The seed from Indian *B. juncea* material contains mainly 3-butenyl glucosinolate and the crop is day neutral, while the Chinese spring-sown oilseed forms contain only 2-propenyl (allyl) glucosinolate and are long day requiring. The Chinese material also contains pure yellow seeded strains which are absent in the Indian material. The Russian material displays most of the same characteristics as the Chinese material and although it may also have resulted from an independent interspecific cross, more likely it was carried into the Russian Federation from China or Mongolia via the Northern Silk Road. Wu et al. (2009) investigated the relationships among 95 *B. juncea* accessions originating from China, France, India, Japan and Pakistan, using sequenced related amplified polymorphisms (SRAPs). They found the Chinese vegetable phenotypes formed a highly diverse group with the spring- and winter-sown oilseed forms split into two separate groupings. The winter-sown accessions exhibited more genetic diversity than the spring-sown accessions but less than the vegetable group. The SRAP markers did not provide a clear-cut separation between the Indian/Pakistan and Chinese winter-sown mustards. Srivastava et al. (2001), using AFLP markers, investigated the relatedness of oilseed *B. juncea* cultivars from Australia (2 cultivars), Canada (2), China (2), Europe (6), India (7) and Tibet (1). Their data separated the cultivars into an Indian/Chinese group and a second cluster of the remaining ones. Their findings and that of Wu et al. (2009) suggest a close relationship between the Chinese northern spring-sown oilseed cultivars and the European mustards, while the winter-sown cultivars are closely associated with the Indian form. The data from both Wu et al. (2009) and Qi, Zhang and Yang (2007) support the contention of Song, Osborn and Williams (1988b) that the vegetable and oilseed mustards had a polyphyletic origin and evolved separately.
B. carinata

*B. carinata*, commonly called Abyssinian or Ethiopian mustard or simply “carinata”, is an amphidiploid species derived from and containing the full genomic complement of the putative parental species, *B. nigra* (black mustard) as the female and *B. oleracea* as the male (Uchimiya and Wildman, 1978; Palmer et al., 1983; Song, Osborn and Williams, 1988b; Erickson, Straus and Beversdorf, 1983). The plant is cultivated on a small scale on the Ethiopian plateau. *B. carinata* may have originated from a hybrid between kale, which is grown on the plateau, and wild *B. nigra*, which is also present. However, this species, as with others in this group, almost certainly originated in the Mediterranean basin where the two putative parental species were growing in close proximity. It is believed that the cross occurred many eons ago when the climate on the African side of the Mediterranean was moist and lush. However, as the climate of this region became dryer and hotter, *B. carinata*, together with the plant community of the region that included castor oil plant and coffee, moved to the south and became isolated in the Ethiopian highlands. Thus, Ethiopia in effect preserved the environment of the centre of origin of *B. carinata* (Figure 3.32). Farmers of northeast Africa grow the plant both for its leaves, which are plucked, boiled and eaten, and for the edible oil in the seed. The local common name for the crop is *gomenzer*. The interspecific cross that created this species does not appear to have occurred elsewhere in nature or, if it did, the progeny did not survive. There is no commercial production of this species, other than in Ethiopia and neighbouring countries where the crop is grown on small holdings or in kitchen gardens. However, the species is being investigated and bred for potential commercial production in Australia, Canada, India and Spain.

Sinapis alba

*Sinapis alba* has its centre of origin in the eastern Mediterranean region (Figure 3.32) and wild forms are present around most of the Mediterranean littoral (Hemingway, 1995). In China, *S. alba* appears to have been cultivated by the middle of the first millennium A.D. (Hemingway, 1995).

Reproductive biology

**Generation time and duration under natural and managed conditions**

Generation and flowering times are discussed in the above sections dealing with cultivation and management.

**Reproduction**

*Floral biology*^4^

The basic floral characteristics of all the *Brassica* species included in this chapter are essentially the same, differing only in flower size. The floral arrangement in *Brassica* species is typically a corymbiform raceme. Flowering is indeterminate beginning at the lowest part of the main raceme and auxiliary branches, and continuing upward. The inflorescence may attain a length of 1-2 m. The buds begin opening under the pressure of the rapidly growing petals. The process of flower opening begins in the afternoon and is all but complete very early the following morning. The stigma is receptive from three days before to three days after the flower opens (Mohammad, 1935). Day length can play a critical role in initiating bolting of the flowering stem. Species such
as *S. alba* are very day-length sensitive while some cultivars of *B. napus* and *B. juncea* are day neutral.

Both the onset of flowering and duration of the flowering period are variable and quite dependent on weather, particularly temperature. Low temperatures decrease the rate of plant development and hence the onset and rate of flowering is delayed. Low plant density results in secondary branching, thus extending the flowering period. If plants are pruned back when still green, regrowth and a second flush of flowers can be obtained. Flowers produced on regrowth are typically smaller and less productive than the first formed flowers (Downey, Klaasen and Stringham, 1980).

The flowers of the *Brassica* species are regular, bisexual and hypogynous. The differentiation of the flower proceeds through the successive development of four free sepals in two whorls, medium and transverse, six stamens, two carpels and four free diagonally placed petals (Figures 3.2 and 3.35). The flowers have one pair of lateral stamens with shorter filaments and four median stamens with longer filaments. When the anthers are a few millimetres in length, the pollen mother cells, after meiosis, give rise to the tetrads. The pollen grains are 30-40 µm in diameter and have three germination pores. The sutures of the anthers are introse in the bud stage, but the four long anthers become extrose as the flower opens (except in the *B. rapa* Yellow Sarson form where they remain introse).

Figure 3.35. Typical flower of *B. napus*

![Typical flower of B. napus](image)

*Note:* This photo shows the typical four petals with the stigma in the centre surrounded by four median stamens and a pair of shorter lateral stamens.

*Source:* Downey, Klaasen and Stringham (1980).

Two functioning nectaries are located at the base of the short stamens and two non-functional nectaries at the base of the pairs of the long stamens. The anthers dehisce when the petals completely unfold. The pollen is shed through two longitudinal slits on the upper side of the anthers. If the weather is warm and dry, nearly all the pollen is shed the day the flower opens. In the evening the flowers tend to close, approaching a funnel shape but open again the following morning. On the third day the flower remains almost closed and the petals and sepals begin to wilt.

Studies on pollen-tube growth indicate that fertilisation is effected within about 24 hours of pollination (Khanna and Chowdhury, 1974). The two carpels (although flowers on some plants may produce three or four carpels) form a superior ovary with a “false” septum and two rows of campylotropous ovules. After fertilisation, the ovary develops into a bivalve silique with a longitudinal septum (Figure 3.2). When the buds
are about 5 mm long, the megaspore in each ovule divides twice, producing four cells, one of which becomes the embryo sac, while the others abort. The nuclear tissue is largely displaced by the remaining embryo sac and at flower opening, the ovules mainly consist of two integuments and the ripe embryo sac.

**Pollination, pollen dispersal and viability**

*Brassica* pollen, although heavy and slightly sticky, can still become airborne and float on the wind due to its minute size (30-40 µm). In addition to wind, pollen can be transferred by insects, primarily honey bees (Williams, Martin and White, 1987, 1986; Scheffler, Parkinson and Dale, 1993; Paul, Thompson and Dunwell, 1995; Timmons et al., 1995; Thompson et al., 1999). Physical contact between flowers of neighbouring plants also results in pollen dispersal while animals, including humans, passing through flowering *Brassica* fields can act as pollen vectors.

Pollen movement can be detected using pollen traps for airborne pollen or by using bait plants (either male sterile or emasculated) to detect outcrossing, usually through the use of marker genes such as herbicide resistance. An effective pollen trap, developed in Germany, combines a sampler that determines pollen deposition rate (Sigma-2 sampler) and a pollen mass filter apparatus that collects sufficient pollen for polymerase chain reaction (PCR) analysis (VDI Richtlinien, 2007). Pollen from the Sigma-2 sampler is analysed as to species and amount under a light microscope and/or by automated imaging analysis. Strategically located bee hives can also be used to monitor pollen flow whereby pollen in honey and bee bread samples is concentrated and analysed under a light microscope or subjected to PCR analysis (VDI Richtlinien, 2006).

Under natural conditions, Ranito-Lehtimäki (1995) reported a gradual decrease in pollen viability over four to five days. In the laboratory, Mesquida and Renard (1982) found pollen remained viable between 24 hours to 1 week. However, Chiang (1974) reported that *B. oleracea* pollen stored at 4ºC germinated above 20% for the first 10 days, and even after 6-7 weeks an average 4.5% of the test pollen remained viable.

The greatest pollen outflow from flowering *Brassica* fields is undoubtedly wind borne. Studies have shown that the vast majority of the pollen cloud travels less than 10 m and approximately half the pollen produced by an individual plant falls to the ground within 3 m (Lavigne et al., 1998). In a two-year study, Bilsborrow et al. (1998) reported that the pollen concentrations at 10 m was reduced by 48% and 67% compared to that recorded 2 m from the field border. McCartney and Lacey (1991) found that the amount of pollen detected at 20 m from the field border was 90% less than that recorded at the field edge. Over longer distances of 360 m and 400 m, relative to the field margin, Timmons et al. (1995) and Thompson et al. (1999) reported reductions of 90% and 95%, respectively. These findings, combined with outcrossing data, established that *Brassica* pollen follows a leptokurtic distribution i.e. the presence of pollen shows a steep decline with distance, but with a long tail containing long-distance events (Figure 3.36; Thompson et al., 1999; Staniland et al., 2000). These data indicate that at a distance of 50 m from the pollen source, the level of outcrossing is less than 0.5%, even when male sterile bait plants are used as pollen recipients (Figure 3.36).
Where fields are large (>60 hectares) and/or production regions are extensive, as in Australia, Canada and India, wind is considered to be the primary pollen vector since bee populations cannot service the vast number of exposed flowers. However, in the United Kingdom and other parts of Europe where field size is small and bees and pollen beetles are abundant, insects play an important role in pollen dispersal, especially over long distances (Ramsay, Thompson and Squire, 2003; Ramsay et al., 1999; Thompson et al., 1999). Pollen distribution by insect can vary greatly depending on the production region, the environment and the experimental design (Barber, 1999; Thompson et al., 1999; Ramsay, Thompson and Squire, 2003). Honey bees visiting a new field are covered with pollen from that field after visiting about four flowers, thus
reducing the chances of cross fertilisation between plants of the new field and fields previously visited (Cresswell, 1994). Honey bees are also more efficient pollinators than wind-borne pollen over longer distances. This is to be expected since to effect fertilisation, wind-borne pollen must fall from the sky and land on an unfertilised stigma. Using published measurements of pollen dispersal, Hayter and Cresswell (2006) estimated that when bees are scarce, wind can contribute to pollination of fields 1 km distant at a level of up to 0.3%, but only up to 0.007% when bees are abundant. However, with a non-GM pollen source 500 m from a beehive and a GM field 800 m from the same hive, Ramsay et al. (1999) detected some pollen grains from the GM field in largely non-GM pollen loads. They concluded that there was either switching between fields or a long persistence of pollen grains on the bees, or there was pollen mixing within the hive. Ramsay et al. (1999) also found that honey bee colonies can forage up to 2 km from their hive, indicating a potential for pollen transfer around the hive covering an area 4 km in diameter. The maximum 4 km distance for pollen dispersal by bees corresponds closely with the 4 km maximum for the wind-borne pollen model reported by Timmons et al. (1996).

A number of models have been developed to predict the level of gene flow that might be expected among *B. napus* fields and feral populations as well as interspecific crosses with *B. rapa* (among others, Bateman, 1947a, 1947b; Lavigne et al., 1998; Colbach et al., 2005; Klein et al., 2006; Devaux et al., 2007; Graziano Ceddia, Bartlett and Perrings, 2007). However, as many biotic and abiotic factors affect gene flow, the models currently only provide an approximation. Further, the models have tended to focus on pollen dispersal and its arrival on the stigma, and have paid little attention to hybridisation and introgression.

**Outcrossing in the field**

Although *B. napus* is self-compatible (autogamous), pollen from neighbouring and distant *B. napus* plants compete with the plant’s own pollen to effect fertilisation. There are no genetic or morphological barriers to cross-pollination among *B. napus* plants, so crossing between fields does occur (Becker, Damgaard and Karlsson, 1992; Becker et al., 1991; Rakow and Woods, 1987). The outcrossing rate within fields varies considerably, averaging between 20% and 40%, mainly depending on the environmental conditions during flowering (see Becker, Damgaard and Karlsson, 1992 and references therein). It is estimated that one hectare of spring oilseed rape produces 9.3 ± 0.5 kg of pollen each 24 hours during a 17-day flowering period with *B. rapa* fields producing 20.2 kg/ha/day, more than twice that of *B. napus* (Szabo, 1985). Most of the crossing occurs between neighbouring plants (Rakow and Woods, 1987), but long-distance pollen transfer can occur by both wind and insects (primarily bees). The measurement of pollen flow via wind or insects, or estimating the amount of outcrossing using male sterile or emasculated bait plants, provides information on the potential for outcrossing; however, it is not an accurate indicator of the actual outcrossing level that can occur between fully fertile oilseed rape crops. In reality, male sterile plants would normally be growing in association with fully fertile plants, so data from male sterile bait plants significantly overestimate the level of outcrossing that would normally be expected. Ramsay, Thompson and Squire (2003) concluded that bait plants over-estimate the outcrossing level by at least one order of magnitude.

Numerous experiments have been undertaken in recent years to determine the frequency of outcrossing that occurs between two populations of *B. napus*, with increasing distance between the pollen donor and recipient populations. The availability
of HR genes and other markers have facilitated the detection of such genes in non-HR B. napus plots and fields and multiple HR types in single HR crops. However, measurement of the rate of outcrossing is complex as it can vary with the experimental design, environmental conditions, cultivars grown, synchrony of flowering, insect pollinator activity, local topography, and the relative size and arrangement of the donor and recipient populations. Two types of designs have been used in these studies. In the continuous design, the recipient population surrounds the donor, while in the discontinuous designs the recipient populations are distributed in locations at increasing distances from the pollen source (Hüsken and Dietz-Pfeilstetter, 2007). Using continuous designs, over short isolation distances (0-30 m), researchers observed a rapid decline in outcrossing rates as they sampled from the field edge into the recipient population (Scheffler, Parkinson and Dale, 1993; Morris et al., 1994; Brown et al., 1996; Staniland et al., 2000; Reboud, 2003; Dietz-Pfeilstetter and Zwerger, 2009, 2004). Examples from such studies, conducted in Canada, the United Kingdom and the United States are given in Table 3.6. These results underline the importance of determining outcrossing data across the whole field and not just the level at a particular spot or distance into the field. However, using commercially sized fields in a discontinuous design, Rieger et al. (2002) found that fields situated within 100 m of the pollen source showed very little edge effect while fields far from donor sources displayed a low and variable edge effect.

Table 3.6. Short distance pollen mediated gene flow from B. napus pollen donor to recipient field/plots in Canada, the United Kingdom and the United States

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metres into recipient field</th>
<th>Outcrossing %</th>
<th>Reference, location and trial year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>Scheffler, Parkinson and Dale (1993) United Kingdom, 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>Morris et al. (1994) United States, 1992 east/west wind direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>0.016</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>0.004</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.0</td>
<td>0.001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>2.0/3.5</td>
<td>Morris et al. (1994) United States, 1992 east/west wind direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>1.0/1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.75/1.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>0.65/0.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>0.50/0.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>Staniland et al. (2000) Canada 1994-95 Data averaged over wind directions and years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The mean rate of outcrossing at various isolation distances is a valuable statistic, but the more important question might be “what is the maximum outcrossing that might be expected at various distances?” There is now considerable evidence that the highest rate of outcrossing that might be expected at 50-100 m is <0.5% and at 200 m the maximum would be <0.1% (Tables 3.7 and 3.8 and Figure 3.36).

In most of the small plot trials, arranged in a continuous design, the area occupied by the donor population is small in relation to the recipient populations, the ratio being about 1:4. This unequal availability of pollen tends to dilute the amount of donor pollen accessible to both wind and bee vectors. As a result, outcrossing rates reported for small
plot trials with isolation distances of over 30 m tend to be lower than those recorded in larger scale investigations where the area devoted to the pollen donor are substantially greater (Table 3.7).

Table 3.7. *B. napus* to *B. napus* outcrossing rates, by isolation distances, reported from small plot trials and/or large fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isolation distance</th>
<th>Small plot trials</th>
<th>Large field trials (0.05 ha or more)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% outcross</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30-60 m</td>
<td>0-0.0003</td>
<td>Scheffler, Parkinson and Dale (1993)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.022</td>
<td>Manasse and Kareiva (1991)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.11-0.16</td>
<td>Sweet et al. (1999a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.02-0.24</td>
<td>Monsanto¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.05-0.33</td>
<td>Simpson et al. (1999) (MS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Stringam and Downey (1982)</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>Staniland et al. (2000)</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>Von Ernst et al. (1998)</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>Lavigne et al. (1998) (MS)</td>
<td>0.1-0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.02-0.05</td>
<td>Wilkinson et al. (1995) (MS)</td>
<td>0.2-0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>Ramsay, Thompson and Squire (2003)</td>
<td>0.00-0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90-150 m</td>
<td>0.01-0.02</td>
<td>Manasse and Kareiva (1991)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.00-0.07</td>
<td>Kamlar (2000)</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.11-0.22</td>
<td>Simpson et al. (1999)</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.01-0.13</td>
<td>Simpson² (FB)</td>
<td>0.25-0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.01-0.21</td>
<td>Monsanto¹</td>
<td>&lt;0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>Timmons et al. (1996) (MS)</td>
<td>0.01-0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175-225 m</td>
<td>0.02-0.03</td>
<td>Simpson² (FB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.017-0.6</td>
<td>Dietz-Pfleistetter et al. (1998)</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>Monsanto¹</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>Scheffler, Parkinson and Dale (1995)</td>
<td>0.00-0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>Ramsey, Thompson and Squire (2003) (MS)</td>
<td>0.00-0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>360-400 m</td>
<td>0.0038</td>
<td>Scheffler, Parkinson and Dale (1995)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>Simpson² (FB)</td>
<td>0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>Stringam and Downey (1982)</td>
<td>0.00-0.025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>Monsanto¹</td>
<td>0.02-0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>Timmons et al. (1996) (MS)</td>
<td>0.001-0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500-800 m</td>
<td>0.02-0.1</td>
<td>Ramsey, Thompson and Squire (2003) (MS)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Crawford, Squire and Burn (1999) estimated that a square donor plot of at least 400 m² would need to be considered if a sharp decline in the effectiveness of donor pollen is to be avoided. Positioning of the donor and recipient fields can also affect the outcrossing measurements. Ingram (2000) noted that the rate of outcrossing would be higher when the long sides of donor and recipient fields faced each other. Hüsken and Dietz-Pfleistetter (2007) statistically analysed published outcrossing results for both continuous and discontinuous designed studies. Their data indicate that with the discontinuous design, the mean outcrossing rate between *B. napus* fields at 50 m and 100 m would be 0.11% and at 200 m, 0.05% with lower rates for the continuous design studies (Table 3.8).

Under short isolation distances, surrounding the pollen source with a synchronous flowering recipient border may be effective in reducing pollen outflow (Staniland et al., 2000; Reboud, 2003). Staniland et al. (2000) found that surrounding a spring *B. napus* pollen donor with a 15 m and 30 m wide *B. napus* border/pollen trap, separated from the pollen donor by a cultivated 1.5 m strip, reduced the outcrossing level to 0.02% at 30 m,
a level they equated to the outcrossing rates observed at 200 m by Scheffler, Parkinson and Dale (1995) (Table 3.7). They concluded that under western Canadian conditions, the current regulations, which require a 10 m wide continuous border surrounding the pollen donor, would effectively contain the majority of pollen-mediated gene flow, but would not completely eliminate gene escape.

Table 3.8. **Mean outcross percentages of pollen donor to B. napus recipient populations, for various isolation distances and two design classes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distance from pollen source (m)</th>
<th>Continuous design</th>
<th>Discontinuous design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mean</td>
<td>Standard deviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-10</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>2.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-20</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-50</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-100</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;200</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: n.d. = insufficient data.*

*Source: Hüsken and Dietz-Pfeilstetter (2007).*

Field size experiments by Reboud (2003), using 24 m borders, indicated that for short isolation distances gaps of bare ground between the donor and recipient plots/fields should be avoided. Outcrossing declined more rapidly when there were intervening plants, e.g. when the pollen donor was separated from the recipient field by a 3-4 m gap the level of outcrossing was similar to that found 1 m into the crop where the gap was zero. The same effect was noted by Dietz-Pfeilstetter and Zwerger (2004) when a bare gap between donor and recipient fields was increased from 0.5 m to 10 m.

In the large field studies, not all the factors contributing to gene flow have been controlled. Weekes et al. (2005) found the level of outcrossing to be considerably higher in winter than in spring oilseed rape (Table 3.9) while Ramsay, Thompson and Squire (2003) found the opposite to be true. They attributed the low value in the winter rape trial to poor pollinating weather in May.

However, Reboud (2003) and Dietz-Pfeilstetter and Zwerger (2009) observed that varieties used as pollen donors differed significantly in their outcrossing potential. The outcrossing values in some fields in the Rieger et al. (2002) study may have been overestimated since seed sown in the recipient fields was not tested as to the possible presence of imidazolinone-tolerant seeds (Salisbury, 2002). Such contaminant HR seed could have been present in seed sown in the recipient fields as a result of outcrossing or admixture during the breeding and multiplication of the donor and recipient varieties, as was observed in Canada by Downey and Beckie (2002) and Friesen, Nelson and Van Acker (2003).

Also, it has been suggested that outcrossing levels were underestimated due to the segregation of the two genes required to provide full tolerance to the selective herbicide. Hall et al. (2000) identified some herbicide-resistant seedlings from recipient plants situated some 650 m from an HR field. However, Downey (1999b) suggested the seed may have been transported by the farmer’s swathing and harvesting equipment as observed in the Dietz-Pfeilstetter and Zwerger (2009) study.

The outcrossing percentages reported by Stringam and Downey (1982) are substantially higher than recorded for other studies listed in Table 3.7. However, it should be noted that in the Stringam-Downey trials the pollen donors were fields of >60 hectares.
which resulted in the overloading of the small 42 m² recipient plots with donor pollen. Similar high outcrossing rates were recorded by Ramsey, Thompson and Squire (2003) where blocks of ten male-sterile plants were placed at increasing distances from a large commercial field. These results have implications for feral populations situated near commercial fields. Other observations suggest that field-to-field crossing is likely to be highest in fields just commencing or finishing flowering when a nearby field is in full bloom.

Table 3.9. Predicted outcrossing rates for spring and winter oilseed rape at three isolation distances (with 95% confidence limits), based on 2000-03 multilocation UK field trials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oilseed rape type</th>
<th>Percent outcrossing 2 m</th>
<th>Percent outcrossing 50 m</th>
<th>Percent outcrossing 150 m</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spring</td>
<td>0.46 (9.97)¹</td>
<td>0.02 (0.39)</td>
<td>0.01 (0.14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter</td>
<td>0.76 (12.25)</td>
<td>0.04 (0.84)</td>
<td>0.02 (0.40)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: 1. 0.46 is the average percent outcrossing with a 5% chance that outcrossing could be as high as 9.97%.


Downey and Beckie (2002) and Friesen, Nelson and Van Acker (2003) illustrated how easily pedigree seed can be contaminated in breeding nurseries. Admixture during seeding, harvesting or cleaning was also identified as a contaminant source (Downey and Beckie, 2002). These studies alerted seed companies to the problem of contamination in breeders seed stocks, leading to tighter controls (see the section “Oilseed certified seed production”).

However, the present rapid development and acceptance of B. napus hybrid varieties dictates that certified seed-production fields will contain at least 66-75% male sterile plants. This increases the risk of outcrossing. In Canada, all hybrid producing seed fields are regulated and inspected to ensure that they are isolated from other rapeseed plants and fields by at least 800 m and free of certain Brassica weeds within the production field and the regulated isolation area. The isolation distance used by most seed companies for hybrid seed production of B. napus in Canada is at least 1.6 km (Wescott and Nelson, 2001). To further reduce the possibility of fertilisation by foreign pollen, the fields are heavily stocked with honey bees. Such fields are also saturated with leaf cutter bees (Megachile rotundata [Fabricius]), which have a short foraging range, to ensure the desired rapid and complete fertilisation of the male sterile female parent.

Seed development, production and natural dispersal

After fertilisation the endosperm develops rapidly, while embryo growth does not start for some days. The embryo is generally still small two weeks after pollination but by three to five weeks has almost completely absorbed the endosperm and filled most of the seed coat. Nutrient reserves for germination are stored in the cotyledons which are folded one over the other so that there is a smaller inner and a larger outer cotyledon (Figure 3.37).
The size of seeds can be defined by both their physical dimensions and weight. The range in seed weight among the Brassica crop species is given in Table 3.10. Typical seeds of Brassica species and subspecies are illustrated in Figure 3.38. These drawings, produced by the USDA many years ago, are still valid and can be used as a starting point to distinguish many of the species and subspecies according to the reticulation patterns on the seed surface. The different patterns are the result of variation in the size of the palisade cells that form the outer cell layer of the seed coat.

Table 3.10. **Typical seed weight ranges (or averages) of Brassica crop plants by species and form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>g/1 000 seeds</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B. napus</td>
<td>Winter oilseed rape</td>
<td>4.5-5.5</td>
<td>Bengtsson et al. (1972)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spring oilseed rape</td>
<td>2.5-4.6</td>
<td>Elliott, Franke and Rakow (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. rapa</td>
<td>Winter turnip rape</td>
<td>3.0-4.0</td>
<td>Bengtsson et al. (1972)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spring turnip rape</td>
<td>2.0-3.0</td>
<td>Bengtsson et al. (1972)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. juncea</td>
<td>Condiment and oilseed mustard</td>
<td>2.5-3.0</td>
<td>Rakow and Rode (2009); Rakow et al. (2009)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. oleracea</td>
<td>Cabbage</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Ohio State University (2009)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Broccoli</td>
<td>2.7-5.8</td>
<td>Heather and Sieczka (1991)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brussels sprouts</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>George (2009)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kohlrabi</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>George (2009)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: * The Indian cultivar Pusa Bold has larger than normal seed at about 5.3 g/1 000.

Sources: Bengtsson et al. (1972; Elliott et al. (2008); Rakow and Rode (2009); Rakow et al. (2009); Ohio State University (2009); Heather and Sieczka (1991); George (2009).

Vaughan and Whitehouse (1971) investigated and described the seed surface and general features of some 200 Brassicaceae species including shape, colour, mucilage production and hilum characteristics. Koul, Nagpal and Raina (2000) also examined the seed surface architecture of 78 accessions from the 3 subtribes – Brassicinae, Raphaninae and Moricandiinae – at both low magnification (x80) as well as the fine structure using a scanning electron microscope (x640, x1260). They noted that the seed coat patterns at high magnification were generally species-specific. However, significant seed coat
pattern variations were found at the intraspecific level among the *Brassica* diploids, *B. rapa*, (two types), *B. nigra* (one type) and *B. oleracea* (two types), with the patterns of *B. rapa* and *B. oleracea* resembling each other. The seed coat patterns in most of the amphidiploids were intermediate to their putative parents, although one *B. carinata* and one *B. napus* accession exhibited patterns of their respective *B. nigra* and *B. rapa* parents. Thus, employing seed coat reticulations for species identification is not foolproof, but it provides a good starting point to identify the adventitious presence of foreign species in commercial seed lots.

**Figure 3.38. Distinguishing Brassica species by their seed coat characteristics**

Notes: The small seeds shown in each compartment are about three times their natural size. The greatly enlarged surface detail is not drawn to scale but a relative proportion is maintained throughout.

Source: USDA.

The fruit of major *Brassica* crops is a glabrous silique, which is 4-5 mm wide and can be over 10 cm long, with 2 rows of seeds lying along the edges of the replum (false septum, an outgrowth of the placenta). A silique normally contains 10-30 seeds. Three to four weeks after the flower opens, the silique attains its full diameter and length. When ripe, the silique has a tendency to dehisce and shatter, dispersing its seed. Species and varieties differ in their susceptibility to shattering. The physical forces of silique hitting silique or other plant parts causes a separation of the valve walls from the placenta, starting at the pedicel end and working toward the unattached end. The exposed
seeds attached to the placenta are soon dislodged by wind action. Threshing operations easily separate the seed from the intact siliques.

All commercially grown Brassica crops, as well as weedy species, tend to shatter their seed when ripe. However, the ease or degree of shattering varies among species. Within the oilseed crops, *B. napus* has the greatest tendency to shatter its seed, with *B. rapa* intermediate and *B. juncea* the least. Breeding work is developed to transfer the shatter-resistant characteristic from *B. juncea* to *B. napus* (Wang, Ripley and Rakow, 2007). The vegetable *Brassica* species follow a similar pattern. However, with the high-value F₁ seed of *B. oleracea* hybrids and the relatively small fields used for seed production, every precaution, sometimes including hand harvesting, is taken to ensure little or no seed is lost. Pod shatter is rare in the closely related *S. alba* (yellow or white mustard) species, but some loss of intact ripe pods, due to wind or mechanical action, does occur at harvest.

Seed that falls to the ground can be dispersed by wind and water as well as by birds and other animals. Because the seed is small and round it is difficult to prevent some loss during transportation of farm equipment from field to field, or from field to bin and from bin to its ultimate destination. Significant losses can occur from truck containers of uncovered oilseed rape due to the wind vortex caused by the movement of the truck. The faster the truck goes, the greater the loss. The distribution of seed from the truck vortex will depend on seed size and the direction and velocity of the wind prevailing at the time of loss. For spring *B. napus*, the distance such seed will travel at various wind speeds has been calculated (Table 3.11), although for average spring and winter *B. napus* seed, which is larger and heavier than that used to calculate the table, the wind-borne dispersal distance would be reduced.

Table 3.11. **Estimated dispersal distances of spring *B. napus* seed released from transport vehicles at various heights above adjacent fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Height (metres)</th>
<th>Wind speed in km/h</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>12.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>15.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>18.0</td>
<td>21.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>24.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>13.9</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>23.2</td>
<td>27.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>25.7</td>
<td>30.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note:* 1. Estimates based on small seeds of spring *B. napus*, calculated to weigh 2.2 mg with a diameter of 1.8 mm, that are the most likely to become air borne and travel the farthest.


**Seed viability, longevity and dormancy, germination, seedling establishment**

Well-developed, fully mature Brassica oilseeds may remain viable for at least 25 years if dry seed is refrigerated in sealed containers (Ellis et al., 1994). As of 2009, seed of oilseed Brassica, harvested in 1977 and stored in manila envelopes at -20°C in the Saskatoon AAFC Seed Bank, had retained its high germination (Downey, personal communication). Viability of seed lost during harvest is an important factor in
determining the presence and amount of volunteer plants and populations in subsequent crops. Harvest losses can be substantial and the survival and persistence of this seed is greatly influenced by environment, seed dormancy as well as crop and field management.

**Contribution of *B. napus* harvest losses to persistence**

Harvest losses in the United Kingdom, when the winter *B. napus* crop is straight combined under ideal conditions, ranged from 2% to 5%, but under unfavourable harvest environments could amount to 50% (Price et al., 1996). Pekrun et al. (1998) placed these losses between 200-300 kg/ha or about 5 000-7 000 seeds/m². Lutman et al. (2005) in the United Kingdom and Gruber, Pekrun and Claupen (2004) in Germany recorded average harvest losses of 3 000-3 500 seeds/m². Similarly, French studies estimated harvest losses to be between 1.5% and 8.5% of the average yield. This calculates to 50-300 kg/ha of seed remaining on the field after harvest or 1 100-6 700 seeds/m² (CETIOM, 2000; Messéan et al., 2007). In Canada, Gulden, Shirtliffe and Thomas (2003a) reported that spring *B. napus*, harvest losses averaged 5.5%, or about 3 590 seeds/m², while Légère et al. (2001) estimated the losses at 2 000/m². Similarly, Warwick et al. (2003) reported spring *B. napus* harvest losses averaging 5.5%, or about 3 590 seeds/m². Salisbury (2002) estimated Australian losses would be similar to those found in Canada. However, a vast majority of the seed remaining in the field after harvest will not survive the first year. The *Brassica* oilseed density of the seed bank in western Canada is reported to drop ten fold in the first year and to decline slowly thereafter, due to replenishment of the seed bank by uncontrolled volunteer plants. However, where post-harvest tillage is shallow and delayed and volunteers in subsequent crops are controlled, very few plants are found four years after a spring *B. napus* crop (Gulden, Shirtliffe and Thomas, 2003b).

**Seed dormancy**

Seed dormancy can play an important part in determining the amount and persistence of volunteer *Brassica* plants in subsequent crops. There are two main types of seed dormancy: primary and secondary. Primary dormancy is when seed germination is prevented during the seed maturation process and for some time after the seed has been removed from its parent (Karssen, 1980/81; Hilhorst and Toorop, 1997). To overcome primary dormancy, a period of after-ripening is usually required. Secondary dormancy is a reduction in seed germinability that develops after the seed is separated from the parent plant and may, in some cases, be induced prior to the complete alleviation of primary dormancy. Primary dormancy does not occur in ripe seeds of any of the cultivated *Brassica* oilseed, vegetable or condiment crops. For seed certification status, these crops require a minimum germination of at least 90%. However, during seed maturation, germination percentages may be low in spring and winter *B. napus* but increase with maturity (Finkelstein et al., 1985) to where at harvest no primary dormancy occurs (Schlink, 1995). However, secondary dormancy can be induced in *B. napus* and cultivated *B. rapa* under certain conditions (Hails et al., 1997; Pekrun, Lutman and Baeumer, 1998; Adler et al., 1993). An exception to the rule occurs in the weedy forms of *B. rapa*, where primary dormancy is present as a recessive trait in weedy *B. rapa*. Thus, crossing between weedy and cultivated *B. rapa*, as well as between weedy *B. rapa* and *B. napus*, will produce seed that does not exhibit primary dormancy (Linder, 1998; Landbo and Jorgensen, 1997; Adler et al., 1993).

The main factors contributing to secondary dormancy of *B. napus* seed are elevated temperatures, darkness, osmotic stress and limited oxygen (Gulden, Thomas and Shirtliffe, 2004; Pekrun et al., 1997).
1997; Gruber, Pekrun and Claupein, 2004) and China (Momoh et al., 2002) suggested that genotypes differ in their predisposition to undergo secondary dormancy. Indeed, it has been clearly shown that genotype is the principal factor controlling its potential in *B. napus* (Gulden, Thomas and Shirtliffe, 2004; Pekrun et al., 1997; Gruber, Emrich and Claupein, 2009; Gruber, Pekrun and Claupein 2004). Gulden, Thomas and Shirtliffe (2004) found seed size was of secondary importance, with large seed more likely to undergo secondary dormancy, while maturity and pre- and post-harvest environment had little influence. The occurrence of secondary dormancy is reduced by alternating temperatures (Pekrun, Potter and Lutman, 1997; Momoh et al., 2002), while cold stratification readily releases secondary dormancy as does exposure to continuous light (Schlins, 1995). Exogenous applications of gibberellic acid (0.2 mg 1\(^{-1}\)) will also reverse secondary dormancy (Pekrun, Lutman and Baeumer, 1998).

In Germany, Gruber, Pekrun and Claupein (2004) evaluated the persistence and secondary dormancy in the seed of four winter oilseed rape varieties. They found that of the 3 000-3 500 seeds/m\(^2\) lost during harvest, 60-75% of that seed either died or was scavenged within a few months. Similar levels of seed disappearance were observed by Gruber, Pekrun and Claupein (2003) when investigating the effect of different tillage treatments on seed persistence. Six months after harvest, no seed of the variety Artus could be detected in the soil seed bank while the other three varieties – Bristol, Liberator and Capital – respectively contributed 4.3%, 9.3% and 11% of their lost seed to the seed bank. Laboratory tests for the presence of secondary dormancy closely corresponded to that observed in the field. Gruber, Emrich and Claupein (2009) also laboratory tested seed from over 40 varieties for their tendency to undergo secondary dormancy. The seed was harvested from one site for three years and a second site for two years. They found that, over several years, varieties consistently ranked high, medium or low in percentage of seed exhibiting secondary dormancy. However, the rate of secondary dormancy varied significantly with harvest years, dry years having the lowest incidence. They concluded variety rank, rather than the actual percentage of secondary dormancy, should be used to characterise a variety. Thus, selection for varieties without secondary dormancy could be easily achieved and would greatly reduce the incidence of *B. napus* volunteers in subsequent crops. It should probably be made mandatory for all new *B. napus* varieties to be free of the secondary dormancy trait.

At shallow burial depths, *B. napus* and closely related species exhibit low seed bank persistence (Schlins, 1995; Pekrun and Lutman, 1998; Sparrow, Knight and Conn, 1990; Gulden, Shirtliffe and Thomas, 2003a). At 10 cm depth Gulden, Thomas and Shirtliffe (2004) found seed-bank populations shifted from a germinable to an ungerminable state and no seedling recruitment was observed. Maseden (1962) reported that 1% of buried *B. napus* seed germinated after five years, and that trace amounts of *B. rapa* seed emerged after ten years. Schlins (1998) and Lutman, Freeman and Pekrun (2003) found that approximately 1% of *B. napus* seed in undisturbed soil could survive for ten years. Jørgensen, Pavlo Hauser and Bagger Jørgensen (2007), sampling a deep soil layer, identified viable seeds of a variety sown in the field 17 years earlier. In Canada, Beckie and Warwick (2010) reported a small population of volunteers resistant to the herbicide bromoxynil in a field that had not grown oilseed rape since the sowing of a bromoxynil-resistant variety seven years previously. The volunteers persisted in low-lying areas of the field which were too wet to plant or spray with herbicides between 2001 and 2007. No volunteers were detected in either 2008 or 2009. There is general agreement that secondary dormancy will be induced in a significant percentage of deeply buried *B. napus* seed.
Persistence

Very few seeds of oilseed rape survive in the seed bank compared with their wild relatives (Chadoeuf, Darmency and Maillet, 1998). Most seeds of the cultivated Brassica crops, if left on or near the soil surface, will germinate and be killed by frost or cultivation or be eaten by rodents, birds and insects. Nevertheless, a small proportion may not germinate and secondary dormancy may be induced, particularly if the seed is buried. Studies in Europe with winter B. napus found that when seeds were buried immediately after seed shed, 30% of the seed bank survived one winter compared to only 0.1% when seeds were left on the undisturbed soil surface (Pekrun and Lutman, 1998). Similarly for spring B. napus in western Canada, Gulden, Shirtliffe and Thomas (2003a) found spring seedlings, from fall-sown seeds buried at a 1 cm depth, to be only 0.1-1.5% of the original seed bank. In Canada, oilseed rape is typically grown on the same land once in four years with most of the volunteers occurring in the year following oilseed rape production. However, volunteers can occur four to five years after production (Légère et al., 2001; Simard et al., 2002; Beckie and Owen, 2007). Harker et al. (2006) found that if first-year volunteers were prevented from producing seed, the densities of volunteers in subsequent years were reduced to levels that would not require herbicidal intervention. Surveys in southern Australia by Baker and Preston (2008), where zero and minimum till are practiced, found zero germination of seed sampled from fields 3.5 years after the last B. napus harvest. But in Germany, Förster and Diepenbrock (2002) reported more than 0.5 plants/m² of winter B. napus three years after the last oilseed rape harvest. However, no information on timing or type of post-harvest cultivation was provided. In France, two conventional oilseed rape varieties, one of which was dwarf, were planted on fields that had grown three different HR varieties three to eight years before (Messéan et al., 2007). The percentage of GM HR seed occurring in the harvest of the conventional varieties was determined. HR seed from two of the GM varieties never exceeded 0.9% of the conventional harvested seed. However, one GM variety that was grown five years previous made up 4-18% of the conventional harvest, with the highest values occurring in the seed harvested from the dwarf variety. Since all oilseed rape volunteers were removed from the rotation crops in the intervening years, the volunteers must have arisen from dormant seed in the seed bank. The results illustrate the importance of breeding varieties without the secondary dormancy trait, not only for GM varieties, but more generally for the production of pure seed stocks and segregation of specialty oil types.

In the United Kingdom, Lutman et al. (2005) recorded a large average harvest seed loss (3 575 seeds/m²) from four B. napus winter varieties grown in multiple-site, multi-year trials. Within six months, the number of seeds present declined by an average of 63%, with a slower decline recorded at 18 and 30 months. Appreciably more seeds were found on sites that were ploughed immediately after harvest compared to sites where cultivation was delayed by about four weeks. These data support the recommendations of Pekrun et al. (1998) and Gulden, Shirtliffe and Thomas (2003a) that cultivation of B. napus stubble should be avoided for several weeks after harvest. Regression models applied to the Lutman et al. (2005) data predicted that it would take an average of nine years to reduce the seed in the soil bank by 95%. However, other studies (Lutman, Freeman and Pekrun, 2003) indicate that the 95% reduction would occur in three to four years. Indeed, Beismann and Roller (2003) in Germany reported that no viable B. napus seeds could be found in soil sample cores taken from sites where transgenic plots were sown five and six years before.

Studies in the United Kingdom and Canada with winter and spring forms of B. napus indicate that seed bank persistence is less in lighter than heavier, clay containing, soils
Linder and Schmitt (1995) assessed the persistence, in field and greenhouse trials, of GM *B. napus* lines with elevated levels of stearate and laurate fatty acids in their seed oils. They concluded the risk of persistence of the high stearate and high laurate genotypes, compared with their parental non-GM types, was low. No interspecific hybrid seed could be obtained from hand-crossing GM high stearate *B. napus* × wild *B. rapa*. Greenhouse trials using seed from the high laurate *B. napus* × *B. rapa* cross indicated that such hybrids “will not possess seed bank dynamics promoting reproduction”.

**Genetics**

*Relevant detailed genetic information*

**Cytology**

Mitotic metaphase chromosomes of the Brassicaceae are very small. Conventional cytological protocols condense *Brassica* meiotic chromosomes to tiny rods or dot-like shapes. Their small size, lack of distinctive cytological features and the difficulties of pachytene investigations make cytological identification of individual chromosomes almost impossible. Although the small chromosome size of the Brassicaceae family has limited the direct cytology approach, the sequencing of the *Arabidopsis thaliana* (The *Arabidopsis* Genome Initiative 2000), *B. rapa* (Wang, 2010; The *B. rapa* Genome Sequencing Project Consortium, 2011), *B. oleracea* and *B. napus* genomes (Bayer CropScience, 2009) are providing a much clearer picture of species interrelationships. 2014 saw the culmination of a major effort worldwide to generate “reference” annotated *Brassica* genome sequences, and some are available online for *B. napus*, *B. oleracea* and *B. rapa*. From 2015, the focus is on a range of “re-sequencing” efforts (The Multinational Brassica Genome projet, 2015).

Comparative mapping, using more than 20 linkage maps for *B. oleracea*, *B. rapa*, *B. nigra*, *B. napus* and *B. juncea*, has contributed greatly to the understanding of chromosome homology and colinearity (Lysak and Lexer, 2006). In addition, great strides have been made in determining the extent of genome colinearity, and rates and modes of evolution in the Brassicaceae family. Comparative cytogenetic studies now employ a wide array of techniques including, among others, rDNA probes, nucleolus organizer regions (NORs), variation in centromeric satellite repeats, genome in situ hybridisation (GISH), fluorescence in situ hybridisation (FISH), combined with bacterial artificial chromosomes (BAC FISH) and large-scale comparative chromosome painting (CCP). Such techniques have helped to unravel the genomic evolution of *A. thaliana*, *B. oleracea*, *B. rapa*, *B. juncea* and *B. napus* as well as the time frame in which the species arose.

Research into the genome microstructure of the Brassicaceae species indicates the family originated from an ancestral karyotype that evolved after the monocot/dicot split. The ancestral karyotype had a basic chromosome number of *x*=4 and underwent a genome duplication some 65 million years ago (Mya) followed by diploidisation (Song,
Osborn and Williams, 1988a; Rana et al., 2004; see Figure 3.39). From this progenitor, the ancestral Brassicaceae form evolved with \(x=8\) chromosomes (Lysak et al. 2006). This was followed by the divergence about 20 Mya of the ancestral genera of *Arabidopsis* and tribe Brassiceae. Genome triplication via allohexaploidy occurred about 14-16 Mya (Lysak and Lexer, 2006), followed by diploidisation and chromosome number reduction resulting in the evolution of the ancestral Brassicaceae karyotype with \(x=6\) chromosomes (Lysak et al., 2005; Yang et al., 1999). It is estimated that the separation of the Nigra and Rapa/Oleracea lineages took place about 7.9 Mya (Lysak et al., 2005). The *B. oleracea* and *B. rapa* divergence is estimated to have occurred about 4 Mya (Inaba and Nishio, 2002), with the interspecific crosses, forming *B. napus*, *B. juncea* and *B. carinata*, taking place less than 10 000 years ago (Song, Osborn and Williams, 1988a; Rana et al., 2004; Lysak et al., 2005).

**Figure 3.39. Illustration of major events in the evolution of selected *Brassica* species and *Arabidopsis thaliana***

*Note:* The dotted lines indicate the species believed to be the maternal parent in the interspecific cross.

*Source:* Modified from Song, Osborn and Williams (1988a; 1988b); Rana et al. (2004).

A slightly different scenario of the polyploidy events in the evolution of the Brassicaceae genomes has been put forward by Mun et al. (2009), following a *B. rapa* and *A. thaliana* genome-wide comparative analysis. They suggest that a whole genome duplication (WGD) occurred twice, once about 55-63 Mya and again at 23-30 Mya, between the existence of an ancient ancestral species and the evolution of the ancestral Brassicaceous karyotype. They suggest that the second WGD resulted in the divergence of *Arabidopsis* from the *Brassicaceae* lineage about 13-17 Mya. This was followed by a whole genome triplication in the Brassicaceae about 11-12 Mya with the divergence of *B. rapa* from *B. oleracea* taking place about 8 Mya. Their data also suggest that the allopolyploidisation that resulted in the species *B. napus* occurred only 0.7-1 Mya.
Genome mapping of *B. rapa* and *B. oleracea* has shown the gross organisation of their genomes to be highly collinear (Lagercrantz and Lydiate, 1996) but their genome size and complexity differ. The genome size of *B. rapa* is ca. 500 Mb compared to the much larger and more complex genome of *B. oleracea* at ca. 600 Mb (Arumuganathan and Earle, 1991). Comparative studies have shown that within the amphidiploids species, *B. napus*, *B. juncea* and *B. carinata*, the chromosomes within the respective putative diploid genomes have remained more or less intact (Parkin et al., 1995; Sharpe et al., 1995; Axelsson et al., 2000). DNA sequence data indicate that the A genome of *B. rapa* and the C genome of *B. oleracea* are very closely related while *B. nigra*, with its B genome, is from an earlier divergent lineage (Mizushima, 1972; Song, Osborn and Williams, 1988b; Prakash and Chopra, 1991). Song et al. (1995) reported there was rapid genome change after polyploidisation in *B. napus* and *B. juncea*, which suggests that the micro-structural changes observed in the *Brassica* lineage happened shortly after genome duplication, followed by a slow but ongoing rate of change (Rana et al., 2004).

The techniques of fluorescence *in situ* hybridisation (FISH) facilitates the integration of genetic and physical chromosome maps as it allows chromosomal location of labelled DNA probes to be directly determined (Snowdon et al., 2007). Since molecular markers can now be ordered and physical distances measured, it is possible to construct molecular karyotypes and distinguish individual chromosomes of the A and B genomes that make up *B. napus* (Fukui et al., 1998; Armstrong et al., 1998; Snowdon et al., 2002). Snowdon, Lühs and Friedt (2007) provides a consensus genetic linkage map of molecular markers for *B. napus* where linkage groups (LGs) N1-N10 correspond to the *B. rapa* A genome LGs of A1-A10, and LGs N11-N19 correspond to *B. oleracea* C genome LGs of C1-C9.

**Nuclear genome size**

The genome size of the *Brassica* diploids (approximately 500-700 Mbp) are more than four times that of the related Brassicaceous species *A. thaliana* (approximately 157 Mbp; see Table 3.12). The gene content of *A. thaliana* is believed to be very similar to *Brassica* diploids with more than 87% sequence identity in the coding regions (Parkin et al., 2005). Although it is believed that the diploid *Brassica* evolved through a common hexaploid ancestor (Parkin et al., 2005), the necessary genome triplication would be insufficient to explain the differences in genome size. Therefore, this important difference in genome size is likely to reflect a different rate of non-coding DNA accumulation.

**Possible extent of repetitive or non-coding DNA sequences**

Transposable elements (TEs) constitute a major fraction of non-coding DNA in plant species. Good estimates of TE distribution and density are presently only available for the *B. oleracea* genome, based on a partial draft genome sequence (Zhang and Wessler, 2004). Class 1 (retro) elements were the most abundant TE class with long terminal repeat (LTR) and non-LTR elements comprising the largest fraction of the genome. However, several families of class 2 (DNA) elements have amplified to very high copy numbers in *B. oleracea* compared to *A. thaliana* and have contributed significantly to genome expansion. Approximately 20% of the *B. oleracea* genome was estimated to be composed of class 1 and class 2 TEs.
Table 3.12. Ploidy level, chromosome number, genome size and map length of *A. thaliana* and *Brassica* species of “Triangle of U”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Ploidy level</th>
<th>Chromosome number</th>
<th>1C nuclear DNA content (Mb)</th>
<th>Observed map length (cM)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>A. thaliana</em></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>437 and 501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>B. nigra</em></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>634-765</td>
<td>855</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>696-765</td>
<td>820-1738</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>528-784</td>
<td>1 455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>B. carinata</em></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>1 280-1 548</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>B. juncea</em></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>1 070-1 500</td>
<td>2 073</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>1 127</td>
<td>1 441-1 765</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Lim et al. (2005) describe the morphology and molecular organisation of heterochromatin domains in the interphase nuclei and mitotic and meiotic chromosomes of the ten chromosomes of *B. rapa*, using DAPI staining and FISH of rDNA and pericentromere tandem repeats. They characterised the centromeric repeat sequences, which fell into two classes, CentBr1 and CentBr2, occupying the centromeres of eight and two chromosomes, respectively. The centromere satellites encompassed about 30% of the total chromosomes, particularly in the core centromere blocks of all the chromosomes. Interestingly, centromere length was inversely correlated with chromosome length.

**Main genetic diversity or variability**

Considerable genetic diversity has been found within the six cultivated *Brassica* species using nuclear restriction fragment length polymorphisms (RFLP) markers (Song, Osborn and Williams, 1988b). These results suggested that: 1) *B. rapa* and *B. oleracea* have multiple centres of origin; 2) *B. nigra* originated from one evolutionary pathway whereas *B. rapa* and *B. oleracea* came from another pathway; and 3) amphidiploid *B. napus* and *B. juncea* arose from different combinations of diploid morphotypes, indicating polyphyletic origins may be a common mechanism for the natural occurrence of amphidiploids in *Brassica*.

The genetic diversity within *B. napus* is considerably less than that found within either of the diploid ancestral species. This is probably a result of *B. napus* being a relatively modern species, fixed as a product of human civilisation and with no truly wild populations. Most of the diversity within *B. napus* has been introduced from its diploid progenitors. Variation in the A genome has been increased by natural *B. napus × B. rapa* crosses whereas variation in the C genome is more limited. Recent molecular marker analysis has identified more extreme genetic variation in exotic vegetable and fodder genotypes as well as newly resynthesised *B. napus* lines (Snowdon and Friedt, 2004 for a review). In *B. juncea* the A genome is mostly conserved and the C genome is significantly changed, more so than the considerably altered C genome in *B. carinata*. Similar genetic information, with much duplication, is contained in all three genomes (Slocum, 1989; Slocum et al., 1990; Chyi, Hoenecke and Sernyk, 1992; Jackson et al., 2000; Parkin, Sharpe and Lydiate, 2003). However, the chromosomal organisation and the genetic distribution within the genome is different (Truco et al., 1996). New high throughput and very informative simple sequence repeat (SSR) and single nucleotide
Polymorphism (SNP) molecular markers are now being used routinely to expedite the introduction of novel genetic variation in *Brassica* breeding programmes.

**Maternal and/or paternal inheritance of organelle genomes**

Analysis of the chloroplast DNA of the cultivated diploid *Brassica* species, and their close relatives, divided the subtribe Brassicincae into two ancient evolutionary lineages (Warwick and Black, 1997), the “Nigra” lineage, which contained the diploid *B. nigra* and the related wild mustard *Sinapis arvensis*, and the “Rapa/Oleracea” lineage, which contained the diploid progenitors of *B. napus* (Figure 3.31). There has been little work studying the origins of the cultivated amphidiploids *B. carinata* or *B. juncea*. However, studies of organellar and nuclear DNA of *B. napus* and related species suggested that a species closely related to *B. montana* gave rise to the cytoplasm of both *B. rapa* and *B. oleracea* (Song and Osborne, 1992). The same study and an earlier study on chloroplast evolution in amphidiploid *Brassica* species (Palmer et al., 1983) suggested that oilseed rape (*B. napus*) evolved from multiple hybridisations between *B. oleracea* and the closely related *n=9* species, *B. montana* and *B. rapa*. Some of these lineages may have been subject to introgression from post-hybridisation with their diploid progenitor.

**Self-incompatibility, “S” alleles**

Self-incompatibility (SI) occurs in many flowering plants and is one of the most important systems to prevent inbreeding (Takayama and Isogai, 2005). SI is defined as the inability of plants to produce functional gametes to effect fertilisation upon self-pollination or when crossed with certain relatives (De Nettancourt, 1971). Although the amphidiploid *Brassica* species, *B. napus*, *B. juncea* and *B. carinata* are largely self-pollinating (autogamous), the diploid species, with some exceptions, are self-incompatible and are obligatory out crossers. Among *Brassica* species and their close relatives, 50 out of 57 species are self-incompatible (Hinata, Isogai and Isuzugawa, 1994). The self-/non-self recognition in most species is controlled by a single locus, termed the “S locus” that inhibits the self pollen from penetrating the style when the same S-allele specificity is expressed by both the pollen and pistil. In the *Brassica* incompatibility system, over 30 *B. rapa* alleles and 50 *B. oleracea* alleles have been identified: S1, S2, S3,...S50. (Nou et al., 1993; Ockendon, 2000). Self-compatible (S0) alleles are also known.

Among angiosperms there are two major types of physiological SI systems: gametophytic (GSI) and sporophytic (SSI) (Briggs and Knowles, 1967). In a GSI system, the pollen reaction is controlled by the genotype of the individual pollen grain, i.e. a plant heterozygous at the S-locus would produce two possible types of pollen with each microspore receiving one of the two possible S-alleles. However, in the SSI system that is present in the Brassicincae, all pollen released by a plant has the same phenotype with respect to the compatibility reaction, regardless of the genotype of the individual pollen grain. The S-locus consists of at least three tightly linked transcriptional units arranged in pairs, with one functioning as the female determinant and the other the male. This multi-gene complex at the S-locus is inherited as one segregating unit so the gene complexes are called “S-haplotypes”. Self-/non-self recognition operates at the level of protein-protein interaction of the two determinants (Takayama and Isogai, 2005). When the SI system is activated in a Brassicincae species, a recognition reaction occurs between the papilla cells of the stigma and the pollen (Hinata and Nishio, 1980).
II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.)

There are three highly polymorphic genes involved in the SI response. The two female determinants consist of the S-locus glycoproteins (SLGs) and the S-locus receptor kinase (SRK). SRK consists of an SLG-like extracellular domain, a transmembrane domain and an intercellular serine/threonine domain. SLG and SCR expression occurs just before the flower opens, primarily in the stigma papilla cells. They also exhibit allelic sequence diversity (Takayama and Isogai, 2005). The male determinant genes named SP11 (S-locus protein 11) or SCR (S-locus cysteine rich) code for the secretion of small, cystine-rich proteins, SP11/SCR, in anther tapetum cells and gametophytically in the microspores (Takayama et al., 2000). These genes are tightly linked and behave as a single Mendelian locus, displaying multiple allelic versions (Takayama and Isogai, 2003). The SI-response occurs when stigma and pollen share at least one allele. Upon pollination, SP11, carried in the pollen coat, penetrates the papilla cell wall and binds with SRK. The binding induces autophosphorylation of SRK starting a signalling cascade that causes the rejection of self-pollen by preventing hydration and further development of the pollen tube (Takayama and Isogai, 2005). SLGs are not present or active in all members of the mustard family (Kusaba et al., 2001). If there is a compatible reaction, the papilla cells provide moisture for pollen germination; however, with self-pollination, the absorption of water and germination are disrupted (Dickinson, 1995) and a callus deposition may occur at the attachment site (see Hinata, Isogai and Isuzugawa, 1994 for a review). If the incompatible pollen is able to germinate, the pollen tube growth is slowed or inhibited due to the inability of the pollen tube to grow through the papilla cell wall.

For vegetable crops, the National Vegetable Research Station at Wellesbourne, England, maintains a collection of all known S alleles together with their internationally accepted nomenclature (Dickson and Wallace, 1986). The genotypes of most self-incompatible Brassica plants will be heterozygous at the S locus, since cross-fertilisation is mandated by the self-incompatibility specificities of the S alleles present. Dominant and recessive interactions occur between S-haplotypes (Thompson and Taylor, 1966). The interaction is complex with the S-haplotypes classified as class I or class II, based on the nucleotide sequences of SGL and SRK alleles (Nasrallah, Nishio and Nasrallah, 1991). The class I S-haplotypes are normally dominant over class II S-haplotypes in the pollen. The S allele specificities of the pollen and the stigma can be co-dominant, which occurs more frequently than the dominance/recessive. Dominance/recessive relationships occur more frequently in the pollen than the stigma and are not identical for S alleles between the stigma and pollen (Watanabe and Hinata, 1999). Among the SP11/SCR alleles in Class I S-haplotypes, the dominance relationship is non-linear whereas Class II S-haplotypes exhibit linear dominance (Takayama and Isogai, 2003; Hatakeyama et al., 1998). The molecular mechanism of the dominance relationship in the stigma is an active area of investigation and is not fully understood (Takayama and Isogai, 2003; Fujimoto et al., 2006). Selfed seed of most incompatible plants can be obtained through bud pollination i.e. applying pollen to the stigma one to four days before the flower opens since the SGLs and SRK are not expressed until just prior to the flower opening (Takayama and Isogai, 2005). Various other methods have been utilised to overcome the SI system including stigma mutilation, stigma treatment with various organic acids, solvents, oils and ionic solutions, thermally aided pollination as well as elevated carbon dioxide treatment and momentary high temperature application (Hinata, Isogai and Isuzugawa, 1994).

The SI system of S-haplotypes has been used by vegetable breeders to capture heterosis by producing top cross, double or three-way F1 hybrids. However, from the
perspective of intra- and interspecific outcrossing in the field, it has been noted that the incidence of interspecific crossing in mixed species populations is likely to increase as the number of plants in the self-incompatible species decreases, due to scarcity of pollen of the same species and increasing pollen competition from other nearby species.

Although nearly all the mono-genomic Brassica species are self-incompatible, the natural amphidiploids species – B. napus, B. juncea and B. carinata – are all self-compatible (Takahata and Hinata, 1980). Okamoto et al. (2007) note that interspecific crosses between B. rapa and B. oleracea are difficult to make and, when the chromosome complement is doubled, produce self-incompatible amphidiploids plants (Beschorner, Plümper and Odenbach, 1995; Nishi, 1968). They suggest that a single mutation in a dominant S-haplotype could result in a self-compatible B. napus plant that could reproduce itself through the production of self seed. Amphidiploid plants without such a mutation would be forced to cross with one or the other diploid parent and rapidly be assimilated into one or the other parent species. Fujimoto et al. (2006) provide evidence for such mutations in B. rapa and B. oleracea.

Interspecific hybridisation and introgression

Introduction

With the introduction of genetically modified (GM) B. napus, the potential for inserted genes to transfer and introgress into related Brassicaceae species has been the subject of much speculation and research. There are many conditions which have to be met for such an event to occur. First, the cross of interest must occur. However, crossing success depends on a series of preconditions that include physical proximity of the parents, pollen movement and longevity, synchrony of flowering, breeding system of the parents, flower characteristics, pollen-style compatibility and competitiveness of foreign pollen. If all these pre-fertilisation conditions are met, the next series of hurdles include sexual compatibility, embryo-endosperm imbalance as well as hybrid fertility and viability in nature. In addition, the hybrid must have sufficient fitness to backcross with the recipient parent producing fertile progeny through several generations. For example, Wei and Darmency (2008) found crosses between male sterile B. napus and B. juncea, B. nigra, H. incana and R. raphanistrum produced only small seed, resulting in poor seedling establishment of the hybrids under field conditions. Even if all the conditions are met, introgression will not occur unless there is pairing between a chromosome of the recipient parent and a donor parent chromosome segment that carries the inserted gene. Gene transfer cannot occur in nature if any one of these requirements is not met. However, it has been speculated that strong selection pressure over many backcross generations could result in the transgene existing in a stable strain carrying an extra chromosome pair (Chèvre et al., 2001).

Modern researchers have overcome many of the natural barriers to interspecific and intergeneric crosses within the tribe Brassiceae. Techniques such as ovule, ovary and embryo culture, as well as protoplast fusion have produced hybrids that would otherwise fail due to sexual barriers. Success has also been achieved by crossing induced polyploids from one or both parents. Such techniques have been used to try to integrate important agronomic or quality traits from a foreign species into a cultivated crop. However, success using such techniques is no indication that the same result could occur through sexual crossing in nature.
The development of male sterile *B. napus* parental lines, for the production of commercial varieties, has also provided a means to investigate intraspecific, interspecific and intergeneric crossing on a field scale, without pollen competition. The results have shown that where male sterile plants were used, the frequency of interspecific crosses was significantly higher as indicated in the following species cross reports below. Thus, the presence of male sterile *B. napus* plants in commercial fields was seen as increasing the incidence and/or risk of unwanted species hybrids.

Some of the first developed hybrid *B. napus* varieties used a seed-production system termed “synthetic hybrids”. Commercial production fields growing such hybrids consisted of about 80-90% male sterile hybrid plants with the remaining fully fertile plants (10-20%) providing the pollen cloud necessary to fertilise the male sterile plants in the rest of the field. Fortunately, this “synthetic hybrid” system has been replaced with new systems that reverse the ratio of fully fertile to male sterile plants in commercial hybrid fields. Today only a small percentage (15-20%) of male sterile plants may occur as off-types in these hybrid varieties. Such plants would be saturated with pollen from the surrounding *B. napus* plants, thus greatly reducing the risk of pollination by a foreign pollen source.

Chèvre et al. (2004) identified 14 species related to *B. napus* to which gene introgression from *B. napus* could be of concern to oilseed rape growing countries in Europe and North America. The reports of interspecific and intergeneric sexual crossing attempts between these species and *B. napus* are summarised in Table 3.13. Each species cross is discussed in the following paragraphs.

Warwick, Francis and Gugel (2009) have compiled a complete list of reports on interspecific and intergeneric hybridisation within the Brassicaceae that includes studies that use sexual as well as special techniques to effect a cross.
### Table 3.13. Interspecific and intergeneric sexual crossing attempts, degree of success and potential for gene introgression

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interspecific cross</th>
<th>Sexual cross</th>
<th>Field cross</th>
<th>Seeds/cross</th>
<th>BC ♂</th>
<th>BC ♀</th>
<th>Potential</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brassica napus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Natural cross</td>
<td>Introggression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × B. carinata</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>U (1935); Roy (1980, 1977); Alam et al. (1992); Gupta (1997); Rashid, Rakow and Downey (1994); Fernandez-Escobar et al. (1988); Sacristan and Gerdemann (1986); Navabi et al. (2010)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. carinata × B. napus</td>
<td>F, Y,</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>Bing, Downey and Rakow (1991); Bing et al. (1996); Alam et al. (1992); Frello et al. (1995); Jørgensen (1999); Jørgensen et al. (1998); Gosh-Dastidar and Varma (1996); Choudhary and Joshi (1999); Kirti et al. (1995); Davey (1959); Sharma and Singh (1992); Heyn (1977); Roy (1984, 1980); Dhillon et al. (1985); Shpota and Podkolzina (1986); Sacristan and Gerdemann (1986); Wei and Darmency (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × B. juncea</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>Bing, Downey and Rakow (1991); Bing et al. (1996); Alam et al. (1992); Frello et al. (1995); Jørgensen (1999); Jørgensen et al. (1998); Gosh-Dastidar and Varma (1996); Choudhary and Joshi (1999); Kirti et al. (1995); Davey (1959); Sharma and Singh (1992); Heyn (1977); Roy (1984, 1980); Dhillon et al. (1985); Shpota and Podkolzina (1986); Sacristan and Gerdemann (1986); Wei and Darmency (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. juncea × B. napus</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>Bing, Downey and Rakow (1991); Bing et al. (1996); Alam et al. (1992); Frello et al. (1995); Jørgensen (1999); Jørgensen et al. (1998); Gosh-Dastidar and Varma (1996); Choudhary and Joshi (1999); Kirti et al. (1995); Davey (1959); Sharma and Singh (1992); Heyn (1977); Roy (1984, 1980); Dhillon et al. (1985); Shpota and Podkolzina (1986); Sacristan and Gerdemann (1986); Wei and Darmency (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × B. fruticulosa</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>0.008</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Heyn (1977); Pümper (1995); Siemens (2002); Salisbury (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. fruticulosa × B. napus</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Bing, Downey and Rakow (1991); Bing et al. (1996); Alam et al. (1992); Frello et al. (1995); Jørgensen (1999); Jørgensen et al. (1998); Gosh-Dastidar and Varma (1996); Choudhary and Joshi (1999); Kirti et al. (1995); Davey (1959); Sharma and Singh (1992); Heyn (1977); Roy (1984, 1980); Dhillon et al. (1985); Shpota and Podkolzina (1986); Sacristan and Gerdemann (1986); Wei and Darmency (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × B. maurorum</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>Bijral et al. (1995)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. maurorum × B. napus</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>Bing, Downey and Rakow (1991); This et al. (1990); Brown and Brown (1996); Struss, Bellin and Röbbelen (1991); Daniels et al. (2005); Wei and Darmency (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × B. nigra</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Gupta (1997); Ford et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. nigra × B. napus</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Gupta (1997); Ford et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × B. oleracea</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Gupta (1997); Ford et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. oleracea × B. napus</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Gupta (1997); Ford et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × B. rapa</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>Gupta (1997); Ford et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. rapa × B. napus</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>Gupta (1997); Ford et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × B. tournefortii</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>Nagpal et al. (1996); Gupta (1997); Lokanadha and Saria (1994); Liu, Landgren and Glimelius (1996); Salisbury (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. tournefortii × B. napus</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>Nagpal et al. (1996); Gupta (1997); Lokanadha and Saria (1994); Liu, Landgren and Glimelius (1996); Salisbury (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × D. catholica</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>Bjiral and Sharma (1998)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. catholica × B. napus</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>Bjiral and Sharma (1998)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × D. muralis</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. muralis × B. napus</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>Bjiral and Sharma (1996b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × Eruca sativa</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Bjiral and Sharma (1996b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eruca sativa × B. napus</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Bjiral and Sharma (1996b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × Erucastrum gallicum</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Lefol, Seguin-Swartz and Downey (1997); Batra, Shivanna and Prakash (1989); Warwick et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erucastrum gallicum × B. napus</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Lefol, Seguin-Swartz and Downey (1997); Batra, Shivanna and Prakash (1989); Warwick et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × H. incana</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>Chadoeuf, Darmency and Maillet (1998); Lefol, Danielou and Darmency (1996); Lefol et al. (1995, 1991); Eber et al. (1994); Chèvre et al. (1996); Kerlan, Chèvre and Eber (1993); Kerlian et al. (1992); Wei and Darmency (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H. incana × B. napus</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 × 10⁻⁵</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>Chadoeuf, Darmency and Maillet (1998); Lefol, Danielou and Darmency (1996); Lefol et al. (1995, 1991); Eber et al. (1994); Chèvre et al. (1996); Kerlan, Chèvre and Eber (1993); Kerlian et al. (1992); Wei and Darmency (2008)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 3.13. Interspecific and intergeneric sexual crossing attempts, degree of success and potential for gene introgression<sup>1</sup> (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interspecific cross</th>
<th>Sexual cross</th>
<th>Field cross</th>
<th>Seeds/ cross</th>
<th>BC ♂</th>
<th>BC ♀</th>
<th>Potential Introgression</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × R. raphanistrum</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>Baranger et al. (1995); Chadoeuf, Darmency and Maillet (1998); Darmency, Lefol and Fleury (1998); Eber et al. (1994); Lefol, Seguin-Swartz and Downey (1997); Rieger et al. (1999); Chèvre et al. (1998, 1997a); Wei and Darmency (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R. raphanistrum × B. napus</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>10&lt;sup&gt;-8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × R. sativus</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Gupta (1997); Ammitzbøll and Jørgensen (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R. sativus × B. napus</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × S. alba</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>Bijral, Sharma and Kanwal (1993); Ripley and Amison (1990); Mathias (1991); Lelivelt et al. (1993); Chèvre et al. (1994); Brown et al. (1997); Sridevi and Saria (1996)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. alba × B. napus</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × S. arvensis</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>Bing, Downey and Rakow (1991); Moyes et al. (2002); Inomata (1988); Brown et al. (1996); Sweet et al. (1997); Eastham and Sweet (2002); Daniels et al. (2005); Lefol, Danielou and Darmency (1996)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. arvensis × B. napus</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. napus × D. erucoides</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td>Ringdahl, McVetty and Semyk. (1987)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. erucoides × B. napus</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>VL</td>
<td>EL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:** Y = successful cross by hand pollination or in the field; F = cross attempted but failed; NR = not reported. Probability of crossing in nature and/or gene introgression H = high, L = low, VL = very low, EL = extremely low.
B. napus – Raphanus raphanistrum

R. raphanistrum is an economically damaging weed with a worldwide distribution but its range is limited to areas with acid soils. Hand crosses between B. napus and R. raphanistrum have produced reciprocal hybrids with a higher number of hybrids obtained with B. napus as the female (Kerlan et al., 1992; Chèvre et al., 1996). In France, when R. raphanistrum served as the female, only three hybrids have been identified, even though tens of thousands of seeds were examined (Eber et al., 1994; Baranger et al., 1995; Chèvre et al., 2000, 1998, 1997b; Darmency, Lefol and Fleury, 1998; Darmency and Fleury, 2000). Chèvre et al. (2000) estimated the hybridisation frequency to be $10^{-7}$ to $10^{-5}$ while Australian and Canadian studies reported respective frequencies of $4 \times 10^{-8}$ (Rieger et al., 2001) and $3 \times 10^{-5}$ (Warwick et al., 2003).

Guéritaine, Bazot and Darmency (2003) found that under field conditions the F₁ hybrid emergence was lower and slower and seedling survival significantly less than both parents. A six-year UK monitoring programme of natural populations of R. raphanistrum growing near fields of HR B. napus showed no evidence of intergeneric crossing (Eastham and Sweet, 2002). Similarly in the United Kingdom, Daniels et al. (2005) found no R. raphanistrum × B. napus plants or progeny when they sampled R. raphanistrum plants growing in or near four fields sown to glufosinate resistant B. napus. Further, no hybrids were found in a Swiss survey (Thalmann, Guadagnuolo and Felber, 2001). When R. raphanistrum was the female, no hybrids were found in any of these studies. The frequency of hybridisation can vary depending on the B. napus parental variety and the population source of R. raphanistrum. When B. napus male sterile plants were used as females, the frequency of hybrids was greatly increased, ranging from <0.2% (Chèvre et al., 2000; 1996) to as high as 90% in Danish and French field trials (Eber et al., 1994; Baranger et al., 1995; Ammitzbøll and Jørgensen, 2006). These findings would be of concern if the use of synthetic hybrids became standard, as the vast majority of plants in commercial oilseed rape fields would be male sterile. However, as indicated earlier, this hybrid system has now been phased out.

In the B. napus by R. raphanistrum cross, the majority of the F₁ hybrids had half the chromosomes of each species (ACRr, 2n=28) while one hybrid had all the chromosomes of R. raphanistrum and half the B. napus chromosomes (RrRrAC, 2n=37) (Chèvre et al., 2000). Thus, the fertility of the hybrids is very low (Baranger et al., 1995; Chèvre et al., 1998, 1996; Darmency, Lefol and Fleury, 1998; Pinder et al., 1999; Thalmann, Guadagnuolo and Felber, 2001; Warwick et al., 2003). However, Rieger et al. (2001) reported two fertile amphidiploids hybrids with a genome complement of AACCRrRr, 2n=56. Chèvre et al. (2000) also reported four fertile amphidiploids but questioned their genetic stability due to the presence of univalents and multi/quadrivalents at meiosis. The fitness of F₁ hybrids produced on B. napus male sterile plants was assessed in the field by Guéritaine, Bazot and Darmency (2003). They found that the hybrids were slower to emerge and less likely to survive than either parent, particularly when subjected to crop competition. The hybrids also flowered later than either parent, which limited the opportunities for backcrossing to R. raphanistrum. It should also be noted that if crossing between these species were to occur, it would most likely take place in a field of oilseed rape. Thus, most of the crossed seed would be harvested and only a very small proportion of the original hybrid seed would remain (Rieger et al., 2001). The few surviving hybrids would germinate among B. napus volunteers with backcrosses to B. napus much more likely than with wild radish.
When *B. napus* herbicide resistant (HR) hybrids were surrounded by *R. raphanistrum* plants in the field, the seed set was less than one seed per hybrid plant (Darmency, Fleury and Lefol, 1995). Despite the low fertility and poor fitness of the hybrids, the fertility and fitness of the backcross progeny improved with each backcross generation but the percentage of HR plants decreased (Chèvre et al., 1999, 1998, 1997b; Darmency, Lefol and Fleury, 1998; Benabdelmoune et al., 2003; Guéritaine, Bazot and Darmency, 2003). In each generation the progenies were selected for herbicide tolerance and only HR plants advanced to the next backcross (BC). None of the HR plants in the BC3 to BC5 had the chromosome number of *R. raphanistrum* (2n=18) indicating that no genomic introgression had occurred (Chèvre et al., 1998; Guéritaine et al., 2002). Backcrossing to *R. raphanistrum* was continued up to BC7 followed by random mating and selection pressure in generations (G) G8 through G11 (Al Mouemar and Darmency, 2004). Root tip cytology of HR G9 plants established that all 32 plants were either carrying extra chromosomes or, as indicated by the non-Mendelian segregation of the progeny, did not have the HR gene stably introgressed into the *R. raphanistrum* genome. The authors concluded that “the prospect of stable introgression of herbicide tolerance to wild radish in nature seems remote”.

*B. napus* – *B. rapa*

*B. rapa*, a widespread weed of cultivated and disturbed lands, is also grown as a vegetable and oilseed crop. The weedy type differs from the cultivated oilseed form only in the primary seed dormancy trait. Plant breeders of *B. rapa* and *B. napus* have known for many years that these two species readily cross in nature and they were not surprised that natural interspecies gene flow was demonstrated in several countries, including Denmark (Landbo, Andersen and Jørgensen, 1996; Hansen et al., 2001), Canada (Warwick et al., 2003; Beckie et al., 2003; Yoshimura et al., 2006), the United Kingdom (Daniels et al., 2005; Allainguillaume et al., 2006), the United States (Halfhill et al., 2002) and the Czech Republic (Bielikova and Rakousky, 2001).

Normally the highest hybrid frequencies occur when individual, self-incompatible plants of *B. rapa* are present in *B. napus* fields (Jørgensen et al., 1996). In the field, more hybrids are produced on *B. rapa* plants than on *B. napus* plants (Jørgensen and Andersen, 1994; Hauser, Jørgensen and Ostergard, 1997; Jørgensen et al., 1998), primarily due to their respective self-incompatible and self-compatible breeding systems. However, in reciprocal hand crosses, more hybrids per cross are found when *B. napus* is the female (Downey, Klaasen and Stringham, 1980). Natural interspecific hybridisation between *B. rapa* and *B. napus* varies widely, depending on the environment under which the plants develop and the design of the experiment, particularly the ratio of *B. rapa* to *B. napus* plants. In Danish trials, up to 95% hybrids were found in *B. rapa* progeny (Mikkelsen, Jensen and Jørgensen, 1996), while in New Zealand Palmer (1962) reported a range of 10-88%. In contrast, others in Canada (Bing, Downey and Rakow, 1991) and England (Wilkinson et al., 2000) found less than 1% hybridisation. In Canadian field experiments (two in the east and one in the west), *B. rapa* plants were grown at various positions within and alongside HR *B. napus* plots. Approximately 7% of the harvested *B. rapa* seed was found to be triploid hybrids (AAC, 2n=29) (Warwick et al., 2003). Similarly, in commercial *B. napus* fields containing sparse populations of weedy *B. rapa*, the hybrid frequency was approximately 13.6%. However, the frequency of hybrids from weedy *B. rapa* growing in a harvested corn field with HR *B. napus* volunteers was only 0.023% (Warwick et al., 2003). In New Zealand field studies with ratios of *B. rapa* to *B. napus* plants of 1:400 and 1:1, the hybrid frequencies ranged from 2.1% to 0.06% with the total...
for the experiment of 0.46% (Jenkins, Conner and Frampton, 2001). A study of \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) populations growing outside \( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) fields in the United Kingdom found few hybrids (0.4-4.5%) in 7% of the populations, and no hybrids in the remaining 93% (Scott and Wilkinson, 1998).

Hybridisation also occurs with \( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) as the female; however, most of the hybrid seed that is formed will be removed from the field at harvest. Any hybrids that volunteer the following year are almost certain to be surrounded by \( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) volunteers. Thus, any backcrosses will quickly revert to \( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) form and chromosome number.

Compared to the parent species, natural interspecific hybrids have reduced fertility and poor seed set, averaging two to five seeds per pod (Jørgensen and Andersen, 1994). The survival rate of hybrid seedlings is also low, with <2% survival (Scott and Wilkinson, 1998), reducing the rate of introgression (Jørgensen et al., 1996; Sweet et al., 1999b). Interspecific vegetative and reproductive competition strongly impacts the relative and absolute fitness of the hybrids (Hauser et al., 2001). When Mikkelsen, Jensen and Jørgensen (1996) sowed interspecific hybrids within a \( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) population, no \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) \( \times \) hybrid BC progeny were found among 2 000 offspring raised from 30 \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) plants. Further, the hybrids lacked primary seed dormancy (Linder, 1998). This may explain why Landbo and Jørgensen (1997) found interspecific hybrids in feral \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) populations, but no hybrid seed in the seed banks at those sites. Introgression of HR transgenes from \( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) to \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) has occurred in Europe (Jørgensen, 1999; Hansen et al., 2001; Norris and Sweet, 2002). However, no evidence of introgression was found in seed samples taken from \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) plants in the field, indicating there may be selection pressure against backcross individuals (Norris and Sweet, 2002).

The rate of introgression of a \( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) trait into the \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) genome will greatly depend on the selection pressure exerted on the gene (Scott and Wilkinson, 1998; Sweet et al., 1999a; Snow and Jørgensen, 1999). The introgression of a gene into the \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) genome might be slowed by positioning it in the C genome of \( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) but the findings of Stewart, Halfhill and Warwick (2002), where 12 independent \( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) transformations distributed across both the A and C genomes all generated backcrosses at similar rates, suggests this theory may not be valid. Leflon et al. (2006) found that the transmission rate of the C chromosomes depended on which C chromosome was involved, and that a gene carried on a C chromosome is less likely to be transferred in a \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) background than if it was on an A chromosome. The presence of an introgressed HR gene in \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) did not increase its fitness or weediness relative to conventional non-GM \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) including glufosinate resistant BC3 hybrids (Snow, Andersen and Jørgensen, 1999) or BC2F2 glyphosate hybrids (Warwick, 2007). It should be kept in mind that if introgression of an R gene does occur, the resulting HR \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) plant(s) can be controlled with other herbicides or cultivation. In Canada, with 16 years of experience growing millions of hectares of HR \( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) each year, no significant agronomic problems with HR \( B. \) \( \text{rapa} \) have been encountered (Beckie et al., 2006).

\( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) – \textit{Hirschfeldia incana}

\( H. \) \textit{incana} is an important weed in some European countries and eastern Australia, but not in Canada or the Indian sub-continent. Hand crosses between \( B. \) \( \text{napus} \) and \( H. \) \textit{incana} produced 1.3 and 3.1 hybrids per 100 pollinations when \( H. \) \textit{incana} and \( B. \) \textit{napus}, respectively, were used as the female (Kerlan et al., 1992). In the field, when male sterile \( B. \) \textit{napus} was used as the female, 1.9 hybrids were recorded per pollinated flower (Eber et al., 1994). However, in three years of field trials, isolated \( H. \) \textit{incana} plants
II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – 225

SAFETY ASSESSMENT OF TRANSGENIC ORGANISMS: OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS, VOLUME 5 © OECD 2016

growing in *B. napus* plots only produced 0.6 hybrid seeds per plant. Most F₁ plants had reduced fitness with seedling emergence over three years being <1% (Chadoeuf, Darmency and Maillet, 1998). However, some hybrids were at least as competitive as the wild parent (Eber et al., 1994; Lefol, Fleury and Darmency, 1996).

When F₁ plants were backcrossed to *H. incana* and only HR progeny were selected for further backcrossing, fewer seeds were produced in each generation. BC₃ produced only one seed with no viable seeds obtained in BC₄ (Darmency and Fleury, 2000). It is suggested that a *H. incana* gene inhibits homeologous pairing, resulting in an expulsion of *B. napus* chromosomes (Kerlan et al., 1992; Lefol, Fleury and Darmency, 1996). Thus, although interspecific F₁ hybrids will frequently occur in areas where *H. incana* is prevalent, their persistence will be short and the possibility of gene introgression from *B. napus* remote.

*B. napus – B. juncea*

*B. juncea* is primarily a crop plant grown in China, the Russian Federation and on the Indian sub-continent as a major source of edible oil, and in Canada and a few other countries as a condiment crop. However, it is present as a weed in parts of Europe and Australia. Since *B. juncea* (AABB) and *B. napus* (AACC) have a common genome, the chance of interspecific crossing is enhanced. In Canadian co-cultivation experiments, Bing et al. (1996) identified five interspecific hybrids in seed harvested from 469 *B. napus* plants and 3 out of 990 plants when *B. juncea* was the female. Jørgensen et al. (1998) noted that as the ratio of *B. juncea* to *B. napus* plants increased from 1:3 to 1:15, the hybridization frequency on *B. juncea* plants decreased from 2.3% to 0.3%. Warwick (2007) reported gene flow from HR *B. napus* to neighbouring fields of *B. juncea* at a rate of 0.245% at the adjacent *B. juncea* field border and 0.030%, 0.021% and 0.005% at 50 m, 100 m, and 200 m, respectively.

The viability of F₁ pollen is reported to be low (18-26%) (Frello et al., 1995; Choudhary and Joshi, 1999; GoshDastidar and Varma, 1999), but spontaneous backcrossing with improved fertility has been reported (Alam et al., 1992; Bing, Downey and Rakow, 1991; Bing et al., 1996; Jørgensen, 1999). Given this background of results, the introgression of genes from *B. napus* could be expected to occur where these two species are widely grown.

*B. napus – Sinapis arvensis*

*S. arvensis* is a serious weed in all oilseed rape growing countries. In a five-year study of *S. arvensis* growing in and around GM *B. napus* crops in the United Kingdom, Sweet et al. (1997) and Norris et al. (unpublished, cited in Eastham and Sweet, 2002) failed to detect any hybridisation with *S. arvensis*. Also in the United Kingdom, Daniels et al. (2005) tested 60 768 progeny from 818 *S. arvensis* plants, growing in or close to 23 glufosinate resistant *B. napus* fields. No resistant plants were found in the parents or their progeny. Similarly, Warwick et al. (2003) found no interspecific hybrids among 43 828 *S. arvensis* progeny from plants growing in HR *B. napus* fields in western Canada. Bing et al. (1996) also found no hybrids in Canadian co-cultivation experiments involving the assessment of 7 500 *S. arvensis* seeds. Similar results were reported from UK trials where 9 688 *S. arvensis* seedlings were screened (Moyes et al., 2002) and in France, Lefol, Danielou and Darmency (1996) found no hybrids among the 2.9 million *S. arvensis* seeds tested. However, when male sterile or emasculated *B. napus* plants were pollinated with *S. arvensis* pollen, either naturally or artificially, a small number of hybrids were obtained. Chèvre et al. (1996) found 0.18 hybrids per 100 pollinations while
Lefol, Fleury and Darmency (1996) detected 6 hybrids in 50 000 seeds analysed. In hand crosses using *S. arvensis* females from different UK and French populations, Moyes et al. (2002) detected one completely sterile hybrid. No such hybrid had previously been reported without embryo rescue or ovule culture (Inomata, 1988; Kerlan et al., 1992; Bing et al., 1996, 1991; Chèvre et al., 1996; Lefol, Fleury and Darmency, 1996). All hybrids produced were weak, largely or completely sterile, and unlikely to survive in nature (Moyes et al., 2002). None of the hybrids were able to backcross to *S. arvensis*.

Daniels et al. (2005) identified a single plant in the United Kingdom that they believed to be a *S. arvensis × B. napus* hybrid. It was growing in a patch of *S. arvensis* plants adjacent to a field that had grown a crop of glufosinate resistant *B. napus* the previous year. The hybrid classification was based on a null reaction to the application of glufosinate to a single leaf followed by a positive DNA test for the glufosinate resistance gene. However, only morphological characteristics were used to classify the plant as a *S. arvensis × B. napus* hybrid. The lack of any information on chromosome number and/or markers, and in the light of previous studies, the question remains as to whether the plant was indeed a *S. arvensis × B. napus* hybrid rather than another interspecific cross such as *B. rapa × B. napus*. In the words of the report’s reviewer “such a finding needs to be interpreted with caution.”

Despite the one hybrid produced by Moyes et al. (2002) on an emasculated *S. arvensis* plant, there is general agreement among researchers that the possibility of gene flow between *B. napus* and *S. arvensis* is extremely low (Moyes et al., 2002) to non-existent (Downey, 1999a; 1999b).

**B. napus – Raphanus sativus**

*R. sativus* is a vegetable crop in many parts of the world, but when grown for seed it can escape from cultivation and colonise disturbed sites such as roadsides, fields and coastal sand dunes (Snow, Uthus and Culley, 2001). Daniels et al. (2005) reported flowering of *R. sativus* plants could coincide with either winter or spring *B. napus*. In *R. sativus* plants growing in or near a field of glufosinate resistant *B. napus* in the United Kingdom, Daniels et al. (2005) found no *R. sativus × B. napus* hybrids. Further, progeny from the sampled *R. sativus* plants were all susceptible to glufosinate. Hybrids between *B. napus* and *R. sativus* have been obtained in several studies with the aid of ovule culture or embryo rescue (Lelivelt et al., 1993; Paulmann and Röbbelen, 1988; Sundberg and Glimelius, 1991; Metz, Nap and Stickema, 1995; Takeshita, Kato and Tokumasu, 1980) and also by hand pollination (Gupta, 1997). All artificially produced hybrids were male sterile. However, in natural crosses Ammitzbøll and Jørgensen (2006) obtained an average of 0.6 seeds per pod when male sterile *B. napus* plants were used as the female and a radish cultivar as the pollen parent. Huang et al. (2002) in hand crosses also produced many hybrids on Ogura male sterile plants. All seeds produced proved to be F₁ triploid hybrids with low pollen fertility (0-15%). It is highly probable that the presence of radish cytoplasm in the male sterile *B. napus* parent greatly facilitated *R. sativa* pollen penetration of the stigma. Further studies need to be carried out with this cross since *R. sativa* crosses easily with *R. raphanistrum* (Snow, Uthus and Culley, 2001).

**B. napus – Erucastrum gallicum**

*E. gallium* is a self-compatible, annual or winter annual with very small seeds. It is a minor weed of cultivated fields and waste places in many oilseed rape growing countries. Batra, Shivanna and Prakash (1989) obtained three hybrids from the cross *E. gallicum ×
**II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – 227**

SAFETY ASSESSMENT OF TRANSGENIC ORGANISMS: OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS, VOLUME 5 © OECD 2016

---

**B. napus** using embryo rescue. Lefol, Seguin-Swartz and Downey (1997), using reciprocal hand crosses, obtained one slow-growing *B. napus × E. gallicum* F₁ hybrid with pollen viability of 28%. Indications were that the F₁ would not survive in competition with a *B. napus* crop. No seed was produced when *E. gallicum* served as the female parent. The F₁ hybrid was backcrossed in all combinations and many seeds were obtained when *E. gallicum* was the male and a few when *B. napus* was the female. Backcross seed from the hybrid produced plants identical to *E. gallicum*, suggesting that the *B. napus* chromosomes were lost. A survey of 22,000 seedlings of *E. gallicum* from western Canadian *B. napus* fields yielded no hybrids, indicating that the possibility of hybridisation between *B. napus* and *E. gallicum* is very low (<5 × 10⁻⁵) (Warwick et al., 2003).

**B. napus – B. nigra**

*B. nigra* is a minor weed and an occasional crop in warmer, shorter day-length locations of oilseed rape growing regions. Interspecific hand crosses between *B. napus* and *B. nigra* have been difficult to obtain, with some success using oilseed rape as the female (Davey, 1959; Heyn, 1977; Diederichsen and Sacristan, 1988; Nishiyama, Sarashima and Matsuzawa, 1991; Bing, Downey and Rakow, 1991; Bing et al., 1996; Kerlan et al., 1992; Struss, Quiros and Röbbelen, 1992; Zhu, Struss and Röbbelen, 1993). The F₁ hybrids were moderately to highly sterile but a few F₂ and BC seeds were obtained (Bing, Downey and Rakow, 1991; Zhu, Struss and Röbbelen, 1993). Using controlled crosses hybridization levels were extremely low (Raybould and Gray, 1993; Scheffler and Dale, 1994). In the cross *B. napus × B. nigra*, Brown and Brown (1996) observed the pollen tubes of *B. nigra* were short and twisted with only a few penetrating the style. No hybrids were found in natural crosses when *B. nigra* was the female (Bing, Downey and Rakow, 1991; Leckie, Smithson and Crute, 1993; Daniels et al., 2005).

**B. napus – B. oleracea and Brassica vegetables**

Gene flow from oilseed rape to *B. napus* vegetables (Swedes, rutabaga, Siberian kale) is possible since they are all within the same species. Similarly, gene flow to *B. rapa* vegetables (e.g. turnip, Chinese cabbage, etc.) is possible since they have the A genome in common. However, *B. napus* and *B. rapa* vegetables are not considered weedy. In addition, they are generally harvested prior to flowering.

Hand crosses between *B. napus* and *B. oleracea* have been successful but at a very low frequency (Chiang, Chiang and Grant, 1977) and natural crosses have only been successful with the assistance of embryo rescue (Ayotte, Harney and Souza Machado, 1987; Takeshita, Kato and Tokumasu, 1980; Quazi, 1988; Habman et al., 2010). However, amphidiploid F₁ hybrids were fertile and readily backcrossed to either parent (Sundberg and Glimelius, 1991; Kerlan et al., 1992; Chèvre et al., 1996).

No spontaneous hybrids between *B. napus* and *B. oleracea* were found in two UK surveys of wild *B. oleracea* populations (Scheffler and Dale, 1994; Wilkinson et al., 2000). However, a later UK survey of two wild *B. oleracea* populations, growing within 25 m of *B. napus* fields, identified one triploid F₁ hybrid and nine introgressants based on flow cytometry and crop-specific microsatellite markers (Ford et al., 2006). The fertility of these plants has not been reported.
B. napus – Sinapis alba

*S. alba* is commercially grown as a condiment crop but weedy forms occur in the Mediterranean region and in some countries where *S. alba* is used as a green manure crop. The cross *B. napus* × *S. alba* is difficult to make even with hand pollination, usually requiring embryo or ovule culture (Ripley and Arnison, 1990; Mathias, 1991; Bijral, Sharma and Kanwal, 1993; Lelivelt et al., 1993; Chèvre et al., 1994; Brown et al., 1997; Sridevi and Saria, 1996). No field crosses have been reported (Daniels et al., 2005) and the possibility of such an occurrence is very low.

B. napus – Other weedy species

Hand crosses have been made in enclosed environments between *B. napus* and a number of weedy species within the tribe Brassiceae (e.g. *B. fruticulosa*, *B. tournefortii*, *B. mauorum*, *Diplotaxis muralis*, *D. tenuifolia*, *Rapistrum rugosum*, *Eruca sativa*) while protoplast fusion and embryo or ovule rescue have produced F1 plants in *B. napus* crosses with *B. oxyrrhina*, *B. barrelieri*, *B. elongata*, *B. gravinae*, *B. souliei* and *Diplotaxis tenuisiliqua*. No field interspecific or intergeneric hybrids have been reported between *B. napus* and the above species (Salisbury, 2002).

Ecology

*Interactions in natural and agricultural ecosystems*

Glucosinolates and their ecological interaction

Virtually all plants of the Brassicaceae produce sulphur compounds called glucosinolates (Kjaer, 1960). Although there are some 250 of these allelochemicals that occur in 16 botanical families of the order Brassicales (Verkerk et al., 2009), only about 20 are commonly found in *Brassica* species (Sarwar and Kirkegaard, 1998). A single species will usually contain significant amounts of 4 different glucosinolates but a single plant may contain as many as 15 different glucosinolates. They are present in varying amounts in all tissues of the plant and directly or indirectly impact their biological environment (Brown and Morra, 1997). They are the source of the flavour and odour of the *Brassica* vegetables and the hot component in mustards. The kind and quantity of glucosinolate varies within and among species and even between stages of plant development as well as between plant parts e.g. cotyledon, leaf, root, flower buds and seed. The highest concentration of glucosinolates is normally found in flower buds and seeds.

All glucosinolates have the same basic structure consisting of a β-D-thioglucose group, a sulphonated oxime group and a side chain “R”, derived from one of the amino acids, methionine, phenylalanine, tryptophane or a branched-chain amino acid (Figure 3.40). Glucosinolates accumulate in plant cell vacuoles. They can be broken down (hydrolyzed) by the enzyme myrosinase which is located separately in the idoblast cells. When plant cells are crushed or broken, and moisture is present, the glucosinolates and myrosinase are released and the enzyme catalyses the hydrolysis of the glucosinolates into glucose, sulphate and thiocyanates, isothiocynates and nitriles plus sulphur (Figure 3.40). The intact glucosinolates have little biological activity but their thiocyanate and isothiocynate breakdown products have broad biocidal activity (Brown and Morra, 1997).
The glucosinolates serve as an advance-prepared system of protection that is activated only when plant tissue is damaged by a disease or insect attack. The destruction of the plant cells results in the hydrolysis of the glucosinolates by the myrosinase enzyme, thus releasing the volatile isothiocyanates that have a wide spectrum of anti-microbial effects and act as attractants or repellents to some insects and herbivores (Vašák, 2002; Brown and Morra, 1997; Fenwick et al., 1983).

*Brassica* crops are also used as biofumigants based on the release of the bioactive isothiocyanates in the soil when seed meal amendments or green manure are incorporated, or *Brassica* crops are used in the rotation (Brown and Morra, 1997). It is also suspected that the volatile isothiocyanates, from residue of *Brassica* crops, result in inhibitory effects on some subsequent crops (see the section on “Allelopathy”).

The glucosinolates also impact on the health and nutrition of animals and humans as well as the quality and usefulness of products from *Brassica* crops. These aspects are discussed in the following section.

Figure 3.40. Glucosinolate chemical structure and enzymatic breakdown products formed in broken *Brassica* plant cells with moisture

**Damaging insects**

*Brassica* species are important components of temperate climate ecosystems. They provide forage for many insects as well as wild life. The complex of insects that feed upon the Brassicas is one of the important factors limiting the production of commercial *Brassica* crops (Ekborn, 1995; Lamb, 1989). Brassicaceous plants produce a family of sulphur compounds called glucosinolates, whose breakdown products are attractants and stimuli for feeding and oviposition but, on the other hand, act as deterrents or toxins for herbivores not adapted to plants of the Brassicaceae. A list of insects important to *Brassica* plants is given in Table 3.A1.1 of the annex. Some of the more important insects are discussed below.
Phyllotreta spp. – Flea beetles

Flea beetles feed on spring-sown seedlings and in some years the second generation may attack green foliage and pods in the fall. Several species of flea beetles occur in different *Brassica*-growing areas of the world. Damage by these small beetles is characterised by feeding holes in cotyledons and first true leaves and is most severe under warm, dry conditions. Some Brassicaceous species (e.g. *Sinapis alba*, *B. villosa*) avoid damage due to the presence of hairs (trichomes) on cotyledons, leaves and stems. Attempts at biological control have not been successful, but research is underway to develop *B. napus* plants expressing large numbers of trichomes as a means of defence (Gruber et al., 2006). The primary control measure is insecticidal seed dressings.

Psylliodies chrysocephala – Cabbage stem flea beetle

This beetle is one of the most important pests of oilseed rape in Europe (Ekbom, 1995). Eggs, laid by adults in the soil at the base of seedlings, produce larvae that eat into leaf stocks and later into the stem and base of the biennial plants, where the larvae overwinter. Feeding damage results in weakened plants, resulting in reduced yield and winter kill. Control is dependent upon insecticide sprays.

Ceutorhynchus spp. – Stem weevils

Both *C. napi* and *C. quadridens* are important pests in continental Europe. The weevils overwinter as adults and lay their eggs on leaf petioles of overwintered *Brassica* plants. The larvae eat into and feed in the stems resulting in weakened and broken plants. Insecticide sprays are used for control.

Aphid species

Three species of aphids can be of economic importance on Brassicaceous plants (Ekbom, 1995). *Lipaphis erysimi* and *Brevicoryne brassicae* prefer Brassicaceae hosts while *Myzus persicae* is polyphagous. On the Indian sub-continent *L. erysimi* is a very serious pest capable of reducing oilseed mustard yields by 50%. In temperate zones, *B. brassicae* is a common pest of vegetable Brassicas and occasionally of oilseed crops. Suction feeding causes a direct loss of vigour and yield. *M. persicae* also causes indirect damage as a vector of beet western yellow virus (BWYV) (Hill et al., 1991). Insecticide sprays can be used for control but care must be taken not to kill beneficial insects present during flowering.

Lepidoptera species

The lepidopteron pests occur sporadically and can have more than one generation per year. The eggs are laid on the leaves where the larvae feed. In Canada, a second generation of the diamondback moth (*Plutella xylostella*) may also attack pods of oilseed rape. The diamondback and *Pieris brassicae* (the large cabbage white butterfly) are also important pests of vegetable crops, where their leaf damage affects market value. Chemical control is applied where populations warrant.

Meligethes species

Pollen beetles are important pests of both spring and winter oilseed rape in Europe. Adult beetles move onto the crop from unrelated early flowering plants to feed on pollen from open flowers and to lay eggs in unopened buds. The larvae emerge and eat the
stamens, causing buds to abort. The final instar larvae fall to the ground and pupate with
the new generation emerging in July into August (Ekbom, 1995). Pyrethroids are the most
commonly used chemical control.

Ceuthorhynchus assimilis – Seed pod weevil

This weevil occurs in both Europe and North America. It has one generation per year,
emerging from over-wintering sites in the late spring to feed on the crop. The main
damage is done to the seed pods. The adults make small holes in the pods to feed on the
seeds within and to lay eggs. The larvae eat their way out of the pods, drop to the ground
and pupate. The weevil has only recently invaded the oilseed rape growing area of
western Canada. Control is by chemical sprays.

Dasineura brassicae – Pod midge

The pod midge is a European pest that uses the small holes in the pods made by the
seed pod weevil for oviposition. The larvae eat the developing seed and cause the pods to
open, losing their seed. The larvae over-winter in cocoons in the soil, pupate in the late
spring and fly to the plants to oviposition, living only a few days (Ekbom, 1995). Early
spraying for the pollen beetle can provide control of pod midge and other pod pests.

Beneficial insects

The interaction between bees, both farmed and wild, and \textit{Brassica} plants are mutually
beneficial. The bees aid fertilisation and receive nectar and pollen in return. Where
grown, oilseed rape and mustard provide productive bee pasture while the fertilising
activities of the bees are essential for the production of hybrid seed and tend to increase
seed yields of commercial fields.

Animal interaction

Succulent \textit{Brassica} plants attract many foraging animals including rabbits, rodents
and deer to name a few. Winter oilseed rape is an important winter pasture for wild deer
and other animals. Ruminant animals, both wild and domestic, under certain
circumstances, can become ill from grazing kale or winter oilseed rape crops (Marquard
and Walker, 1995). The toxic compound responsible is dimethyl disulphide that arises
from the breakdown products of glucosinolates and S-methyl cysteine sulfoxide
(SMCO), also known as the kale anaemia factor (Maxwell, 1981). Birds often feed on
fall-germinating seedlings and on the developing seed in the pod.

Soil microbial interaction

The genetic makeup of crop plants can influence the composition of the soil microbial
community in which they grow. However, the interaction between plants and their
residues with the soil microflora is not well understood (Dunfield and Germida, 2004).
The soil microbial communities associated with the growing of conventional spring
oilseed rape (both \textit{B. napus} and \textit{B. rapa}) and transgenic HR \textit{B. napus} were investigated in
western Canada plot trials. The soil microflora in the plots of the glyphosate resistant
variety Quest differed significantly from that found in both conventional and transgenic
glufosinate resistant varieties, particularly at the flowering stage. However, although the
microbial diversity was altered, the effects varied by test site and plant growth stage.
In addition, the change in the microbial community was temporary as no differences were

**Allelopathy**

There have been numerous reports of inhibitory affects by *Brassica* residues on the following planting of pasture, cereal and oilseed crops (Campbell, 1959; Bell and Muller, 1973; Rice, 1984; Mason-Sedun, Jesspo and Lovett, 1986; Horricks, 1969; Vera, McGregor and Downey, 1987). The allelopathic effects include germination inhibition, reductions in root growth, plant height, dry weight, tiller number and seed yield. Species involved in the inhibition included marrow stem kale (*B. oleracea*), oilseed and turnip rape (*B. napus, B. rapa*) and condiment and black mustard (*B. juncea* and *B. nigra*). The inhibiting compound(s) are leached by water from dead or decaying stems and leaves of *Brassica* vegetation. The compound(s) appear to reside in the upper soil layer for a short period and then dissipate. Mason-Sedun, Jesspo and Lovett (1986) compared the effect of water extracts from dry residues of four *Brassica* species on coleoptile growth of common wheat (*Triticum aestivum*). All residues significantly reduced grain yield, plant dry weight, plant height and tiller production, with the greatest level of inhibition resulting from *B. juncea* residues followed by *B. nigra, B. napus* and *B. rapa*.

Laboratory studies indicated that when stored, dry residues became less toxic over time. Waddington and Bowren (1978) found that rapeseed residue was no more toxic to barley, bromegrass or alfalfa than comparable amounts of wheat residue. Normally *Brassica* residue will have been rained on well before seeding, resulting in no inhibition. Indeed, there is good evidence that cereal crops are more productive following oilseed rape than another cereal (Almond, Dawkins and Askew, 1986). Vera, McGregor and Downey (1987) suggested that the primary cause of the observed inhibition in western Canada may be the release of a chemical compound from volunteer oilseed rape seedlings that are killed by cultivation at seeding time. The chemical was thought to be the indole glucosinolate, glucobrassicin, present in high concentrations in tissues of young seedlings (Röbbelen and Thies, 1980).

**Pathogens**

The *Brassica* crops and their wild allies are subject to a broad range of pathogens and adverse conditions or disorders associated with non-infectious causes. Although many of the *Brassica* species have many diseases in common, there are also significant differences in susceptibility among and within species. The *Compendium of Brassica Diseases* (Rimmer et al., 2007) provides an authoritative and practical reference guide to disease problems in *Brassica* crops the world over. Colour plates and text describe the infectious diseases caused by fungi, oomycetes, bacteria, mollicutes, viruses and nematodes. In addition, non-infectious disorders such as those related to environmental effects, herbicide injury and nutritional deficiencies are also described. The American Phytopathological Society (APS) also provides a listing by common and scientific name of known *Brassica* diseases and conditions at its website as reproduced in Table 3.A1.2 in the annex (APS, 2001).

Of the many *Brassica* field crop diseases listed in Table 3.A1.2, three stand out as particularly troublesome as they are pandemic and have the potential to cause major crop injury: blackleg or stem canker (*Leptosphaeria maculans*); Sclerotinia stem rot (*Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*); and clubroot (*Plasmodiophora brassicae*). To date there are few control measures for these pathogens that are fully effective and economical.
Varieties with single race resistance have been developed, but the multi-race pathogenicity of these fungi has made it difficult to breed varieties with long-lasting resistance. However, it is anticipated that with the location of resistance genes on marker-saturated genome maps, breeders will be able to bring together multiple resistance genes from both within and outside the genus that will provide long-lasting disease resistance.

Breeding improved varieties

Introduction

The objective of all plant breeding programmes is to produce plants of greater value to the producer, the industry and the consumer. The objective is achieved by building on past advances, through the incorporation of desirable traits that impart increased yield, pest resistance, superior quality and/or utility to new varieties. To accomplish the task, many related disciplines are essential including genetics, biotechnology, agronomy, cytology, chemistry, pathology, entomology, physiology and statistics. Within the biotechnology component, gene transfer and the production of transgenic varieties has attracted public attention but the discipline is much broader and includes, among others, tissue culture, protoplast fusion, dihaploid production, gene identification and cloning.

The essential requirement for success is genetic variation for the trait or traits of interest. The breeder will normally search for the desired trait within adapted genotypes and then the crop’s world germplasm collection. If it is not present within the species but present in a related species, interspecific and intergeneric crosses and/or protoplast fusion may be attempted. If those approaches fail, induced mutation may be explored. Generally gene transfer, because of regulatory hurdles, is the last resort.

Valuable, new gene-controlled traits are added with each improved variety. The breeder evaluates the need and the genetic variability available and stacks desirable traits, be they large or small advances, into the genetic base that previous breeders have built. Gene stacking is the very essence of plant breeding. Breeding techniques vary with the crop being bred and its mode of pollination and reproduction. Among the commercial Brassica crops, both self-compatible and self-incompatible species are present so that a wide array of techniques are employed, as described below, depending on the species and the trait or traits to be introduced.

The application of conventional genetic manipulation in plants can have major beneficial impact on the nutritional quality and quantity of the world’s food supply. A very successful example, described below, is the conversion of Brassica oilseed crops from a problematic commodity to the high-quality productive crop we now define as canola.

Lipids not only make our food taste better but are required dietary ingredients. They are essential cell membrane components, regulating cell permeability and are responsible for vitamin transport as well as the starting point for hormone biosynthesis. Oils and fats are predominantly (~98%) triacylglycerols (TAGs) that consist of a three-carbon chain with fatty acids attached to each carbon. The fatty acid composition of an oil determines its value, use and nutritional worth.

Oils from B. juncea, B. rapa and later B. napus have been part of the Asian diet for centuries, but in Europe and the Americas they are relatively recent edible oil additions. Prior to and during the Second World War, rapeseed oil was primarily used as a lubricant for steam engines and as a lamp oil, but following the war, B. napus and B. rapa oils
became an important constituent of margarine. Researchers became interested in the nutritional value of Brassica seed oils because they differed from most other edible oils in having a high percentage of long carbon chain monoenoic fatty acids, eicosenoic (C20:1) and erucic (C22:1) (Table 3.14).

Small animal feeding studies in the late 1950s and throughout the 1960s indicated that the nutritional value of rapeseed oil could be substantially improved if the long chain fatty acids could be reduced to <5% of the fatty acid total (Kramer et al., 1983). Breeding and selection within the world’s germplasm was successful in developing plants of B. napus (Stefansson, Hougen and Downey, 1961), B. rapa (Downey, 1964) and later B. juncea (Kirk and Oram, 1981) that produced oils with less than 2% erucic acid. This oil was found nutritionally superior to the high erucic oil (Kramer et al., 1983) and proved to be an excellent liquid and salad oil, as well as a suitable ingredient for margarine and shortening manufacture. This new natural oil is called “canola oil” in most countries of the world and is defined as oils from B. napus, B. rapa or B. juncea containing less than 2% erucic acid of the fatty acid total. The genetic blocking of the biosynthesis of eicosenoic and erucic acids resulted in an increased percentage of oleic and linoleic acids (Table 3.14).

Table 3.14. Fatty acid composition of rapeseed, canola, soybean, sunflower and linseed oils

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fatty acid</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Rapeseed</th>
<th>Canola</th>
<th>Soybean</th>
<th>Sunflower</th>
<th>Linseed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Palmitic</td>
<td>C16:0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stearic</td>
<td>C18:0</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oleic</td>
<td>C18:1</td>
<td>17.0</td>
<td>61.5</td>
<td>23.0</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linoleic</td>
<td>C18:2</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>21.0</td>
<td>43.0</td>
<td>71.0</td>
<td>17.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linolenic</td>
<td>C18:3</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>52.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eicosenic</td>
<td>C20:1</td>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>&lt;1.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erucic</td>
<td>C22:1</td>
<td>41.0</td>
<td>&lt;1.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: 1. The first number denotes the number of carbon atoms in the fatty acid chain and the second number, the number of double bonds in the chain.

When nutritionists recommended that dietary intake of saturated fat be reduced, the nutritional value of canola oil gained widespread recognition since it contains the lowest level of saturated fatty acids of any edible oil (Grundy and Denke, 1990; Gurr, 1992; Hu et al., 1997; see Figure 3.41). Further, in 1985 Mattson and Grundy reported on the nutritional desirability of the so-called “Mediterranean diet”, pointing out the health advantages of oils with a low level of saturates and high content of oleic acid. The fatty acid composition of canola oil met or exceeded the nutritional requirements of a superior edible oil, with the lowest saturate content (6-7%) of any edible oil and a high (58-60%) level of oleic (18:1n-9) that reduces the undesirable low-density lipoproteins (LDLs) without reducing the desirable high-density lipoproteins (HDLs).

Plant breeders have now developed varieties that produce canola oils with less than 3% α-linolenic acid which improves the oxidative stability of the oil and reduces the development of unpleasant flavours and cooking odours (Scarth, Rimmer and McVetty, 1995; Scarth et al., 1988; Eskin et al., 1989; Przybylski et al., 1993).
II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – 235

SAFETY ASSESSMENT OF TRANSGENIC ORGANISMS: OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS, VOLUME 5 © OECD 2016

Figure 3.41. Canola oil compared to other edible vegetable oils as to total saturated fat content and other fatty acids

Source: Analyses conducted by POS Pilot Plant Corporation, Saskatoon, Canada, data courtesy of Canola Council of Canada.

More recently plant breeders have combined the low linolenic trait with a reduced level of linoleic acid to provide an oil with over 70% oleic acid (Table 3.15; Downey, 1996). The high oleic acid level further increases the oil’s stability so that little or no hydrogenation of the oil is required, which would otherwise result in undesirable trans fatty acids. Canola varieties that produce this latter fatty acid composition now occupy about 10% of Canada’s oilseed rape growing area.

Table 3.15. Fatty acid composition of canola and specialty B. napus varieties grown in Canada

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oil type</th>
<th>Fatty acid composition (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C16:0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canola</td>
<td>4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High erucic</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low linolenic</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High oleic</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Oil extraction of Brassica oilseeds yields about 40% oil and some 60% high protein meal. The meal is used as a high-quality protein supplement in diets for animals, poultry and fish. Unfortunately, the plant translocates and concentrates the glucosinolates in the seed. As a result, rapeseed and mustard can contain over 120 mg/g of glucosinolates per whole seed. This high concentration of glucosinolates, and their breakdown products, greatly limited the amount of traditional rapeseed meal that could be fed to non-ruminant animals, such as swine and poultry. Glucosinolates and their breakdown products reduced the palatability of the meal but, more importantly, they interfered with the iodine uptake by the thyroid gland and are active goitrogens. Feeding rapeseed meal to non-ruminant animals frequently resulted in poor feed efficiency and weight gains as well as reproductive difficulties (Bell, 1993). Thus, the amount of seed that could be processed was determined by the limited size of the meal market.

A partial solution was the inactivation of the myrosinase enzyme as the first step in the oil extraction process but enzymes in the animal gut, although less efficient, were also able to hydrolyse the glucosinolates. The answer to this problem was to breed plants with little or no glucosinolates in their seed.
Analytical advances in the 1960s allowed breeders to identify plants with only 10-12 µmoles of aliphatic glucosinolate per gram oil free meal. These plants were crossed with low erucic acid varieties to produce “double low” or “canola quality” varieties of *B. napus* (Stefansson, 1983), *B. rapa* (Downey and Rakow, 1987) and *B. juncea* (Love et al., 1990). The reduction in glucosinolate levels allowed canola meal to be fed at maximum economic levels to non-ruminants and canola meal became the preferred protein supplement for dairy cattle. Canola is defined as seeds of the genus *Brassica* (*Brassica napus*, *Brassica rapa* or *Brassica juncea*) from which the oil shall contain less than 2% erucic acid in its fatty acid profile and the solid component shall contain less than 30.0 micromoles of any one or any mixture of 3-butenyl glucosinolate, 4-pentenyl glucosinolate, 2-hydroxy-3-butenyl, or 2-hydroxy-4-pentenyl glucosinolate, per gram of air-dried, oil free solid (Canola Council of Canada).

**Breeding methods**

The amphidiploids, *B. napus*, *B. juncea* and *B. carinata*, are largely self-pollinating with the self-pollinated progeny exhibiting very little, if any, loss in vigour. Thus, methods developed for highly inbred crops, such as the cereal grains, have been adapted for these partially outcrossing species. In the oilseed forms of these species, complete homozygosity is normally not the objective, although varietal distinctness, uniformity and stability are still a requirement. However, with cole crops and hybrids, high levels of homozygosity are required.

Regardless of the breeding technique employed, success is dependent upon the identification of suitable parents that, when crossed, will yield progenies that express the desirable traits of both parents.

**Mass selection**

This early plant-breeding technique relied on the identification and harvesting of seed from the most productive or desirable plants within a population for sowing in the following year. The system is one of population improvement based on plant phenotype and is best suited to self-fertilised crops and where gene action is additive. It lacks the efficiency of present-day techniques, but a variation is used today to preserve the identity of established varieties whereby off-types are removed from elite lines and breeder seed plots.

**Pedigree method**

In the past, most *B. napus* and *B. juncea* commercial varieties were developed using the pedigree method. Crosses are made between parents exhibiting the traits to be combined and the F₁s are selfed or intercrossed. The progeny are selfed or allowed to interpollinate and selection of the best F₄ rows is done within the best F₃ families. By the F₅₋₆, the vast majority of loci will be homozygous and the characteristics of the breeding line are fixed.

The pedigree method may be modified in various ways depending on the inheritance of the trait or traits being introduced or combined. The method is well suited to the mainly self-pollinating species *B. napus* and *B. juncea*, because the seed multiplication rate, unlike cereal grains, is high (*ca.* 1 000:1). In the self-incompatible *Brassica* vegetables and oilseed *B. rapa*, inbreeding leads to a rapid loss in vigour and reduced fertility. However, it is sometimes used to produce inbred lines destined for the
production of hybrid vegetables. Some cauliflower varieties are exceptions, being natural self-pollinators that do not exhibit the usual vigour and fertility losses.

Single seed descent

As with the pedigree method, the first step in single seed descent (SSD) breeding is the careful choice of parents for hybridisation. However, unlike the pedigree method, selection is not practiced until a high degree of homozygosity is reached. The object is to advance generations as rapidly as possible and subsequently select among the randomly derived lines. The size of the segregating population is kept at a manageable level by planting only one randomly chosen single seed from each plant in the previous generation.

Since the degree of homozygosity is not as critical in *B. napus* and *B. juncea* as it is in cereals, this method has not been widely used in *Brassica* breeding programmes.

Backcross method

The backcross method is designed to introduce one or more specific trait(s) into an otherwise highly desirable parent or variety. The donor parent, containing the trait(s) to be incorporated, is crossed onto plants of an adapted, desirable, recurrent parent. Depending on the inheritance of the trait(s) and the ease or efficiency of selection, the F₁ or selected BCF₁ plants will be backcrossed to the recurrent parent. By the fourth to sixth backcross, the genetic makeup of the recurrent parent is expected to have been reconstituted with the new trait incorporated. However, linkage between the desirable trait and one or more undesirable characteristics may require selection within large populations to identify plants or lines with an uncoupled linkage.

Frequently in the self-pollinating species, only one or two backcrosses are made followed by pedigree selection.

Figure 3.42 illustrates the combined use of the backcross and pedigree methods.

In the self-incompatible species, backcrossing can also be effective for the incorporation of specific traits. However, crosses in oilseed *B. rapa* need to be made with sufficient numbers of recurrent parent plants to ensure that heterozygosity of the self-incompatibility alleles of the recurrent parent is maintained in the backcross generations. To overcome this potential problem, the “recurrent selection” breeding system is widely used.

Backcrossing is also effective in the self-incompatible vegetable species. Dickson and Wallace (1986) outline a complete backcross breeding programme for cabbage improvement.
Figure 3.42. Breeding scheme combining the backcross and pedigree selection systems to develop a low erucic, low glucosinolate variety with high seed and oil yield

Notes: This breeding scheme uses agronomically superior parents that contribute either high (●) or low (○) erucic acid levels and high (■) or low (□) glucosinolate content.

Source: Downey and Rakow (1987).

Recurrent selection method

This method is standard procedure for improving populations of self-incompatible species. Any type of segregating population may be a candidate for improvement. Normally open-pollinated seed is harvested at random from individual plants within the population, and a progeny row or rows sown from each plant. However, some seed from each plant is held in reserve. The progeny rows are evaluated and the best performing identified. An equal amount of the reserve seed from the best single plants, based on the performance of their progeny, is bulked. The first cycle of recurrent selection is complete when the new seed composite is sown in an isolation plot, and the second cycle begins with the harvesting of random single plants within the new composite. A bulk sample from the remaining plants can be harvested and planted in replicated trials to measure the response to selection. Recurrent selection is continued as long as it is anticipated that there will be a reasonable response to selection.

With every additional trait under selection, the intensity of selection increases exponentially, thus it is difficult to improve a population for several traits simultaneously. This constraint is overcome by having specialised composites for different traits that are brought together after the original objectives for each have been met.
Synthetic varieties

Allard (1960) defines a synthetic variety as one “that is maintained from open pollinated seed following its synthesis by hybridisation in all combinations among a number of selected genotypes”. This method, which is widely used in breeding forage crops, is also effective for the breeding of oilseed B. rapa (Falk et al., 1994). Equal amounts of seed from varieties or recurrent lines that arise from widely different gene pools are mixed and sown in Syn.-0 isolation plots. Seed harvested from the Syn.-0 plot constitutes the Syn.-1 generation. Syn.-1 seed from a two component synthetic will consist of 25% from each parental genotype and 50% hybrid seed. Thus, if the parental lines are good combiners, a significant amount of heterosis can be captured.

The method (Figure 3.43) has also been explored in B. napus (Becker, Löptien and Röbbelen, 1999) but breeding programmes in this species are now directed to F₁ hybrid varieties.

Normally, despite the high multiplication rate (1 000: 1), there is insufficient Syn.-1 seed for commercialisation so that Syn.-1 seed is sown to provide commercial Syn.-2 seed. This procedure has been used in Canada to produce the first commercial B. rapa synthetic varieties, Hysyn 100 and Hysyn 110. Because of the large number of genotypes within the parental lines, there is very little loss in heterosis between the Syn.-1 and Syn.-2 generations (Falk and Woods, 2003). If the market is very large a Syn.-3 generation could be added.

Figure 3.43. Breeding scheme for development of commercial synthetic varieties of oilseed Brassica crops


Diallel and polycross methods

In vegetable crops, uniform maturity, head size and appearance are critical to the success of a variety and seed yield is of secondary importance. Further, the numbers of parents that make up a variety are few and the market price of seed is substantially greater than the commodity oilseed crops. Thus, breeding methods used for vegetables can be more intensive than the large population breeding methods used in oilseed improvement programmes. For example, if a deleterious trait is controlled by a recessive gene, it is difficult to completely eliminate it from a self-incompatible plant population.
However, within a small population of potential elite parents, diallel crossing, i.e. hand crossing each parent with all other potential parents, followed by progeny assessment, can eliminate the heterozygous parent(s). Although labour intensive, this technique is suitable for most vegetable Brassicas because individual plants (parents) can be vegetatively maintained over many generations. Vegetative propagation also makes possible the use of the polycross breeding method used to identify desirable parents with good general combining ability. In this method, parental clones are space planted in a field design that assures each parent is equally exposed to pollen from all the other parents in the nursery. Progeny evaluation then identifies the best parents for inter-pollination to produce seed of a new variety.

Hybrid varieties

The vigour, yield and uniformity advantages associated with hybrids in both oilseed and vegetable Brassica crops have been demonstrated by many breeders. The main constraint to their commercial exploitation has been an effective pollen control-fertility restoration system. Vegetable breeders have utilised the variations in SI alleles, which control the self-incompatible system, to produce single and double cross hybrids. Kuckuck (1979) illustrates how lines, selected for general combining ability and specific S alleles, are programmed to produce double-cross cabbage hybrids (Figure 3.44).

The self-incompatible parent can be maintained through bud pollination, micropropagation or by overcoming the SI barrier by exposing flowering plants to high CO₂ concentrations. Nuclear male sterility in oilseed rape has also been used commercially in China but the segregating male fertile progeny have to be removed by hand (Fu et al., 1997), thus making the system expensive in many regions.

Figure 3.44. Self-incompatability scheme for breeding cabbage hybrid seed production

Source: Kuckuck (1979).

The most practical and efficient system is that of cytoplasmic male sterility (CMS). More than 17 different male sterile forms have been investigated in Brassica species (Stiewe et al., 1995; Prakash et al., 1995). Only a few have been developed to the commercial stage, but varietal development programmes worldwide are rapidly moving to the use of CMS-restorer systems for hybrid seed production. The CMS systems are based on genetic miscommunication between cytoplasmic mitochondria and nuclear genes, resulting in the disruption of normal anther and/or pollen development. There are three components to the system: the A line, carrying the cytoplasmic mitochondrial genome that results in male sterility, the B line that is fully fertile and maintains the
A line, and the R line with a nuclear gene that restores fertility. The R line should be highly heterotic to the A line to produce a high yielding, fully fertile F₁ commercial crop (Figure 3.45).

China developed the first *B. napus* commercial CMS system, known as the Polima system (Fu et al., 1997). However, the Polima system is rapidly being replaced in western breeding programmes with the *ogu*-INRA system, the Male Sterile Lembke (MSL) system and others under development (Stiewe et al., 1995; Prakash et al., 1995; Downey and Rimmer, 1993).

A transgenic pollen control-restorer system, developed by Plant Genetic Systems and commercialised by Bayer CropScience, is in widespread use in Canada and the United States. Details of how this system functions are outlined by Downey and Rimmer (1993).

**Figure 3.45. Production system for cytoplasmic male sterile hybrid seed of oilseed rape**

![Diagram of production system for cytoplasmic male sterile hybrid seed of oilseed rape](image)

*Note:* The small circle represents the nucleus showing the fertility restorer genes r and R and the larger circle the cell with cytoplasm containing fertile (F) or sterile (S) mitochondrial genes.


### Improvement through “interspecific hybrids” and “cybrids”

Interspecific and intergenomic crosses are important options for the introduction of desired traits that are not available, or cannot be found, within the primary gene pool of a crop species. Normally such crosses are difficult to make. As noted previously, there are many natural barriers, both pre- and post-fertilisation, that protect the integrity of a species. Further, even if such crossing is successful, chromosome pairing and alien gene introgression into the genome of the target species must occur.

However, in the Brassicaceae, a number of desirable nuclear genes from different genera and species have been transferred to targeted crop species. A list of traits that have been transferred to *B. napus*, *B. juncea* and/or *B. oleracea* from other Brassicaceae species is presented in Table 3.16 (Prakash et al., 2009).
The development of protoplast fusion technology has been highly successful in circumventing the natural sexual barriers that separate the Brassicaceae species and genera. The technology has the potential to access desirable genes present in distant relatives (Glimelius, 1999; Christey, 2004; Navrátilová, 2004; Liu, Xu and Deng, 2005). Prakash et al. (2009) have compiled a list of intertribal somatic hybrids in the Brassiceae and the desirable traits to be transferred (Table 3.17). Additional intergenomic hybrids have been produced but failed to establish in soil e.g. *Camelina sativa* + *B. carinata* (Narasimhulu et al., 1994), *C. sativa* + *B. oleracea* (Hansen, 1998) and *Barbarea vulgaris* + *B. napus* (Fahleson, Eriksson and Glimelius, 1994).

With some exceptions, the somatic hybrids so far obtained have exhibited a high degree of sterility and/or morphological abnormalities that have limited their use. However, the importance of somatic hybridisation is not so much the direct use of the resulting amphidiploids, containing both parental genomes, but rather to utilise the somatic hybrids as a bridge to transfer desirable traits to target species (Glimelius, 1999).

Cell fusion not only brings together the nuclear contents of both parents but also combines the cytoplasm and organellar content of fused cells. Frequently, to improve the outcome, the nucleus of one parent is eliminated by X-ray, centrifugation or chemical treatment before fusion but the fused cell contains the cytoplasm of both parents. The resulting plant is termed a “cybrid”. This technique allows cytoplasmic substitution which frequently results in cytoplasmic male sterility (CMS). Cell fusion among the Brassicaceae, where the cytoplasm of both parents are combined, can also generate novel cytoplasmic variability, bringing about organellar reassortment and DNA rearrangement, which is not possible using sexual hybridisation.

Chloroplast segregation is independent of mitochondrial segregation and while mitochondrial recombination has been frequently observed in the Brassicaceae (Glimelius, 1999), recombination is rarely found in the chloroplasts. It is also rare to have a mixture of the two chloroplasts occurring in the same hybrid. In general, the chloroplasts are usually contributed by crop species. This may occur because many of the fusions are with the allopolyploid crop species that contribute large numbers of chloroplasts per cell (Butterfass, 1989).
Table 3.16. Introgression of nuclear genes conferring desirable traits to *Brassica* crops

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trait</th>
<th>Donor species</th>
<th>Recipient species</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yellow seed coat</td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Chen and Heneen (1991)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>B. juncea</em>/<em>B. carinata</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Rashid, Rakow and Downey (1994)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>B. carinata</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Qi et al. (1995)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em>/<em>B. carinata</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Meng et al. (1998)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em>/<em>B. juncea</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Rahman (2001); Potapov and Osipova (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMS fertility</td>
<td><em>Raphanus sativus</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em> CMS (<em>Ogu</em>)</td>
<td>Heyn (1977); Rousselle et al. (1985)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restoration</td>
<td><em>Raphanus sativus</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em> CMS (<em>Kosee</em>)</td>
<td>Sakai et al. (1996)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>B. juncea</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em> CMS (<em>Polimra</em>)</td>
<td>Fan, Tai and Stefansson (1985)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>B. tournefortii</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em> CMS (<em>Tour</em>)</td>
<td>Stieve and Röbbelen (1994)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Trachystema balii</em></td>
<td><em>B. juncea</em> CMS (<em>Trachy</em>)</td>
<td>Kirtö et al. (1997)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Moricandia arvensis</em></td>
<td><em>B. juncea</em> CMS (<em>Moricandia</em>)</td>
<td>Prakash et al. (1998)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Erucastrum canariense</em></td>
<td><em>B. juncea</em> CMS (<em>Canariense</em>)</td>
<td>Prakash et al. (2001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>B. napus CMS</em></td>
<td><em>Canariense</em></td>
<td>Banga et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Enarthrocarpus lyratus</em></td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em> CMS (<em>Lyra</em>)</td>
<td>Deol et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorosis removal</td>
<td><em>Raphanus sativus</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em> CMS (<em>Ogu</em>)</td>
<td>Paulmann and Röbbelen (1988)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beet cyst nematode</td>
<td><em>Sinapis alba</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Leilivelt et al. (1993)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td><em>Raphanus sativus</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Leilivelt and Kreins (1992); Voss, Snowdon and Lühs (2000); Peterka et al. (2004); Budahn et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Club root resistance</td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td><em>B. oleracea var. capitata</em></td>
<td>Chang, Chiang and Grant (1977); Chiang et al. (1980)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blackleg resistance</td>
<td><em>B. juncea</em></td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td>Roy (1984); Dixielius (1999); Sacristan and Gerdemann (1986)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabidopsis thaliana</td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Struss et al. (1996); Chèvre et al. (1997b, 1996); Plieske, Struss and Röbbelen (1998); Dixielius (1999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinapis arvensis</td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td><em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>Bohman, Wang and Dixielius (2002); Ogbonnaya et al. (2003); Saal et al. (2004)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coincya monensis</td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td><em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>Snowdon et al. (2000); Winter et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternaria leaf spot</td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td>Winter et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td><em>Sinapis alba</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Chèvre et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diplotaxis erucoides</td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td><em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>Primard et al. (1986)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinapis alba</td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td><em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>Primard et al. (1986)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black rot resistance</td>
<td><em>B. juncea</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Tonguc and Griffiths (2004)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft rot resistance</td>
<td><em>B. oleracea var. italica</em></td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em> CMS subs. pekinensis</td>
<td>Ren, Dickson and Earle (2001a, 2001b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alterned oil quality</td>
<td><em>Orychophragmus vidadeus</em></td>
<td><em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Hu et al. (2002); Hua and Li (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earliness</td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td>Shiga (1970); Namai, Sarashima and Hosoda (1980)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low erucic acid</td>
<td><em>B. juncea</em></td>
<td><em>B. carinata</em></td>
<td>Habiman et al. (2010)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low glucosinolate</td>
<td><em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td><em>B. carinata</em></td>
<td>Getinet et al. (1994)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Prakash et al. (2009).
### Table 3.17. Intertribal somatic hybrids in Brassiceae for the integration and incorporation of desirable traits into *Brassica* crops

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Somatic hybrid</th>
<th>Desirable trait for introgression</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Arabidopsis thaliana</em> (n=5) + <em>B. nigra</em></td>
<td>Resistance to flea beetles, cold tolerance, short life cycle</td>
<td>Siemens and Sacristan (1995*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Arabidopsis thaliana</em> (n=5) + <em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>Plastome transformation</td>
<td>Nitovskaya and Shakhovskiy (1998); Yamagishi and Nakagawa (2004); Nitovskaya et al. (2006a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Arabidopsis thaliana</em> (n=5) + <em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td>Experimental demonstration</td>
<td>Glei and Hoffmann (1980, 1979)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Arabidopsis thaliana</em> (n=5) + <em>B. juncea</em></td>
<td>Phosphinothricin resistance</td>
<td>Ovcharenko et al. (2004)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Arabidopsis thaliana</em> (n=5) + <em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Herbicide resistance, Blackleg resistance</td>
<td>Bauer-Weston et al. (1993*); Forsberg, Landgren and K. Glimelius (1994*); Forsberg et al. (1998); Yamagishi et al. (2002*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Arabidopsis thaliana</em> (n=5) + <em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td>Transposable element Spm/dSpm</td>
<td>Ovcharenko et al. (2005*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Armoracia rusticana</em> (n=16) + <em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>Clubroot resistance</td>
<td>Navrátilová et al. (1997)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Barbarea vulgaris</em> (n=8) + <em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>Cold tolerance</td>
<td>Ryschka et al. (1999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Barbarea vulgaris</em> (n=8) + <em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td>Cold tolerance</td>
<td>Oikarinen and Ryöppy (1992)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Barbarea vulgaris</em> (n=8) + <em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Cold tolerance</td>
<td>Fahleson, Eriksén and Glimelius (1994)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Barbarea stricta</em> (n=8) + <em>B. rapa</em></td>
<td>Cold tolerance</td>
<td>Oikarinen and Ryöppy (1992)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Camelina sativa</em> (n=20) + <em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>Alternaria resistance</td>
<td>Hansen (1998); Sigareva and Earle (1999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Camelina sativa</em> (n=20) + <em>B. carinata</em></td>
<td>Alternaria resistance</td>
<td>Narasimhulu et al. (1994)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Capsella bursa-pastoris</em> (n=16) + <em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>Resistance to flea beetles, alternaria blight</td>
<td>Nitovskaya et al. (1998); Sigareva and Earle (1999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Crambe abyssinica</em> (n=45) + <em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>High erucic acid content, insect resistance</td>
<td>Wang, Sonnleit and Rudloff (2003*); Wang et al. (2004*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lepidium meyenii</em> (n=32) + <em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>Glucosinolate content</td>
<td>Ryschka, Klocke and Schumann (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lesquerella fendleri</em> (n=8) + <em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>High lesquerolic acid content, drought tolerance</td>
<td>Skarzhinskaya, Landgren and Glimelius (1996**); Skarzhinskaya et al. (1998)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lesquerella chloroplasts</em></td>
<td>Lesquerella chloroplasts</td>
<td>Schröder-Pontoppidan et al. (1999); Nitovskaya et al. (2006b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lunaria annua</em> (n=14) + <em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>High nervonic acid content</td>
<td>Craig and Millam (1995)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Matthiola incana</em> (n=7) + <em>B. oleracea</em></td>
<td>Oil quality</td>
<td>Ryschka et al. (1999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Onychophagus violaceus</em> (n=12) + <em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>High linoleic and palmitic acid content</td>
<td>Hu et al. (2002*, 1999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phosphinothricin</em></td>
<td>Phosphinothrin resistance</td>
<td>Sakhno et al. (2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Chlorosis correction</em></td>
<td>Chlorosis correction</td>
<td>Vasilchenko et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Thlaspi perfoliatum</em> (n=21) + <em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>High nervonic acid content</td>
<td>Fahleson et al. (1994**)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Thlaspi caerulescens</em> (n=7) + <em>B. napus</em></td>
<td>Zinc and cadmium tolerance</td>
<td>Brewer et al. (1999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Thlaspi caerulescens</em> (n=7) + <em>B. juncea</em></td>
<td>High metal accumulation</td>
<td>Dushenko et al. (2002)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** * Denotes asymmetric hybrids; ** Both asymmetric and symmetric hybrids identified.

**Source:** Prakash et al. (2009).
Biotechnology in Brassica breeding

Introduction

Although the above breeding procedures have been very effective in combining important agronomic and nutritional traits in superior cultivars, the process of identifying the desired genotype in genetically stable, uniform and high-yielding varieties takes many years. Further, the small chromosome size plus their lack of distinctive features have been an additional limitation on the selection of superior genotypes. However, beginning in the mid- to late 1980s, developments in tissue culture, embryo rescue, cell fusion, molecular markers and genetic mapping have not only reduced the time from cross to market but have given breeders powerful tools to quickly identify and assemble desirable traits in a single genotype. In addition, these biotech tools have greatly expanded the size and variation of the available gene pool, well beyond species boundaries.

Doubled haploid breeding

The doubled haploid (DH) breeding technique is now widely used in B. napus and B. juncea breeding programmes (Ferrie and Keller, 2004). This breeding tool not only eliminates the several generations needed to attain genetic stability and uniformity in breeding lines, but also significantly reduces the size of populations needed to find a desired genotype. For example, in B. napus, two genes code for the level of the fatty acid erucic in the seed oil, and an additional six genes code for the content of glucosinolates in the seed. Thus, when making a high by low cross, to produce progeny that have both low erucic acid and low glucosinolate (double low or canola quality), large segregating populations must be examined since the desired genotype must have all eight genes in the recessive state.

Table 3.18 illustrates the DH technique’s increased selection efficiency, particularly when the selected plants are completely homozygous individuals that can be used directly as pure breeding varieties or as hybrid parents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number. of genes</th>
<th>Minimum $F_2$ population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diploid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3,067</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>12,269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>49,077</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>196,259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>3,123,923</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Rajhathy (1976).

The technique involves inducing large numbers of immature pollen grains (microspores) from Brassica species to develop into plants with the gametic or half the somatic chromosome number. Such plants are termed haploids and are sterile. By applying colchicine to the developing haploid plant, cell division is temporarily arrested, bringing about chromosome duplication. The result is a doubled haploid (DH) or
dihaploid plant that is fully fertile and totally homozygous. Thus, complete homozygosity is reached in a single generation, and all seeds arising from self-fertilisation of that plant will be genetically identical. It is this single step to homozygosity that reduces the number of generations and time required to develop a new variety or hybrid parent. However, in a breeding programme, large populations of DH lines must be generated and evaluated since no prior selection has taken place. DH lines are usually derived from F1 donors, although the use of F2 and F3 donor plants allows for more recombination and some preselection.

**Molecular markers and their application**

Marker-assisted selection and chromosome mapping came into general use in the 1980s with the development of restriction fragment length polymorphisms (RFLP) techniques that resulted in the first linkage maps for *B. oleracea* (Slocum et al., 1990), *B. rapa* (Song et al., 1991) and *B. napus* (Landry et al., 1991). This technique was important in identifying genomes and their chromosomes, locating genes and qualitative trait loci (QTLs), which are DNA regions containing a gene or genes that regulate traits of agronomic or quality interest.

The discovery of the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) by Mullis and Faloona (1987) resulted in new types of genetic markers such as amplified fragment length polymorphisms (AFLPs) that are more sensitive than RFLPs and simultaneously detect various polymorphisms in different genomic regions.

Additional marker systems have since been added to the toolbox including: random amplified polymorphic DNAs (RAPDs); sequence tagged sites (STS); simple sequence repeats (SSRs) or microsatellites and single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs). Breeders use these molecular markers to produce densely marked chromosome maps that can then be used to: 1) characterise germplasm and its genetic variability; 2) estimate the genetic distance between gene pools, inbreds and populations; 3) detect and locate QTLs and monogenic traits of interest; 4) select genotypes based on the presence or absence of specific markers; 5) identify useful candidate genes for sequencing (for more detailed information on genome mapping and molecular breeding in *B. napus*, see Snowdon, Lühs and Friedt, 2007; Snowdon et al., 2007). The marker systems differ in their ease of use, cost and other characteristics. It is expected that the SNPs system will become the marker system of preference, despite its initial high cost, due to its ease of use, low cost per analysis and high level of reproducibility (Korzun, 2003).

**Comparative genomic gene identification**

The distantly related and intensively studied species *Arabidopsis thaliana* provides information that is highly relevant for gene isolation and characterisation in *Brassica* crops. However, the genomes of *Brassica* species are much more complex (Snowdon, Lühs and Friedt, 2007).

A comprehensive comparative RFLP linkage map of *A. thaliana* and *B. napus* genomes indicated the 5 *Arabidopsis* chromosomes could be allocated to a minimum of 22 conserved, duplicated and rearranged blocks throughout the *B. napus* genome (Parkin et al., 2005).

Such information highlights the complexity of genome rearrangements between the two species, but also the great potential the model genome offers for comparative genetic analysis of the *Brassica* crops (Snowdon, Lühs and Friedt, 2007).
**TILLING technique**

The technique of TILLING (targeted induced local lesions in genomes) can be used to identify a series of mutations (alleles) in a target gene by heteroduplex analysis (McCallum et al., 2000). This method combines a standard technique of mutagenesis with a chemical mutagen such as ethyl methanesulfonate (EMS), with a sensitive DNA screening technique that identifies single-base mutations (also called point mutations) in a target gene.

This technique is available from the Canadian TILLING Initiative (CAN-TILL) at the University of British Columbia on a fee-for-service basis. The CAN-TILL facility is currently developing a large-scale mutant population for *Brassica napus* as part of a Genome Canada project and has completed projects on *B. oleracea* and *Arabidopsis thaliana*. *B. rapa* TILLING services are available from RevGenUK in the United Kingdom (John Innes Centre).

**Gene transfer**

The transfer of a gene(s) from an unrelated species is undertaken only when the desired trait cannot be found or induced by traditional methods. Because of the huge costs and time required to comply with multiple regulations in multiple countries, only those traits that have a potentially large and valuable market are considered for commercial exploitation.

**Notes**

1. The authority for the scientific names used in this chapter is given in Tables 3.2 and 3.3. The nomenclatural authority for genus and species names not listed in the tables will be included in the text where they first appear.

2. Autosyndesis is defined as the pairing of completely or partially homologous chromosomes during prophase of the first meiotic division.

3. This section is drawn from Wang, Guan and Zhang (2007).

4. This section is drawn from Downey, Klaasen and Stringham (1980); Dickson and Wallace (1986).

5. This citation has been added for update in January 2016.

References


Allainguillaume, J. et al. (2006), “Fitness of hybrids between rapeseed (Brassica napus) and wild Brassica rapa in natural habitats”, Molecular Ecology, Vol. 15, No. 4, pp. 1 175-1 184, April.


II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – 253


Ellis, R.H. et al. (1994), “The long-term storage of seeds of seventeen crucifers at very low moisture contents”, Plant Genetics Resources Newsletter, No. 98.


European Commission (1998a), “Opinion of the Scientific Committee on Plants regarding the glufosinate tolerant hybrid rape derived from genetically modified parental lines (MS8xRF3) notified by plant genetic systems (Notification C/B/96/01)”, submitted by the Scientific Committee on Plants 19 May 1998.


II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – 259


II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – 261


II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.)


Leeson, J.Y. et al. (2005), *Prairie Weed Surveys of Cereal, Oilseed and Pulse Crops from the 1970s to the 2000s*, Weed Survey Series Publication, 05-1, Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada, Saskatoon Research Centre, Canada.


MacDonald, R.L. and G.J. Kuntz (2000), “Monitoring program to assess the occurrence and fate of SeedLink canola volunteers following the 1999 growing season in Western Canada”, *Aventis CropScience Report*, No. ACC00-03.


Nitovskaya, I.O. et al. (2006a), “Production of Brassica oleracea (+Arabidopsis thaliana) and Brassica napus cell lines resistant to spectinomycin/streptomycin as a result of plastome genetic transformation”, *Tsitol. Genet.*, Vol. 40, pp. 3-10 (in Ukrainian: English abstract).


Ogbonnaya, F.C. et al. (2003), “Progress in the utilization of Brassica nigra in breeding for
resistance to black leg (Leptosphaeria maculans)”, Proceedings of the 11th International

Ohio State University (2009), “Vegetable seed production – ‘dry’ seeds”, Department of
Horticulture and Crop Science.

cytoplasmic characters, cytoplasmic male sterility and chloroplast DNA”, Japan Agricultural

Oikarinen, S. and P.H. Ryöppy (1992), “Somatic hybridization of Brassica campestris and
Barbara species”, Proceedings of the XIII Eucarpia Congress: Reproductive Biology and
Plant Breeding, Angers, France, 6-11 July, pp. 261-262.

Okamoto, S. et al. (2007), “Self-compatibility in Brassica napus is caused by independent

Olsson, G. (1960), “Species crosses within the genus Brassica. II. Artificial Brassica juncea
Coss.”, Hereditas, Vol. 46, pp. 171-222.

in the tropics and suntropics”, Vol. 17, Asian Vegetable Research Development Center,
Chinese Taipei.

experience”, English Nature Research Reports, No. 443,

Østergaard, L. et al. (2006), “Pod shatter-resistant Brassica fruit produced by ectopic expression of the

Ovcharenko, O.O. et al. (2005), “Creation and analysis of Brassica napus + Arabidopsis thaliana
somatic hybrids possessing maize Spm/dspm heterologous transposable system”, Tsitol Genet.,
Vol. 39, pp. 50-56.

somatic hybrids and study of transgenic trait behaviour”, Tsitol Genet., Vol. 38, pp. 3-8.

Genetics, Vol. 118, pp. 341-351.

species”, Theoretical and Applied Genetics, Vol. 65, No. 3, pp. 181-189,
http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/BF00308062.

Palmer, T.P. (1962), “Population structure, breeding system, interspecific hybridization and

Parkin, I.A., A.G. Sharpe and D.J. Lydiate (2003), “Patterns of genome duplication within

Parkin, I.A. et al. (2005), “Segmental structure of the Brassica napus genome based on
comparative analysis with Arabidopsis thaliana”, Genetics, Vol. 171, No. 2, pp. 765-781,

(oilseed rape)”, Genome, Vol. 38, No. 6, pp. 1 122-1 131.

Final Report to the Commission of the Federal Ministry of Health and Women, Austria.

oilseed rape in the field”, Euphytica, Vol. 81, pp. 283-289.


Prakash, O. (1961), *Food and Drinks in Ancient India*, Munshi Ram Manohar, Delhi, pp. 265-266.


II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.)


II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – 279


II.3. BRASSICA CROPS (BRASSICA SPP.) – 285


### Annex 3.A1

**Common pathogens and pests**

Table 3.A1.1. *Insect, mite and other Brassicaceous crop pests and their regional distribution*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Order, genus and species</th>
<th>Common name</th>
<th>Regions affected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Coleoptera</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acalymma vittatum (F.)</td>
<td>Striped cucumber beetle</td>
<td>North America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriotes lineatus (L.)</td>
<td>Lined click beetle</td>
<td>North America, Europe, Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baris latricolis Marsh.</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceutorhynchus assimilis Payk.</td>
<td>Cabbage seed weevil</td>
<td>North America, Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceutorhynchus hepaticus Gyll.</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceutorhynchus napi Gyll.</td>
<td>Rape stem weevil</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceutorhynchus obstrictus (Marsh.)</td>
<td>Cabbage seedpod weevil</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceutorhynchus pallidactylus (Marsh.)</td>
<td>Cabbage stem weevil</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceutorhynchus pleurostigma Marsh.</td>
<td>Turnip gall weevil</td>
<td>Europe, North Africa, Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceutorhynchus rapae (Gyll.)</td>
<td>Cabbage curculio</td>
<td>North America, Europe, Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaetocnema indica Weise</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entomoscelis americana Brown</td>
<td>Red turnip beetle</td>
<td>Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listroderes costostiorthis Schönh.</td>
<td>Vegetable weevil</td>
<td>United States, South America, Europe, Africa, Asia, Australia, New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meligethes aeneus F.</td>
<td>Pollen, rape or blossom beetle</td>
<td>North America, Europe, North Africa, Russian Federation, China (People’s Republic of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meligethes viridescens (F.)</td>
<td>Pollen or blossom beetle</td>
<td>North America, Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllotreta aerea Allard</td>
<td>Leaf beetle</td>
<td>North America, Europe, North Africa, Russian Federation, India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllotreta atra F.</td>
<td>Cabbage flea beetle</td>
<td>Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllotreta chotanica Duvivier</td>
<td>Striped flea beetle</td>
<td>India, South East Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllotreta consobrina (Curtis.)</td>
<td>Turnip flea beetle</td>
<td>No distribution information found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllotreta cruciferae (Goze)</td>
<td>Crucifer flea beetle</td>
<td>North America, Europe, North Africa, Russian Federation, India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllotreta flexuosa (III.)</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Thailand, Malaysia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllotreta nemorum (L.)</td>
<td>Striped flea beetle</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllotreta striolata (F.)</td>
<td>Cabbage flea beetle</td>
<td>North America, Europe, Russian Federation, India, Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllotreta undulata Kutschera</td>
<td>Lesser striped flea beetle</td>
<td>North America, Europe, Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psylliodes chrysocephala L.</td>
<td>Cabbage stem flea beetle</td>
<td>Canada, Europe, North Africa, Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psylliodes punctulata Melsh.</td>
<td>Hop flea beetles</td>
<td>North America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diptera</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atherigona orientalis Schiner</td>
<td>Pepper fruit fly</td>
<td>United States, Central and South America, Africa, India, Asia, Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromatomyia horticulta Gour.</td>
<td>Pea leaf miner</td>
<td>Europe, Africa, India, Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contarinia nasturtii (Kief.)</td>
<td>Swede midge</td>
<td>North America, Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dasineura brassicae (Winn.)</td>
<td>Brassica pod midge</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delia floralis (Fall.)</td>
<td>Turnip maggot</td>
<td>North America, Europe, Russian Federation, China (People’s Republic of), Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delia radicum (L.)</td>
<td>Cabbage root fly</td>
<td>North America, Europe, North Africa, Russian Federation, China (People’s Republic of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liriomyza brassicae Riley</td>
<td>Serpentine leaf miner</td>
<td>Worldwide, except the Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liriomyza bryoniae Kltb.</td>
<td>Tomato leaf miner</td>
<td>Europe, Russian Federation, India, China (People’s Republic of), Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phytomyza horticola Gour.</td>
<td>Cruciferous leaf miner</td>
<td>Europe, India, Asia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3. A1.1. Insect, mite and other Brassicaceous crop pests and their regional distribution (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Order, genus and species</th>
<th>Common name</th>
<th>Regions affected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phytomyza rufipes Meig.</strong></td>
<td>Cabbage leaf miner</td>
<td>United States, Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Homoptera</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Brevicoryne brassicae</em> (L.)</td>
<td>Cabbage aphid</td>
<td>Worldwide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Smynthurodes betae</em> Westw.</td>
<td>Gall-forming aphid, bean root aphid</td>
<td>United States, Europe, Middle East, Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hemiptera</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aleyrodes proletella</em> (L.)</td>
<td>Cabbage whitefly</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bacterica hilarii</em> (Burn.)</td>
<td>Painted bug</td>
<td>India, Sri Lanka, Africa, Arabia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bemisia tabaci</em> (Genn.)</td>
<td>Tobacco whitefly</td>
<td>Worldwide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eurydema olacice</em> (L.)</td>
<td>Cabbage bug</td>
<td>Turkey, Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eurydema pulchrum</em> (Westw.)</td>
<td>Small cabbage bug</td>
<td>India, Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eurydema rugosum</em> Mots.</td>
<td>Cabbage bug</td>
<td>Russian Federation, China (People’s Republic of), Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eurydema</em> species</td>
<td>Orange stink or shield bugs</td>
<td>Europe, North Africa, Russian Federation, India, Asia, Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eurydema ventralis</em> Kolenati</td>
<td>Cabbage bug</td>
<td>Europe, Africa, Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lipaphis erysimi</em> Kltb.</td>
<td>Mustard aphid</td>
<td>Worldwide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lygus borealis</em> (Kelton)</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lygus elisus</em> Van D.</td>
<td>Pale legume bug</td>
<td>North America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lygus hesperus</em> Knight</td>
<td>Western tarnished plant bug</td>
<td>North America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lygus lineolaris</em> (P. de B.)</td>
<td>Tarnished plant bug</td>
<td>North America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lygus ruqulipennis</em> Popp.</td>
<td>Bishop bug</td>
<td>Canada, Europe, Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Margentia histronica</em> (Hahn)</td>
<td>Harlequin bug</td>
<td>United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Myzus persicae</em> Sult.</td>
<td>Spinach aphid or Green peach aphid</td>
<td>Worldwide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nysius niger</em> Baker</td>
<td>False chinch bug</td>
<td>India, North America, Caribbean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nezara viridula</em> (L.)</td>
<td>Green stink bug</td>
<td>Worldwide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pemphigus populitransversus</em> Riley</td>
<td>Poplar petiolar aphid</td>
<td>United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pseudococcus calceolariae</em> (Mask.)</td>
<td>Scarlet mealybug</td>
<td>United States, Central and South America, Europe, Africa, China (People’s Republic of), Australia, New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hymenoptera</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Athalia lugens</em> (Klug)</td>
<td>Mustard sawfly</td>
<td>India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Athalia rosae</em> (L.)</td>
<td>Turnip or cabbage leaf sawfly</td>
<td>Europe, Russian Federation, China (People’s Republic of), Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lepidoptera</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acronicta rumicis</em> (L.)</td>
<td>Knotgrass moth</td>
<td>Europe, Russian Federation, India, China (People’s Republic of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Agrotis exclamationis</em> L.</td>
<td>Heart and dart moth</td>
<td>Europe, Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Agrotis ipsilon</em> (Hufn.)</td>
<td>Black cutworm</td>
<td>Worldwide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Agrotis orthogonia</em> Morr.</td>
<td>Pale western cutworm</td>
<td>Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Agrotis segetum</em> D. &amp; S.</td>
<td>Turnip moth</td>
<td>Europe, Africa, India, China (People’s Republic of), Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Argyrogramma signata</em> (F.)</td>
<td>Green semi-looper</td>
<td>India, South East Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ascia monuste</em> (L.)</td>
<td>Gulf white cabbage worm</td>
<td>South America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Autographa californica</em> Speyer</td>
<td>Alitfa loopet</td>
<td>North America, Malaysia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Autographa gamma</em> (L.)</td>
<td>Silver Y moth</td>
<td>Europe, North Africa, India, Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Autographa nigricigna</em> (Wilk.)</td>
<td>Beet worm</td>
<td>Russian Federation, India, China (People’s Republic of), Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cacoecimorpha pronubana</em> Hbn.</td>
<td>Carnation tortrix</td>
<td>United States, Europe, North Africa, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Chrysodeixis nigata</em> Stgr.</td>
<td>Three-spotted plusia</td>
<td>China (People’s Republic of), Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clepsis spectrana</em> (Treat.)</td>
<td>Oblique-banded caterpillar</td>
<td>Europe, Canada</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3.A1.1. Insect, mite and other Brassicaceous crop pests and their regional distribution (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Order, genus and species</th>
<th>Common name</th>
<th>Regions affected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Crocidolomia pavenana (F.)</td>
<td>Large cabbage-heart caterpillar</td>
<td>India, Africa, Asia, Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cydia nigricana F.</td>
<td>Pea moth</td>
<td>Caribbean, Europe, Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diacrisia oblique Wlk.</td>
<td>Jute hairy caterpillar</td>
<td>India, Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earias vittalis (Zell.)</td>
<td>Lesser cornstalk borer</td>
<td>United States, Central America, Thailand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earias acraea (Zell.)</td>
<td>Salt marsh caterpillar</td>
<td>United States, Central America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euxoa ochrogaster (Gn.)</td>
<td>Red-backed cutworm</td>
<td>North America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evergestis forficalis L.</td>
<td>Crucifer caterpillar</td>
<td>Europe, India, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evergestis rimosalis (Gn.)</td>
<td>Cross striped cabbageworm</td>
<td>North America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hadula trifoli (Hufn.)</td>
<td>Clover cutworm</td>
<td>North America, Europe, Africa, Russian Federation, India, China (People’s Republic of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helicoverpa armigera (Hbn.)</td>
<td>Cotton bollworm</td>
<td>Europe, Africa, India, Russian Federation, South East Asia, Australia, New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hellula philidelialis (Wlk.)</td>
<td>Cabbage budworm</td>
<td>Central America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hellula undalis (F.)</td>
<td>Cabbage webworm</td>
<td>Europe, Africa, Asia, Australia, New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacanobia oleracea (L.)</td>
<td>Bright-line brown-eye moth</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacanobia sausa D. &amp; S.</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Europe, Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loxostege sticticalis L.</td>
<td>Beet webworm</td>
<td>North America, Asia, Europe, Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mamestra brassicae (L.)</td>
<td>Cabbage moth</td>
<td>Europe, Russian Federation, India, Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mamestra configurata Wlk.</td>
<td>Bertha armyworm</td>
<td>North and Central America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noctua pronuba (L.)</td>
<td>Common yellow underwing moth</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ochropleura flavinata D. &amp; S.</td>
<td>Indian cutworm</td>
<td>India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peridroma saucia (Hbn.)</td>
<td>Pearly underwing moth</td>
<td>The Americas, Europe, India, China (People’s Republic of), Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pieris brassicae (L.)</td>
<td>Cabbage caterpillar</td>
<td>South America, Europe, Russian Federation, India, China (People’s Republic of), Japan, Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pieris canidia (Sparman)</td>
<td>Small cabbage butterfly</td>
<td>China (People’s Republic of), South East Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pieris napi (L.)</td>
<td>Green-veined white butterfly</td>
<td>Europe, North Africa, Russian Federation, India, China (People’s Republic of), Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pieris rapae L.</td>
<td>Imported cabbageworm or cabbage white butterfly</td>
<td>North and Central America, Europe, North Africa, Russian Federation, India, Asia, Australia, New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plutella xylostella L.</td>
<td>Diamondback moth</td>
<td>Worldwide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pontia daplidice (L.)</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spodoptera exigua (Hbn.)</td>
<td>Beet armyworm</td>
<td>North and Central America, Europe, Africa, Russian Federation, India, Asia, Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spodoptera frugiperda J. E. Smith</td>
<td>Fall armyworm</td>
<td>The Americas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spodoptera littoralis (Bdv.)</td>
<td>Cotton leafworm</td>
<td>Africa, Middle East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichoplusia ni (Hbn.)</td>
<td>Cabbage looper</td>
<td>Worldwide, except Australia and New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanessa cardui L.</td>
<td>Painted lady butterfly</td>
<td>North America, Europe, Africa, Russian Federation, Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xestia c-nigrum (L.)</td>
<td>Spotted cutworm</td>
<td>North and Central America, Europe, Russian Federation, India, Asia, Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acari</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halotydeus destructor (Tucker)</td>
<td>Redlegged earth mite</td>
<td>Australia, New Zealand, South Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrophagus putrescentiae (Schr.)</td>
<td>Cereal mite</td>
<td>United States, Central and South America, Europe, Africa, India, China (People’s Republic of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stylommatophora</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arion lusitanicus Mabille</td>
<td>Spanish slug</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deroceras reticulatum Müll</td>
<td>Grey field slug</td>
<td>North America, Europe, Russian Federation, Australia, New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lissachatina fulica (Bowdich)</td>
<td>Giant African land snail</td>
<td>South America, Africa, India, South East Asia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3.A1.1. **Insect, mite and other Brassicaceous crop pests and their regional distribution (cont.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Order, genus and species</th>
<th>Common name</th>
<th>Regions affected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thysanoptera</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrips tabaci Lind.</td>
<td>Onion thrips</td>
<td>Worldwide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tylenchida</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meloidogyne ethiopica Whitehead</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>South America, Europe, Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meloidogyne graminicola Golden &amp; Birchfield</td>
<td>Rice root knot nematode</td>
<td>United States, South America, South Africa, India, South East Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pratylenchus neglectus (Rensch) Filipjev &amp; Stekhoven</td>
<td>California meadow nematode</td>
<td>Europe, Russian Federation, Pakistan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source:* Information drawn from CAB International Crop Protection Compendium; Bonnemaison (1965); Lamb (1989); Thomas (1994).

Table 3.A1.2. **Diseases of rapeseed = Canola (B. napus L. and Brassica rapa L. [= B. campestris L.])**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common name(s)</th>
<th>Scientific name (and synonyms)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bacterial black rot</td>
<td>Xanthomonas campestris pv. campestris (Pammel 1895) Dowson 1939</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= Xanthomonas campestris pv. raphani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= Xanthomonas campestris pv. aberrans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacterial leaf spot</td>
<td>Xanthomonas campestris pv. armoraciae (McCulloch 1929) Dye 1978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacterial pod rot*</td>
<td>Pseudomonas syringae pv. maculicola (McCulloch 1911) Young, Dye and Wilkie 1978 (Canada, United Kingdom)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacterial soft rot</td>
<td>Enwinia carotovora (Jones 1901) Bergey et al. 1923</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pseudomonas marginalis pv. marginalis (Brown 1918) Stevens 1925</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scab</td>
<td>Streptomyces spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Streptomyces scabies (ex Thaxter 1891) Lambert and Loria 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= Streptomyces scabies (Thaxter 1891) Waksman and Henri 1948</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crown gall</td>
<td>Agrobacterium tumefaciens (Smith and Townsend 1907) Conn 1942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fungal diseases</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternaria black spot =</td>
<td>Alternaria brassicae (Berk.) Sacc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dark pod spot (United</td>
<td>A. brassicola (Schwein.) Wiltshire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kingdom)</td>
<td>A. japonica H. Yoshii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= A. raphani Groves and Skolko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anthracnose</td>
<td>Colletotrichum gloeosporioides (Penz.) Penz. and Sacc. in Penz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glomerella cingulata (Stoneman) Spauld. and H. Schrenk [teleomorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. higginsianum Sacc. in Higgins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black leg = stem canker</td>
<td>Leptosphaeria maculans (Desmaz.) Ces. and De Not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(United Kingdom)</td>
<td>Phoma lingam (Tode: Fr) Desmaz. [anamorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black mold rot</td>
<td>Rhizopus stolonifer (Ehrenb.: Fr.) Vuill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black root</td>
<td>Aphanomyces raphani Kendrick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown girdling root rot*</td>
<td>Rhizoctonia solani Kühn (Canada)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thanatephorus cucumeris (A.B. Frank) Donk [teleomorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cercospora leaf spot</td>
<td>Cercospora brassicola Henn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clubroot</td>
<td>Plasmopara brassicola Woronin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downy mildew</td>
<td>Peronospora parasitica (Pers.: Fr.)Fr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusarium wilt</td>
<td>Fusarium oxysporum Schlechtend.: Fr. f. sp. conglutinans (Wollenweb.) W.C. Snyder and H.N. Hans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray mold</td>
<td>Botrytis cinerea Pers.: Fr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Botryotinia fuckeliana (de Bary) Whetzel [teleomorph]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3.A1.2. Diseases of rapeseed = Canola

(*B. napus L. and Brassica rapa L. [= B. campestris L.]) (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common name(s)</th>
<th>Scientific name (and synonyms)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Head rot</td>
<td><em>Rhizoctonia solani</em> Kühn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Thanatephorus cucumeris</em> (A.B. Frank) Donk [teleomorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leaf spot*</td>
<td><em>Alternaria alternata</em> (Fr.: Fr.) Keissl. (Canada)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Ascochyta</em> spp. (former USSR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light leaf spot*</td>
<td><em>Pyrenopeziza brassicae</em> Sutton and Rawlinson in Rawlinson et al.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Cylindrosporum concentricum</em> Grev. [anamorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pod rot*</td>
<td><em>Alternaria alternata</em> (Fr.: Fr.) Keissl. (Canada)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cladosporium sp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powdery mildew</td>
<td><em>Erysiphe polygoni</em> DC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>E. cruciferarum</em> Opiz ex Junell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ring spot</td>
<td><em>Mycosphaerella brassicicola</em> (Duby) Lindau in Engl. and Pranti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Asteromella brassica</em> (Chev.) Boerema and Van Kesteren [anamorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Root rot</td>
<td><em>Alternaria alternata</em> (Fr.: Fr.) Keissl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Fusarium</em> spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Macrophomina phaseolina</em> (Tassi) Goidanich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Phymatotrichopsis omnivora</em> (Duggar) Hennebert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Phytophthora megasperma</em> Drechs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Pythium debaryanum</em> Auct. non R. Hesse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>P. irregularae</em> Buisman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Rhizoctonia solani</em> Kühn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Thanatephorus cucumeris</em> (A.B. Frank) Donk [teleomorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Phymatotrichopsis</em> omnivora [teleomorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Sclerotium rolfsii</em> Sacc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Athelia rolfsii</em> (Curzi) Tu and Kimbrough [teleomorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seed rot, damping-off</td>
<td><em>Alternaria</em> spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Fusarium</em> spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Gliocladium roseum</em> (Link) Bainier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Nectria ochroleuca</em> (Schwein.) Berk [teleomorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Pythium</em> spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Rhizoctonia solani</em> Kühn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Thanatephorus cucumeris</em> (A.B. Frank) Donk [teleomorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Rhizopus stolonifer</em> (Ehrenb.: Fr) Vuill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Sclerotium rolfsii</em> Sacc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sclerotinia stem rot</td>
<td><em>Sclerotinia sorghioides</em> (Lib.) de Bary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Root gall smut*</td>
<td><em>Urocystis brassicicola</em> Mundkur (People’s Republic of China, India)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern blight (leaf, root and seed rot)</td>
<td><em>Sclerotium rolfsii</em> Sacc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verticillium wilt*</td>
<td><em>Verticillium longisporum</em> (comb. Nov. Karapappa et al.) (Europe)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White blight*</td>
<td><em>Rhizoctonia solani</em> Kühn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Thanatephorus cucumeris</em> (A.B. Frank) Donk [teleomorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White leaf spot = grey stem (Canada)</td>
<td><em>Pseudocercosporella capsellae</em> (Ellis and Everh.) Deighton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Cercosporella brassicaceae</em> (Faitrey and Roum.) Höhn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Mycosphaerella capsellae</em> (Inman and Sivansen) [teleomorph]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White rust = staghead</td>
<td><em>Albugo candida</em> (Pers.) Kunze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= <em>A. cruciferarum</em> (DC.) S.F. Gray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Peronospora sp. commonly present in staghead phase</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellows</td>
<td><em>Fusarium oxysporum</em> Schlechtend.: Fr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nematodes, parasitic</td>
<td><em>Heterodera cruciferae</em> Franklin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyst nematode</td>
<td><em>H. schachtii</em> Schmidt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesion nematode</td>
<td><em>Pratylenchus</em> spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>P. pratensis</em> (de Man) Filippiev</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Root-knot nematode</td>
<td><em>Meloidogyne</em> spp.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3.A1.2. Diseases of rapeseed = Canola
(B. napus L. and Brassica rapa L. [= B. campestris L.]) (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common name(s)</th>
<th>Scientific name (and synonyms)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Viral diseases</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crinkle*</td>
<td>genus Carmovirus, Turnip crinkle virus (TCV) (former ‘Yugoslavia’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mosaic</td>
<td>genus Caulimovirus, Cauliflower mosaic virus (CaMV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>genus Cucumovirus, Cucumber mosaic virus* (CMV) (Hungary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>genus Comovirus, Radish mosaic virus (RaMV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>genus Polymovirus, Turnip mosaic virus (TuMV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellows</td>
<td>genus Luteovirus, Beet western yellows virus (BWYV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>genus Cytorhabdovirus, Broccoli necrotic yellows virus* (BNYV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phytoplasmal diseases</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aster yellows and phyllody</td>
<td>Aster yellows phytoplasma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Miscellaneous diseases and disorders</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autogenic necrosis</td>
<td>Genetic disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black speck</td>
<td>Physiological</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur deficiency</td>
<td>Sulfur deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tipburn</td>
<td>Calcium deficiency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: * Not known to occur naturally in the United States.


**References**


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consensus document</th>
<th>Lead country(ies)</th>
<th>Year of issue</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Facilitating harmonisation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Designation of a Unique Identifier for Transgenic Plants (revised version)</td>
<td>Working Group</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Vol. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(guidance document)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to the OECD Biosafety Consensus Documents (available in English and</td>
<td>Working Group</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Vol. 1,3, 4, 5 &amp; 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Level Presence of Transgenic Plants in Seed and Grain Commodities:</td>
<td>Working Group</td>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Vol. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Risk/Safety Assessment, and Availability and Use of Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular Characterisation of Plants Derived from Modern Biotechnology</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Vol. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Points to Consider for Consensus Documents on Biology of Cultivated Plants</td>
<td>Working Group</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Vol. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Traits</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crop Plants Made Virus Resistant through Coat Protein Gene-Mediated Protection</td>
<td>Task Group</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genes and their Enzymes that Confer Tolerance to Glyphosate Herbicide</td>
<td>United States, Germany and Netherlands</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genes and their Enzymes that Confer Tolerance to Phosphinothricin Herbicide</td>
<td>United States, Germany and Netherlands</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herbicide Metabolism and the Residues in Glufosinate-Ammonium</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Phosphinothricin)-Tolerant Transgenic Plants</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transgenic Plants Expressing Bacillus thuringiensis-Derived Insect Control Protein</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Vol. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Information Used in the Assessment of Environmental Applications of Micro-organisms</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acidithiobacillus</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acinetobacter</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Vol. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baculovirus</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudomonas</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Guidance Documents on Biosafety Aspects of Bacteria</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal Gene Transfer Between Bacteria</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Vol. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods for Detection of Micro-organisms Introduced into the Environment: Bacteria</td>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>Vol. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of Information on Pathogenicity Factors: Bacteria</td>
<td>Netherlands and Canada</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Vol. 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of Taxonomy in Risk Assessment of Micro-organisms: Bacteria</td>
<td>Canada and United States</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Vol. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Biology of crops</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bananas and plantains (Musa spp.)</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Vol. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brassica crops (Brassica spp.)</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Vol. 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cassava (Manihot esculenta)</td>
<td>Brazil, NEPAD-ABNE and ILSI-CERA</td>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Vol. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chili, hot and sweet peppers (Capsicum annuum)</td>
<td>Korea, Mexico and United States</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX A. LIST OF OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS ON ENVIRONMENTAL SAFETY ASSESSMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consensus document</th>
<th>Lead country(ies)</th>
<th>Year of issue</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Biology of crops</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common bean (<em>Phaseolus vulgaris</em>)</td>
<td>Brazil and ILSI-CERA</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Vol. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotton (<em>Gossypium</em> spp.)</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Vol. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cowpea (<em>Vigna unguiculata</em>)</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Vol. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maize (<em>Zea mays</em> subs. <em>mays</em>)</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squashes, pumpkins, zucchinis and gourds (<em>Cucurbita</em>)</td>
<td>Mexico and United States</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Vol. 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oyster mushroom (<em>Pleurotus</em> spp.)</td>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papaya (<em>Carica papaya</em>)</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potato (<em>Solanum tuberosum</em> subsp. <em>tuberosum</em>)</td>
<td>Netherlands and United Kingdom</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rice (<em>Oryza sativa</em>)</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oilsed rape (<em>Brassica napus</em>): replaced with <em>Brassica Crops (2012)</em> in Vol. 6</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugar beet (<em>Beta vulgaris</em>)</td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugarcane (<em>Saccharum</em> spp.)</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Vol. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunflower (<em>Helianthus annus</em>)</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheat (<em>Triticum aestivum</em>)</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soybean (<em>Glycine max</em>)</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Biology of trees</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birch: European white birch (<em>Betula pendula</em>)</td>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas fir (<em>Pseudotsuga menziesii</em>)</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Vol. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eucalyptus (<em>Eucalyptus</em> spp.)</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Vol. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pines: Eastern white pine (<em>Pinus strobus</em>)</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pines: Jack pine (<em>Pinus banksiana</em>)</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Vol. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pines: Lodgepole pine (<em>Pinus contorta</em>)</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Vol. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poplars (<em>Populus</em> spp.)</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruces: Black spruce (<em>Picea mariana</em>)</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Vol. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruces: Norway spruce (<em>Picea abies</em>)</td>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruces: Silka spruce (<em>Picea sitchensis</em>)</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruces: White spruce (<em>Picea glauca</em>)</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fruit trees</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bananas and plantains (<em>Musa</em> spp.) [listed above in &quot;Crops&quot;]</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Vol. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papaya (<em>Carica papaya</em>) [listed above in &quot;Crops&quot;]</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone fruits (<em>Prunus</em> spp.)</td>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The OECD is a unique forum where governments work together to address the economic, social and environmental challenges of globalisation. The OECD is also at the forefront of efforts to understand and to help governments respond to new developments and concerns, such as corporate governance, the information economy and the challenges of an ageing population. The Organisation provides a setting where governments can compare policy experiences, seek answers to common problems, identify good practice and work to co-ordinate domestic and international policies.

The OECD member countries are: Australia, Austria, Belgium, Canada, Chile, the Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Israel, Italy, Japan, Korea, Luxembourg, Mexico, the Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Poland, Portugal, the Slovak Republic, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey, the United Kingdom and the United States. The European Union takes part in the work of the OECD.

OECD Publishing disseminates widely the results of the Organisation’s statistics gathering and research on economic, social and environmental issues, as well as the conventions, guidelines and standards agreed by its members.
Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology

Safety Assessment of Transgenic Organisms in the Environment, Volume 5

OECD CONSENSUS DOCUMENTS

Volume 5 of this Series compiles the science-based consensus documents issued by the OECD Working Group on the Harmonisation of Regulatory Oversight in Biotechnology in 2011 and 2012. They contain information for use during the risk/safety assessment of transgenic organisms to be released in the environment, for agriculture or other purposes. The first chapter deals with the pathogenicity of bacteria and how this knowledge can be used in biosafety regulatory assessment. The following chapters on the biology of plant species (*Cucurbita* spp., *Brassica* spp.) include elements of taxonomy, centres of origin, reproductive biology, genetics, hybridisation and introgression, crop production and cultivation practices, interactions with other organisms such as pests and pathogens, and biotechnological developments. This volume should be of value to applicants for commercial uses of transgenic organisms, regulators and risk assessors in national authorities, as well as the wider scientific community.

Contents

Part I. Micro-organisms

Chapter 1. Bacteria: Pathogenicity factors

Part II. Biology of crops

Chapter 2. Squashes, pumkins, zucchinis and gourds (*Cucurbita* species)

Chapter 3. *Brassica* crops (*Brassica* species)